BYZANTINE GREEK SERIES · VOLUME 87

The Life of Basil

Constantine VII Porphyrogennetos

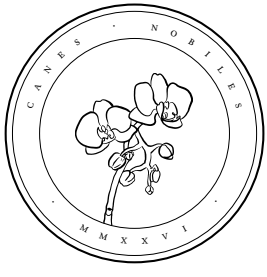
ΙΣΤΟΡΙΚΗ ΔΙΗΓΗΣΙΣ ΤΟΥ ΒΙΟΥ ΚΑΙ ΤΩΝ ΠΡΑΞΕΩΝ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΙΟΥ

The Life of Basil

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

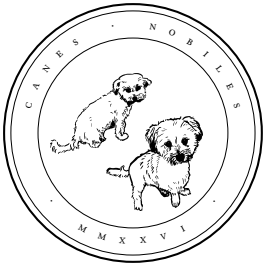


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 87 of the Canes Nobiles Byzantine Greek interlinear texts

The Byzantine Greek text follows Immanuel Bekker's text
in Theophanes Continuatus (Bonn, 1838), Book V

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The margin gives the edition's chapter numbers.

CONTENTS

1–7 · Lineage and Boyhood 7
8–13 · Into the City and the Emperor's Service 24
14–19 · Chamberlain, Bardas's Fall, and Co-Emperor 41
20–26 · Michael's Misrule 59
27–33 · Michael's Death and Basil's First Reforms 76
34–42 · Conspiracy, Heirs, the Army, and the East 93
43–49 · Chrysocheir's Head and the Syrian Campaign 112
50–56 · Andrew, Styppiotes, and the West 128
57–65 · Soldanos's Revenge and the Fleets 146
66–72 · Losses, Syracuse, and the Emperor's Life 164
73–84 · Gifts Remembered and the Churches Restored 181
85–90 · The Palace Buildings 199
91–102 · Endowments, Conversions, Sorrows, and Death 216

ΙΣΤΟΡΙΚΗ ΔΙΗΓΗΣΙΣ ΤΟΥ ΒΙΟΥ ΚΑΙ ΤΩΝ ΠΡΑΞΕΩΝ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΙΟΥ ΤΟΥ ΑΟΙΔΙΜΟΥ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΩΣ, ΗΝ ΚΩΝΣΤΑΝΤΙΝΟΣ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΥΣ ΕΝ ΘΕΩΙ ΡΩΜΑΙΩΝ, Ο ΤΟΥΤΟΥ ΥΙΩΝΟΣ, ΦΙΛΟΠΟΝΩΣ ΑΠΟ ΔΙΑΦΟΡΩΝ ΑΘΡΟΙΣΑΣ ΔΙΗΓΗΜΑΤΩΝ ΤΩΙ ΓΡΑΦΟΝΤΙ ΠΡΟΣΑΝΕΘΕΤΟ

1–7 · LINEAGE AND BOYHOOD

Wanting to write the whole history of Roman rule but lacking time and books, Constantine takes the second course: the life of his grandfather Basil. Basil came from Macedonia but drew his race from the Armenian Arsacids, an exiled line the emperors moved to Nike, Philippi, and at last Adrianople; through his mother he claimed kin with Constantine the Great. When Krum took Adrianople the infant was carried into Bulgaria, where kinsmen died as martyrs; on the return an eagle three times shaded the child asleep in the field. His father dead, he planned to go to the reigning city, but longing for his mother held him back.

῏Ην μὲν προθυμία καὶ ἔφεσις ἐκ πολλοῦ ἐμπειρίαν 1
there-was indeed eagerness and desire from long-ago experience
πραγμάτων καὶ γνῶσιν ταῖς τῶν σπουδαιοτέρων ἐμφυτεῦσαι
of-affairs and knowledge in-the of-the more-earnest to-implant
διανοίαις διὰ τοῦ ἀειμνήστου καὶ ἀθανάτου τῆς ἱστορίας
minds through the ever-remembered and immortal of-the history
στόματος, καὶ ἐβουλόμην, ἂν ἄρα οἷός τε ὦ, τοῦ
mouth and I-wished if then able — I-be of-the
σύμπαντος τῆς ἐν Βυζαντίῳ Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἀρχῆς χρόνου τῶν
whole of-the in Byzantium Roman rule time of-the
τε αὐτοκρατόρων καὶ τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτοὺς ἀρχόντων καὶ
both emperors and of-the under them rulers and
στρατηγῶν καὶ ὑποστρατήγων καὶ τῶν καθ᾽ ἕκαστα
generals and lieutenant-generals and of-the(-men) in particular

τὰς ἀξιολογωτέρας τῶν πράξεων ἀναγράψασθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ
the more-notable of-the deeds to-record since but
ἐδεῖτο τὸ πρᾶγμα καὶ χρόνου πολλοῦ καὶ πόνου συχνοῦ
needed the thing both time much and toil great
καὶ βιβλίων ἀφθονίας καὶ σχολῆς τῆς ἀπὸ τῶν
and of-books abundance and leisure the(-leisure) from the
πραγμάτων, ταῦτα δ' ἡμῖν οὐ προσῆν, εἰς τὸν δεύτερον
affairs these-things but to-us not were-present to the second
ἐξ ἀνάγκης ὑποβέβηκα πλοῦν, καὶ τέως ἑνὸς βασιλέως,
from necessity I-have-come-down voyage and meanwhile of-one emperor
ἐπὶ μέγα τὸ τῆς βασιλείας κράτος ὑψώσαντος, ὃς καὶ
to great the of-the empire power having-raised who also
τῆς βασιλείας ἐπώνυμος ἦν καὶ μέγα ὄφελος τῇ πολιτείᾳ
of-the kingship namesake was and great benefit to-the state
Ῥωμαίων ἐγένετο καὶ τοῖς πράγμασιν, ἐξ ἀρχῆς καὶ
of-Romans became and to-the affairs from beginning and
μέχρις αὐτῆς τελευτῆς τὰς πράξεις καὶ τὴν ὅλην ἀγωγὴν
until very end the deeds and the whole conduct
διηγήσασθαι, ὡς ἂν καὶ τοῖς μετέπειτα μὴ ἀγνοῆται
to-narrate so-that — also to-the(-men) after not may-be-unknown
βασιλείου στελέχους ἐπὶ πολὺ τοῦ χρόνου παρεκταθέντος
of-imperial stock to much of-the time having-been-extended
ἡ πρώτη πηγὴ καὶ ῥίζα, καὶ τοῖς ἐκγόνοις ἐκείνου οἴκοθεν
the first spring and root and for-the descendants of-that-one from-home
εἴη ἀνεστηκὼς ὁ πρὸς ἀρετὴν κανών τε καὶ ἀνδριὰς
may-be set-up the toward virtue rule both and statue
καὶ τὸ ἀρχέτυπον τῆς μιμήσεως. εἰ δὲ ἐπιμετρηθείη καὶ
and the archetype of-the imitation if but should-be-measured-out also
χρόνος ἡμῖν ἔτι ζωῆς, καὶ γένηταί τις καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν νόσων
time to-us still of-life and there-be some also from the diseases
ἐκεχειρία μικρά, καὶ μηδὲ τῶν ἔξωθεν εἴη τι
truce small and nor-even of-the(-things) outside be anything

ἐμποδών, ἴσως προσθῶμεν ἐχομένως καὶ τῆς ἄχρις ἡμῶν
in-the-way perhaps we-may-add next also of-the as-far-as us
κατιούσης αὐτοῦ γενεᾶς τὴν ὅλην τῆς ἱστορίας ἀφήγησιν.
descending his line the whole of-the history narration
Πλὴν οὖν οὗτος ὃν ὁ λόγος νῦν ὑποδεῖξαι κατεπαγγέλλεται, 2
but then this-one whom the account now to-show promises
αὐτοκράτωρ Βασίλειος ὡρμᾶτο μὲν ἐκ τῆς Μακεδόνων
emperor Basil set-out indeed from the of-Macedonians
γῆς, τὸ δὲ γένος εἵλκεν ἐξ Ἀρμενίων ἔθνους Ἀρσακίων.
land the but race drew from of-Armenians nation of-Arsacids
τοῦ γὰρ παλαιοῦ Ἀρσάκου, ὃς Πάρθων ἡγήσατο, ἐπὶ μέγα
of-the for old Arsaces who Parthians led to great
δόξης προελθόντος καὶ ἀρετῆς, νόμος τοῖς ὕστερον
of-glory having-advanced and of-virtue law for-the(-men) later
ἐχρημάτισε μὴ ἄλλοθεν βασιλεύεσθαι μήτε Πάρθους
was-established not from-elsewhere to-be-ruled either Parthians
μήτε Ἀρμενίους, ἀλλὰ μηδὲ Μήδους, ἢ παρὰ τοῦ
or Armenians but not-even Medes than from the
γένους Ἀρσάκου καὶ τῶν ἀπογόνων αὐτοῦ. οὕτως οὖν
race of-Arsaces and the descendants his so then
τῶν εἰρημένων ἐθνῶν ὑπὸ τῆς τοιαύτης βασιλευομένων
of-the said nations by the such being-ruled
σειρᾶς, κατά τινας χρόνους τοῦ Ἀρμενίων κατάρχοντος
line at some times of-the of-Armenians ruler
ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἀποιχομένου συνέβη στάσιν γενέσθαι περὶ
from men having-departed it-happened faction to-arise about
τὰ βασίλεια καὶ τοὺς διαδόχους τῆς τοιαύτης ἀρχῆς.
the palace and the successors of-the such rule
Ἀρτάβανος οὖν καὶ Κλειένης οὐ μόνον τῆς προγονικῆς
Artabanus then and Cleienes not only from-the ancestral
ἐκπεπτωκότες ἀρχῆς, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν ζωὴν κινδυνεύοντες, τὴν
having-fallen rule but also the life being-in-danger the

βασιλεύουσαν ταύτην καταλαμβάνουσι Κωνσταντινούπολιν.
reigning this reach Constantinople
Λέων ἦν ὁ μέγας τηνικαῦτα τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν διέπων ἀρχήν,
Leo was the great then the Roman administering rule
ὁ Ζήνωνος πενθερός. οὗτος οὖν τοὺς ἄνδρας ὑποδεξάμενος
the of-Zeno father-in-law this-one then the men having-received
καὶ ἀξίως τῆς περὶ αὐτοὺς εὐγενείας φιλοφρονησάμενος
and worthily of-the about them noble-birth having-welcomed
οἴκησίν τε καὶ δίαιταν τὴν προσήκουσαν ἐν τῇ βασιλίδι
dwelling both and living the fitting in the queen-city
ἀπένειμε. μαθὼν δὲ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τὴν ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος
assigned having-learned but of-the men the from the fatherland
φυγὴν καὶ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ταύτην καταφυγήν, καὶ
flight and to the reigning this refuge and
ὡς εὐμενῶς ὑπὸ τῶν κρατούντων ἐδέχθησαν, ὁ τότε
how kindly by the rulers they-were-received the(-one) then
τὰ τῆς Περσικῆς διέπων ἀρχῆς γράμμασιν αὐτοὺς
the(-affairs) of-the Persian administering rule by-letters them
μετεκαλεῖτο, εἰς τὴν πατρῴαν ἡγεμονίαν ἐγκαταστῆσαι
summoned to the paternal rule to-install
δῆθεν ὡς εὐνοῶν ὑπισχνούμενος, ἑαυτῷ δὲ τὴν τοῦ
forsooth as being-well-disposed promising for-himself but the of-the
ἔθνους ἐντεῦθεν ὑποταγὴν μνηστευόμενος. δεξαμένων δὲ
nation thence subjection wooing having-received but
τούτων τὰ γράμματα καὶ περὶ τῶν πρακτέων ἔτι
these the letters and about the(-things) to-be-done still
διασκοπουμένων, μηνύεται ταῦτα παρά τινος τῶν
deliberating are-reported these-things by some of-the(-ones)
ἐξυπηρετούντων αὐτοῖς τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἡ ἐπιστολὴ
serving them to-the emperor and the letter
ἐγχειρίζεται. γνωσθέντος δὲ τοῦ πράγματος, ὡς οὐκ αὐτοῖς
is-handed-over having-been-known but the thing that not for-them

τοσοῦτον τὴν ἀρχὴν ὅσον ἑαυτῷ τὸ ἔθνος ὁ Πέρσης
so-much the rule as for-himself the nation the Persian
ὑποτάξαι βουλόμενος τὴν τούτων ἐποιεῖτο μετάπεμψιν,
to-subject wishing the of-these be-made summoning
ὅπερ οὔτε τοῖς καλουμένοις οὔτε τῶν Ῥωμαίων
which neither for-the(-ones) called nor of-the Romans
ἐλυσιτέλει τοῖς πράγμασιν, πρόνοια γίνεται τοῦ μὴ τὸ
profited for-the affairs forethought is-taken for-the not the
τοῖς Πέρσαις δοκοῦν εἰς πέρας ἐλθεῖν. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο
to-the Persians seeming-good to end to-come and because-of this
ὑποτεμνομένου τοῦ βασιλέως τήν, εἰ τύχοι, εὐχέρειαν
cutting-off the emperor the if it-should-happen ease
τοῦ δρασμοῦ μετ᾽ εὐπρεποῦς τοῦ σχήματος, ὡς ἐπ᾽
of-the flight with seemly the pretext as to
εὐρυχωρίας δῆθεν καὶ ἀδείας πλείονος, εἰς Νίκην τὴν κατὰ
spaciousness forsooth and security greater to Nike the in
Μακεδονίαν πόλιν μετὰ γυναικῶν καὶ τέκνων (καὶ αὗται
Macedonia city with wives and children also these
γὰρ μετὰ ταῦτα αὐτοῖς ὑπεκλάπησαν) μετοικίζονται.
for after these-things for-them were-stolen-away are-resettled
τοῦ δὲ χρόνου ῥέοντος καὶ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἐπὶ μείζονος
of-the but time flowing and of-the Saracens to greater
δυναστείας προαγομένων, τὴν ὁμοίαν πεῖραν τοῖς τῶν
dominion being-advanced the like attempt on-the of-the
προτέρων ἀπογόνοις Ἀρσακιδῶν ὁ τότε ἀμερμνουνὴς
earlier descendants Arsacids the then commander-of-the-faithful
προεβάλετο, καὶ διὰ γραμμάτων μετεκαλεῖτο αὐτοὺς εἰς
put-forward and through letters summoned them to
τὴν προγονικὴν δῆθεν ἐξουσίαν τε καὶ ἀρχήν. φωραθέντος
the ancestral forsooth authority both and rule having-been-detected
δὲ καὶ τοῦ τοιούτου δράματος Ἡρακλείῳ τῷ τηνικαῦτα
but also of-the such drama by-Heraclius the then

βασιλεῖ, καὶ τῶν γραμμάτων ἐγχειρισθέντων, ἐπεὶ μὴ
emperor and of-the letters having-been-handed-over since not
εὐνοίᾳ τούτων ἔγνω τὴν μετάπεμψιν γενομένην ἀλλ' εἰς
in-goodwill toward-these he-knew the summoning having-happened but for
πρόθεσιν οἰκείας ἐπικρατείας τῶν ταῦτα μηχανωμένων
purpose of-own dominion of-the(-ones) these-things contriving
(ἤλπιζον γὰρ τὸ ἔθνος ἐκ τῆς πρὸς τὸν παλαιὸν Ἀρσάκην
they-hoped for the nation from the toward the old Arsaces
εὐνοίας ῥᾳδίως, εἰ τούτους ἔχοιεν μεθ' ἑαυτῶν, προσάξεσθαι
goodwill easily if these they-had with themselves to-win-over
οἱ Σαρακηνοί), διὰ τοῦτο καὶ εἰς Φιλίππους, μίαν
the Saracens because-of this also to Philippi one
καὶ αὐτὴν τῶν κατὰ Μακεδονίαν τυγχάνουσαν πόλεων,
also itself of-the in Macedonia happening-to-be cities
ὡς ἐπὶ μείζονος ἀσφαλείας μετῴκισε τούτους αὖθις
as for greater safety resettled these again
ὁ βασιλεύς· εἶτα ἐκεῖθεν πάλιν ὡς ἐπὶ λαμπροτέρας
the emperor then from-there again as to more-splendid
πολιτείας καὶ καταστάσεως μετεβίβασεν εἰς Ἀδριανούπολιν.
polity and condition transferred to Adrianople
εὐθέτου δὲ τοῦ τόπου φανέντος αὐτοῖς, κατ' ἰδίαν ὥσπερ
convenient but the place having-appeared to-them by own as-if
συνεστηκότες φατρίαν τε καὶ φυλὴν εἰς πλῆθος ἐγένοντο
formed clan both and tribe into multitude they-became
καὶ ἐπ' εὐπορίας κατέστησαν ἱκανῆς, τὴν πάτριον εὐγένειαν
and in prosperity were-set sufficient the ancestral nobility
διασῴζοντες καὶ ἀσύγχυτον τὸ γένος διαφυλάττοντες.
preserving and unconfused the race guarding

3 Χρόνους δὲ ὕστερον, ἡνίκα Κωνσταντῖνος μετὰ Εἰρήνης
times but later when Constantine with Irene
τῆς μητρὸς ἐβασίλευεν, Μαΐκτης ἐκεῖνος, ἀφ' αἵματος
the mother reigned Maiktes that-one from blood

Ἀρσάκου καὶ αὐτὸς ὤν, κατά τινα πρεσβείαν ἢ χρείαν
of-Arsaces also himself being on some embassy or need
εἰσῄει πρὸς τὴν περίβλεπτον ταύτην Κωνσταντινούπολιν·
came-in to the conspicuous this Constantinople
ὃς ἀνδρὶ περιτυγχάνει κατὰ τύχην ὁμογενεῖ, Λέοντι
who with-man meets by chance of-the-same-race Leo
καλουμένῳ, καὶ γνοὺς αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τῆς ἔξωθεν
called and having-recognized him from the outward
καταστάσεως καὶ περὶ τὴν κατὰ στολὴν ἰδιότητος οὐχ ἕνα
condition and about the in dress peculiarity not one
τῶν τυχόντων καὶ ταπεινῶν ἀλλ᾽ εὐγενῆ καὶ περιφανῆ,
of-the chance and humble but noble and distinguished
καὶ εἰς ὁμιλίαν αὐτῷ καταστὰς καὶ ταύτην ἐθάδα καὶ
and into converse with-him having-entered and this accustomed and
σύντροφον εὑρηκώς, ἐπεὶ τὸ γένος ἀνέμαθεν, καὶ τὴν
familiar having-found since the race he-learned also the
ὁμοῦ οἴκησιν προκρίνει, τῆς οἰκείας τὴν ἀλλοτρίαν διὰ
together dwelling prefers to-the own the another's because-of
τὴν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἀρετήν· καὶ τὸ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀσπασάμενος
the of-the man virtue and the with him having-embraced
κῆδος μίαν τῶν αὐτοῦ θυγατέρων ἠγάγετο, ἐξ
marriage-alliance one of-the his daughters married from
ὧν ὁ τοῦ ἱστορουμένου προῆλθε πατήρ, ὃς καλῶς
whom the of-the(-one) narrated came-forth father who well
ἀναχθεὶς καὶ δι᾽ ἐπαινουμένης ἀγωγῆς καὶ τροφῆς
having-been-brought-up and through praised upbringing and nurture
εἰς ἄνδρας τελέσας, καὶ εὐεξίᾳ σώματος καὶ ῥώμῃ
into men having-reached and in-good-condition of-body and in-strength
διαφέρων καὶ παντοδαπαῖς κοσμούμενος ἀρεταῖς, πολλοὺς
excelling and in-every-kind being-adorned virtues many
ἐκίνει τοὺς δι᾽ ἐπιγαμίας θέλοντας αὐτὸν οἰκειώσασθαι.
moved the(-ones) through marriage wishing him to-make-kin

γυνὴ δέ τις εὐγενὴς καὶ κοσμία κατὰ τὴν Ἀδριανούπολιν
woman but some noble and modest in — Adrianople
τὴν οἴκησιν ἔχουσα, ἀποιχομένου τοῦ ταύτης ἀνδρὸς
the dwelling having having-departed the her husband
σωφρόνως τὴν χηρείαν ἀνύουσα, (φήμη γάρ τις διέτρεχεν
temperately the widowhood accomplishing report for some ran
οὐ παντελῶς ἀμυδρὰ ἐκ τοῦ μεγάλου Κωνσταντίνου ἕλκειν
not altogether faint from the great Constantine to-draw
αὐτὴν τὴν συγγένειαν) τῶν ἄλλων προτιμοτέρα τῶν
her the kinship than-the others more-honored of-the(-ones)
τε καθ' οὓς παρῴκησεν ἐνομίσθη αὐτῷ, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο
both among whom he-dwelt was-thought by-him and because-of this
τὴν ταύτης θυγατέρα εὐγενείᾳ καὶ κάλλει διαφέρουσαν
the her daughter in-nobility and beauty excelling
σώματος καὶ αἰδοῖ κεκοσμημένην ἠγάγετο· ἐξ ὧν
of-body and with-modesty adorned married from whom
ἐβλάστησεν ἡ βασίλειος αὕτη ῥίζα Βασίλειος, πατρόθεν
sprang the imperial this root Basil from-the-father
μὲν ἕλκων τὴν ἐξ Ἀρσάκου συγγένειαν, ἣ προείρηται·
indeed drawing the from Arsaces kinship which has-been-said-before
ἡ δὲ μήτηρ τῇ τε τοῦ μεγάλου Κωνσταντίνου
the but mother with-the both of-the great Constantine
συγγενείᾳ ἐκαλλωπίζετο καὶ ἀπὸ θατέρου μέρους τὴν
kinship was-adorned and from the-other side the
Ἀλεξάνδρου ηὔχει λαμπρότητα. ἐκ τοιούτων γεννητόρων
of-Alexander boasted splendor from such parents
προελθὼν ὁ Βασίλειος εὐθὺς πολλὰ τῆς ὕστερον δόξης
having-come-forth — Basil straightway many of-the later glory
σύμβολα εἶχεν ὑποφαινόμενα· ταινία τε γὰρ κοκκοβαφὴς
tokens had showing-forth band both for scarlet-dyed

παρὰ τὴν πρώτην ἔκφυσιν τῶν τριχῶν ἑωρᾶτο περὶ τὴν
at the first growth of-the hairs was-seen about the
κεφαλήν, καὶ περὶ τὰ σπάργανα πορφύρεα βάμματα.
head and about the swaddling-clothes purple dyes
Ἦν δὲ μέχρι τότε τὸ γένος τῶν ἀπογόνων Ἀρσάκου κατ' 4
was but until then the race of-the descendants of-Arsaces by
ἰδίαν ὥσπερ φατρίαν συνεστηκός, εἰ καὶ ταῖς ἐπιγαμίαις
own as-it-were clan formed if even by-the intermarriages
πολλάκις τοῖς ἐγχωρίοις συνανεκιρνᾶτο, ἐν Ἀδριανουπόλει
often with-the natives it-was-mixed in Adrianople
κεκτημένον τὴν οἴκησιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κροῦμος ἐκεῖνος, ὁ τῶν
having the dwelling when but Krum that-one the of-the
Βουλγάρων ἄρχων, εἰς τὰς πρὸς Ῥωμαίους ἐξυβρίσας
Bulgarians ruler against the with Romans having-outraged
σπονδὰς πολέμιον χάρακα τῇ Ἀδριανουπόλει ἐβάλετο, καὶ
treaties hostile palisade — against-Adrianople set and
χρόνον προκαθίσας συχνὸν ὁμολογίᾳ ταύτην διὰ τὴν τῶν
time having-sat-before long by-agreement it because-of the of-the
ἀναγκαίων ἔνδειαν παρεστήσατο, καὶ τοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ πάντας
necessities lack brought-over and the(-ones) in it all
μετὰ καὶ Μανουὴλ τοῦ ἀρχιερέως τῆς τοιαύτης πόλεως εἰς
with also Manuel the high-priest of-the such city to
Βουλγαρίαν μετήγαγε, συνέβη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων καὶ τοὺς
Bulgaria carried-off it-happened with the others also the
τοῦ Βασιλείου γεννήτορας, ἔτι τοῦτον ἐν τοῖς σπαργάνοις
— of-Basil parents still him in the swaddling-clothes
ἔχοντας, εἰς τὴν τῶν Βουλγάρων ἀπαχθῆναι γῆν· ἔνθα τὴν
having to the of-the Bulgarians to-be-led-away land where the
οἰκείαν τῶν Χριστιανῶν πίστιν ἀνόθευτον διασῴζοντες ὅ τε
own of-the Christians faith unadulterated preserving the both
θαυμάσιος ἐκεῖνος ἀρχιερεὺς καὶ ὁ σὺν αὐτῷ λαὸς πολλοὺς
admirable that high-priest and the with him people many

τῶν Βουλγάρων πρὸς τὴν ἀληθινὴν πίστιν μετήγαγον τοῦ
of-the Bulgarians to the true faith brought-over —
Χριστοῦ (οὔπω γὰρ ἦν τὸ ἔθνος μετηνεγμένον πρὸς τὴν
of-Christ not-yet for was the nation transferred to the
εὐσέβειαν) καὶ πολλαχοῦ τὰ τῆς Χριστιανικῆς διδασκαλίας
piety and in-many-places the of-the Christian teaching
κατεβάλοντο σπέρματα, τῆς ἐθνικῆς τοὺς Σκύθας πλάνης
laid-down seeds from-the heathen the Scythians error
μεθέλκοντες καὶ πρὸς τὸ τῆς θεογνωσίας μετάγοντες φῶς.
drawing-away and to the of-the knowledge-of-god leading light
ἐφ' οἷς πρὸς ὀργὴν κατ' αὐτῶν κινηθεὶς Μουτράγων ὁ
at which to anger against them having-been-moved Moutragon the
τοῦ Κρούμου διάδοχος αὐτόν τε τὸν ἱερώτατον Μανουὴλ
— of-Krum successor him both the most-holy Manuel
καὶ πολλοὺς τοὺς ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἐνδεικνυμένους, ὡς οὐκ
and many the(-ones) at this showing-themselves when not
ἴσχυσε πειράσας πεῖσαι ἀποστῆναι Χριστοῦ, μετὰ πολλὰς
he-was-able having-tried to-persuade to-stand-away from-Christ after many
αἰκίας τῷ διὰ μαρτυρίου θανάτῳ παρέπεμψεν. καὶ οὕτω
torments to-the through martyrdom death sent and so
συνέβη πολλοὺς τῶν τοῦ Βασιλείου συγγενῶν μαρτυρικῆς
it-happened many of-the — of-Basil kinsmen martyrly
εὐκλείας τυχεῖν, ὡς μηδὲ τῆς ἐντεῦθεν σεμνότητος
glory to-obtain so-that not-even of-the thence majesty
αὐτὸν ἀμοιρεῖν. ἄρτι δὲ ἐπισκεπτομένου θεοῦ τὸν λαὸν
him to-have-no-share just but visiting god the people
αὐτοῦ καὶ τὴν ἔξοδον αὐτοῖς πρυτανεύοντος (ὁ γὰρ τῶν
his and the exodus for-them presiding the for of-the
Βουλγάρων ἄρχων μὴ δυνάμενος ἐπὶ πολὺ πρὸς τὰς
Bulgarians ruler not being-able for long against the
Ῥωμαϊκὰς δυνάμεις ἀνταγωνίζεσθαι πάλιν εἰς ὑπόπτωσιν
Roman forces to-contend again toward submission

ἔνευεν), ἐν τῷ ἐπισυνάγεσθαι πρὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα τὸν εἰς
inclined in the to-be-gathered to the ruler the to
τὰ οἰκεῖα ἀπολύεσθαι μέλλοντα λαὸν τῶν Χριστιανῶν,
the own-homes to-be-released going people of-the Christians
ἰδὼν τὸν παῖδα Βασίλειον τῇ τε μορφῇ ἐλευθέριον
having-seen the boy Basil in-the both form free
καὶ χαρίεν ὑπογελῶντα καὶ περισκαίροντα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
and gracefully smiling and skipping-about to himself
ἐφειλκύσατο, καὶ μῆλον θαυμαστὸν τῷ μεγέθει ἐπέδωκεν.
he-drew and apple wonderful in-the size gave
ὁ δὲ παῖς ἀκάκως καὶ θαρραλέως τοῖς τοῦ ἄρχοντος
the but boy guilelessly and boldly on-the of-the ruler
ἐπερειδόμενος γόνασιν ἐν τῷ ἁπλάστῳ ἤθει τὴν οἰκείαν
leaning knees in the unfeigned character the own
εὐγένειαν ἐπεδείκνυτο, ὡς ἐκπλαγῆναι μὲν τὸν ἄρχοντα,
nobility showed so-that to-be-astonished indeed the ruler
διαγριαίνεσθαι δὲ λεληθότως τὴν δορυφόρον τάξιν αὐτοῦ.
to-grow-savage but secretly the bodyguard rank his
Ἀλλ' ἵνα τὰ ἐν μέσῳ συντέμω, ἐξῆλθεν εὐμενείᾳ θεοῦ 5
but that the(-things) in middle I-may-cut-short went-out by-the-favor of-god
πρὸς τὰ οἰκεῖα ἅπας ὁ ἀπαχθεὶς ὡς αἰχμάλωτος
to the own-homes all the having-been-led-away as captive
λαὸς τῶν Χριστιανῶν, συνεξῆλθον δὲ καὶ οἱ τοῦ Βασιλείου
people of-the Christians went-out-with but also the — of-Basil
γονεῖς, τὸν φίλτατον αὐτοῖς παῖδα προσεπαγόμενοι. ἐγένετο
parents the dearest to-them boy bringing-along happened
δέ τι περὶ αὐτὸν εὐθὺς κατὰ τὴν πρώτην ἡλικίαν
but something about him straightway in the first age
θαυμάσιον, τὴν εἰς ὕστερον τύχην παραδηλοῦν, ὅπερ
wonderful the toward later fortune indicating which
οὐ θέμις οἶμαι σιγῇ παρελθεῖν. τῷ γὰρ καιρῷ τοῦ
not lawful I-think in-silence to-pass-over in-the for season of-the

θέρους τῶν τούτου γονέων ἐπὶ τὸν ἴδιον ἐξελθόντων
summer the his parents to the own having-gone-out
ἀγρὸν καὶ τοῖς θερισταῖς ἐπιστατούντων καὶ διεγειρόντων
field and the reapers overseeing and rousing
συντόνως ἐργάζεσθαι, ὡς περὶ πλήθουσαν ἀγορὰν ἡ
intensely to-work when about full market the
ἡμέρα προέκοπτε καὶ ὁ ἥλιος ἤδη σφοδρότερον ταῖς
day advanced and the sun already more-fiercely with-the
μεσημβριναῖς ἀκτῖσιν ἐπέφλεγεν, οἱονεί τινα σκηνὴν ἐκ
midday rays was-blazing as-it-were some tent from
τοῦ συνδέσμου τῶν ἀσταχύων σκευάσαντες ἐν ταύτῃ τὸν
the binding of-the ears-of-grain having-made in this the
παῖδα κοιμηθησόμενον ἔθεντο, ὅπως τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου
boy going-to-sleep they-put that the from the sun
θέρμης ἀβλαβῶς διέλθῃ τὸν καύσωνα. ἐν δὲ τῷ
heat harmlessly he-may-pass-through the burning-heat in but the
ἐκείνους ἐνασχολεῖσθαι τοῖς θερισταῖς ἀετὸς ἐπικαταπτὰς
them to-be-busy with-the reapers eagle having-flown-down
καὶ ἄνωθεν ἐπικαθίσας ἡπλωμέναις ταῖς πτέρυξι τὸ
and above having-perched with-spread the wings the
παιδίον ἐσκίαζεν. ἀρθείσης δὲ παρὰ τῶν ἰδόντων
child shaded having-been-raised but by the(-ones) having-seen
φωνῆς ὅτι ὄλεθρον ἴσως ἐπάξει ὁ ἀετὸς τῷ παιδί, ἡ
cry that destruction perhaps will-bring the eagle to-the boy the
μήτηρ εὐθὺς οἷα μήτηρ φιλόστοργος καὶ φιλότεκνος
mother straightway as mother affectionate and child-loving
πρὸς τὸν παῖδα ἐξέδραμεν. ἰδοῦσα δὲ τὸν ἀετὸν σκιὰν
to the boy ran-out having-seen but the eagle shade
ταῖς πτέρυξι τῷ παιδίῳ περιποιούμενον, καὶ μηδὲ
with-the wings for-the child procuring and not-even
πρὸς τὴν ταύτης ἐκπλαγέντα ἐπέλευσιν ἀλλ' ὥσπερ
at the her having-been-frightened approach but as-it-were

χαριέντως πρὸς αὐτὴν ἀτενίζοντα, οὐκ ἠδυνήθη κατὰ
graciously at her gazing not she-was-able on
τὸ πρόχειρον εἰς κρείττονα πεσεῖν λογισμόν, ἀλλὰ λίθον
the impulse to better to-fall reasoning but stone
ἔβαλε κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ· καὶ οὕτως ἀνέπτη ὁ ἀετὸς καὶ ὡς
threw against it and so flew-up the eagle and as
ἔδοξεν ἀπεχώρησεν. ἐκείνης δὲ αὖθις πρὸς τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ
it-seemed went-away she but again to the husband and
τοὺς ἐργάτας ὑποστρεψάσης, ὁ ἀετὸς κατὰ τὸ πρότερον
the workers having-returned the eagle in the former
σχῆμα παρῆν τὸ παιδίον ἐπισκιάζων, καὶ πάλιν ὁμοίως
posture was-there the child shading and again alike
ἡ φωνὴ παρὰ τῶν θεατῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ πρὸς τὸ
the cry from the onlookers and the mother to the
παιδίον, καὶ τῇ βολῇ τοῦ λίθου ὁ ἀετὸς ἀποσοβούμενος,
child and by-the throw of-the stone the eagle scared-off
καὶ ἡ τῆς μητρὸς πρὸς τοὺς ἐργαζομένους ἐπιστροφή.
and the of-the mother toward the(-ones) working return
ἐναργέστερον δὲ ἄρα τῆς προνοίας δηλῶσαι θελησάσης
more-clearly but then the providence to-show having-wished
ὅτι οὐ κατά τινα τύχης αὐτοματισμὸν ἀλλὰ θείᾳ
that not by some of-chance accident but by-divine
προγνώσει τὸ τελούμενον δείκνυται, ἐκ τρίτου συνέβη
foreknowledge the(-thing) being-accomplished is-shown for third it-happened
τὰ ὅμοια, ὁ ἀετὸς ἐπὶ τὸ παιδίον, οἱ θεωροῦντες
the like-things the eagle on the child the(-ones) watching
βοῶντες, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ ἐπὶ τὸν ἀετόν, καὶ ὁ ἀετὸς
shouting and the mother at the eagle and the eagle
πρὸς βίαν καὶ μόλις ἀπαλλαττόμενος. οὕτω τῶν μεγάλων
by force and scarcely getting-away so of-the great
πραγμάτων ἀεὶ πόρρωθεν ὁ θεὸς προκαταβάλλεταί τινα
affairs always from-afar — god lays-down-beforehand some

σύμβολα καὶ τεκμήρια τῶν εἰς ὕστερον. τοῦτο
tokens and evidences of-the(-things) toward later this
δὲ καὶ εἰς τὴν ἐχομένην ἡλικίαν οὐκ ὀλιγάκις γέγονεν
but also into the following age not seldom has-happened
ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ, ἀλλὰ πολλάκις εὑρέθη ὑπὸ ἀετοῦ ἐν τῷ
in his-case but often he-was-found by eagle in the
ὑπνοῦν σκιαζόμενος. ἀλλ᾽ ἐν οὐδενὶ σχεδὸν λόγῳ τότε
sleeping being-shaded but in no almost account then
ταῦτα ἐτίθετο· πρὸ τοῦ γὰρ ἐμφανεῖς καταστῆναι τὰς ἐν
these-things were-placed before the for evident to-become the in
αὐτῷ ἀρετάς, κἂν μεγάλα τὰ προφαινόμενα ἠμελεῖτο
him virtues even great the(-things) appearing-beforehand were-neglected
καὶ παρελάνθανεν, οὐδενὸς δυναμένου ἐν οἰκίᾳ λιτῇ καὶ
and escaped-notice no-one being-able in house plain and
δημοτικῇ ὅπως ἔλθῃ ποτὲ βαλέσθαι εἰς νοῦν. πλὴν
common how he-should-come ever to-put into mind but
ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ τούτοις ἐπὶ πλέον ἐνδιατρίβειν οὐ πόρρω
since also the in-these for more to-linger not far
τυχὸν δόξει τρόπου θωπεύοντος, καὶ νομισθῶμεν ἴσως
perhaps will-seem from-manner flattering and we-may-be-thought perhaps
ἀπορίᾳ τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν καλῶν ἐν τούτοις τὴν ἱστορίαν
from-lack of-the about him good-things in these the history
ἀπασχολεῖν, τὰ τοῦ ὁμοίου εἴδους καὶ τῆς παιδικῆς
to-occupy the(-things) of-the like kind and of-the childish
ἡλικίας πάντα παρήσομεν, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ἔμπροσθεν
age all we-shall-pass-over to but the(-things) forward
τὸν λόγον σπουδῇ προαγάγωμεν, τὴν τῶν ἐπαίνων
the account with-zeal let-us-lead-forward the of-the praises
ἀπληστίαν ὥσπερ ἄλλο τι τῶν οὐκ ἐπαινετῶν
insatiability as other something of-the(-things) not praiseworthy
ἀπωθούμενοι.
thrusting-away

Τρεφόμενος τοίνυν ὁ παῖς παρὰ τῷ πατρί, καὶ αὐτὸν 6
being-reared therefore the boy with the father and him
ἔχων τῶν πρακτέων ὑφηγητὴν καὶ τῶν ῥητέων
having of-the(-things) to-be-done guide and of-the(-things) to-be-said
ἐξηγητὴν καὶ διδάσκαλον καὶ παιδοτρίβην πρὸς ἅπαν
interpreter and teacher and trainer for all
σπουδαῖον καὶ ἐπαινούμενον, οὔτε μιξανθρώπου Χείρωνος
serious and praised neither of-half-man Chiron
ἐδεήθη ὡς Ἀχιλλεὺς οὔτε Λυκούργου νομοθέτου καὶ
he-needed as Achilles nor of-Lycurgus lawgiver and
Σόλωνος οὔτε ὑπερορίου καὶ ξενικῆς ἀγωγῆς, ἀλλ᾽ ὑπὸ
of-Solon nor of-foreign and alien upbringing but under
τῷ φύσαντι μόνῳ τὰ τῶν καλῶν ἐξασκούμενος
the(-one) having-begotten alone the of-the fine-things being-trained
κάλλιστα, πρός τε τὸ θεῖον ὁσιότητα καὶ εὐσέβειαν καὶ
finest toward both the divine holiness and piety and
πρὸς τοὺς τεκόντας αἰδῶ καὶ εὐπείθειαν, πρὸς γεραιτέρους
toward the parents reverence and obedience toward elders
ὕπειξιν καὶ πρὸς ἥλικας καὶ φυλέτας ἄδολον εὔνοιαν,
yielding and toward contemporaries and fellow-tribesmen guileless goodwill
πρὸς δυνάστας ὑποταγὴν καὶ πρὸς πένητας ἔλεον, ἐν
toward lords submission and toward poor pity in
πάσαις ταῖς ἀρεταῖς ἐπιδήλως ἐξέλαμψεν, σώφρων ἐκ
all the virtues conspicuously he-shone temperate from
νέου καὶ ἀνδρεῖος ἀναφαινόμενος, τήν τε ἰσότητα μετὰ
youth and brave appearing the both equality with
φρονήσεως ἀγαπῶν καὶ διαφερόντως τιμῶν, καὶ ἐν
prudence loving and especially honoring and in
μηδενὶ τῶν ταπεινοτέρων κατεπαιρόμενος· ἐξ ὧν εὔνοια
nothing over-the humbler exalting-himself from which goodwill

παρὰ πάντων αὐτῷ καὶ τὸ πᾶσιν εἶναι προσφιλῆ καὶ
from all to-him and the to-all to-be dear and
ἐράσμιον.
lovely

7 Ἤδη δὲ αὐτοῦ τὴν παιδικὴν παραλλάξαντος ἡλικίαν καὶ
already but he the childish having-passed age and
πρὸς τὴν τῶν μειρακίων ἐλάσαντος καὶ τοῖς ἀνδρικωτέροις
to the of-the lads having-advanced and to-the manlier
καιρὸν ἔχοντος προσβαίνειν ἐπιτηδεύμασιν, ἐξέλιπε τὸν
season having to-step-toward pursuits left the
βίον ὁ φύσας πατὴρ καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἐκεῖθεν ἀπῆρε
life the having-begotten father and to the there departed
κατάστασιν, πένθος δὲ καὶ θρῆνος κατὰ τὴν οἰκίαν,
state grief but and lament through the house
ὡς εἰκός, ἐπεκώμαζε· χηρεία περὶ τὴν μητέρα καὶ
as likely reveled widowhood about the mother and
ὀρφανία περὶ τοῦτον τὸν κράτιστον καὶ αἱ ἐντεῦθεν
orphanhood about this-one the strongest and the thence
ἀνίαι καὶ θλίψεις ἐφύοντο, ἐπέρρει δὲ καὶ φροντίδων
sorrows and afflictions grew flowed-in but also of-cares
ἑσμὸς τῆς κατὰ τὸν βίον διοικήσεως ἕνεκα· ἔρρεπε γὰρ
swarm of-the in the life management for-the-sake inclined for
πρὸς τοῦτον εὐθὺς πᾶσα ἡ περὶ τὸν οἶκον ἐπιμέλεια
to this-one straightway all the about the house care
καὶ ἡ πρόνοια τῆς μητρὸς καὶ τῶν ἀδελφῶν. ἐπεὶ
and the provision of-the mother and of-the brothers since
δὲ ἡ ἀπὸ γεωργίας ἐπικουρία μικρά τις καὶ ἀγεννὴς
but the from farming help small some and ignoble
ἐδόκει αὐτῷ, ἐβουλεύετο πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν εἰσελθεῖν
seemed to-him he-planned to the reigning-city to-go-in
καὶ τὰ τῆς οἰκείας ἀρετῆς ἐπιδείξασθαι κἀντεῦθεν
and the(-things) of-the own virtue to-display and-from-there

ἑαυτῷ τε καὶ τοῖς αὐτοῦ προσπορίσαι τὰ
for-himself both and for-the(-ones) his to-procure the(-things)
δέοντα καὶ μεγαλωφελῆ τὴν προστασίαν ἐπιδείξασθαι καὶ
needful and of-great-benefit the protection to-display and
προμήθειαν· ἤδει γὰρ ἐν ταῖς μεγάλαις καὶ μάλιστα ταῖς
forethought he-knew for in the great and most the
βασιλευομέναις τῶν πόλεων τὰς δεξιὰς φύσεις εὐδοκιμεῖν
imperial of-the cities the clever natures to-be-esteemed
καὶ τοὺς τῶν ἄλλων κατά τι προέχοντας ἐπὶ
and the(-ones) than-the others in something excelling to
λαμπροτέρας τύχης γνωρίζεσθαι, ἐν δὲ ταῖς ἀδοξοτέραις
more-splendid fortune to-be-recognized in but the more-obscure
τῶν πόλεων καὶ ταπειναῖς, ὥσπερ ἐν ταῖς κωμητικαῖς
of-the cities and humble as in the village
ἀναστροφαῖς, ἀμαυροῦσθαι καὶ φθίνειν τὰς ἀρετάς,
ways to-be-dimmed and to-waste-away the virtues
καὶ αὐτὰς ὑφ' ἑαυτῶν ἐν τῷ μὴ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι μηδὲ
and themselves by themselves in the not to-be-displayed nor
θαυμάζεσθαι πρὸς τὸ ἐξίτηλον χωρεῖν καὶ μαραίνεσθαι.
to-be-admired to the faded to-go and to-wither
διὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἡ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν εἴσοδος
because-of these-things indeed the to the reigning-city entry
ἐδόκει αὐτῷ λυσιτελὴς καὶ συμφέρουσα, ἀνθεῖλκε δὲ
seemed to-him profitable and advantageous drew-back but
καὶ κατεῖχεν ὁ τῆς μητρὸς πόθος καὶ τὸ θέλειν
and held the of-the mother longing and the to-wish
ἐπικουφίζειν ταύτης τὰ δυσχερῆ, αὐτῆς ἐκείνης μάλιστα
to-lighten her the hardships herself she most
τὰς γηροτρόφους ἐλπίδας προβαλλομένης καὶ τὴν
the old-age-tending hopes putting-forward and the

ἐγγύθεν ἀπαιτούσης ἐπικουρίαν καὶ ὑπουργίαν ἐν τοῖς
near demanding help and service in the(-things)
καθήκουσιν.
befitting

8–13 · INTO THE CITY AND THE EMPEROR'S SERVICE

His mother's dreams of a golden plant and of Elijah urge him on. Sleeping at the gate of St. Diomedes, Basil is named to the abbot by the martyr as a future emperor, and is placed with Theophilitzes, kinsman of Michael and Bardas. At Patras a monk hails him as emperor, and the widow Danelis gives him gold, thirty slaves, and clothing, asking only spiritual brotherhood with her son. At a banquet he throws the Bulgarians' champion wrestler, and when Michael's unruly horse bolts he mounts it at a run; Michael makes him a groom, then protostrator.

8 Ἐπεὶ δὲ κυριωτέραν ἔδει τὴν θείαν γενέσθαι βουλὴν
since but more-sovereign it-was-needful the divine to-become will
καὶ τοῦτον πρὸς ὅπερ ἀφώριστο κατὰ μικρὸν ὁδῷ
and this-one to what he-had-been-destined by little on-road
βαδίζοντα ἀνελθεῖν, ὀνειράτων ὄψεις πείθουσι τὴν μητέρα
walking to-go-up of-dreams visions persuade the mother
ὑπενδοῦναι αὐτῷ καὶ ὑπεῖξαι τῆς πρὸς τὴν πόλιν
to-give-way to-him and to-yield from-the toward the city
ὁρμῆς, μᾶλλον δὲ αὐτὴν ἐκείνην παρορμῆσαι αὐτὸν καὶ
impulse rather but herself her to-urge him and
προτρέψασθαι τὴν βασιλεύουσαν πόλιν καταλαβεῖν καὶ
to-exhort the reigning city to-reach and
ἐπιδείξασθαι τὸν τῆς ψυχῆς λειμῶνα καὶ τὰ τοῦ γενναίου
to-display the of-the soul meadow and the of-the noble
φρονήματος προτερήματα. ἔδοξε γάρ ποτε ὄναρ ἡ μήτηρ
spirit excellences seemed for once in-dream the mother

ὁρᾶν μέγιστον ἐξ αὐτῆς ἀναβλαστῆσαι φυτόν, ὡς ἡ Κύρου
to-see very-great from her to-spring-up plant as the of-Cyrus
μήτηρ εἶδε τὴν ἄμπελον, καὶ τοῦτο ἐπὶ τῆς οἰκίας αὐτῆς
mother saw the vine and this on the house her
ἑστάναι ἄνθεσί τε κομῶν καὶ καρπῷ βρίθον, χρυσοῦν τε
to-stand with-flowers both luxuriant and with-fruit laden golden both
εἶναι τὸ ἀπὸ γῆς τούτου μέγα στέλεχος, καὶ τὸ κλάδος
to-be the from earth its great stem and the branch
καὶ τὰ φύλλα χρυσοειδῆ. τοῦτο δὲ πρός τινα τῶν συνήθων
and the leaves gold-like this but to some of-the acquaintances
καὶ περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα κατευστοχεῖν δοκούντων διηγησαμένη
and about the such-things to-hit-the-mark seeming having-narrated
ἐπὶ λαμπρᾶς καὶ μεγάλης τύχης ἔσεσθαι δηλοῦν τὸν υἱὸν
to splendid and great fortune to-be to-show the son
αὐτῆς ἤκουσε. καὶ αὖθις δὲ μετά τινα χρόνον ὀλίγον
her she-heard and again too after some time little
ὁρᾷ κατὰ τοὺς ὕπνους ἄνδρα τινὰ γηραιόν, οὗ πῦρ
she-sees in the sleep man some old from-whom fire
ἐξήει ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος, διαρρήδην λέγοντα πρὸς αὐτὴν
came-out from the mouth expressly saying to her
ὅτι ὁ ἀγαπώμενος ὑπὸ σοῦ ὁ υἱός σου Βασίλειος
that the(-one) loved by you the son your Basil
τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας παρὰ θεοῦ τὰ σκῆπτρα
of-the of-the Romans empire from god the scepters
ἐγχειρισθήσεται, καὶ δεῖ σε προτρέψασθαι τοῦτον πρὸς
will-be-entrusted-with and it-is-needful you to-exhort him to
τὴν Κωνσταντινούπολιν εἰσελθεῖν. ἡ δὲ πρὸς τὴν χαρμόσυνον
— Constantinople to-go-in she but at the joyful
ταύτην ἀγγελίαν διαχυθεῖσα καὶ πλήρης γενομένη χαρᾶς
this message melted and full having-become of-joy
προσεκύνησέ τε τὸν γηραιὸν ἐκεῖνον καὶ "τίς εἶ" εἶπεν
did-obeisance both to-the old-man that and who are-you said

αὐτῷ, "ὦ κύριέ μου, ὁ μὴ ἀπαξιώσας ἐποφθῆναι τῇ
to-him O lord my the(-one) not having-disdained to-be-seen by-the
δούλῃ σου, ἀλλ' οὕτως εὐφρόσυνα εὐαγγέλια προσκομίσας
handmaid your but so joyful good-tidings having-brought
μοι;" ὁ δὲ "Ἠλίας" φησίν "ὁ Θεσβίτης εἰμί," καὶ ἀπέπτη
to-me he but Elijah says the Tishbite I-am and flew-away
τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν. διυπνισθεῖσα οὖν ἐκείνη, καὶ ταῖς δεξιαῖς
from-the eyes having-woken then she and by-the auspicious
ταύταις ὄψεσι, μᾶλλον δὲ θείαις ἀποκαλύψεσιν οἷον
these visions rather but divine revelations as-it-were
ἀναπτερωθεῖσα καὶ ζωπυρήσασα, προθύμως αὐτὴ παρώρμα
given-wings and having-kindled eagerly she-herself urged
καὶ ἐξέπεμπε τὸν υἱὸν πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν, καὶ οἷα
and sent-forth the son to the reigning-city and as
μήτηρ ἐνουθέτει καὶ παρεκάλει τόν τε θεῖον φόβον διηνεκῶς
mother admonished and exhorted the both divine fear continually
ἔχειν ἐν τῇ ψυχῇ, καὶ νομίζειν ἀεὶ τὸν τῆς προνοίας
to-have in the soul and to-think always the of-the providence
ὀφθαλμὸν πᾶσαν πρᾶξιν αὐτοῦ καὶ πᾶν νόημα ἐφορᾶν καὶ
eye every deed his and every thought to-oversee and
μηδὲν ἀνάξιον τῆς τοιαύτης ἐφορείας σπουδάζειν, ἀλλὰ τῷ
nothing unworthy of-the such oversight to-pursue but with-the
προσήκοντι καταστήματι τὰς οἰκείας ἀρετὰς ἐπιδείξασθαι
befitting bearing the own virtues to-display
καὶ ἐν μηδενὶ τὴν προγονικὴν καταισχῦναι εὐγένειαν.
and in nothing the ancestral to-disgrace nobility

9 Ἆρας οὖν ἐκ Μακεδονίας τῆς Θρᾴκης πρὸς τὴν
having-set-out then from Macedonia — of-Thrace to the
ἄρχουσαν ταύτην τῶν πόλεων πασῶν ἐπορεύετο, τῶν
ruling this of-the cities all he-went of-the
δυνατῶν τινὶ καὶ περιφανῶν προσμῖξαι βουλόμενος
powerful with-someone and distinguished to-attach-himself wishing

καὶ εἰς θεραπείαν καὶ δουλείαν αὐτοῦ ἑαυτὸν ἀποτάξαι καὶ
and into service and slavery his himself to-assign and
καταστῆσαι. καὶ τὸ μεταξὺ διανύσας διάστημα, καὶ
to-establish and the intervening having-accomplished distance and
κατὰ τὰς χρυσᾶς πύλας τῆς βασιλίδος γενόμενος, καὶ δι᾽
at the golden gates of-the queen-city having-been and through
αὐτῶν ἤδη καταφερομένης τῆς ἡμέρας εἰσελθών, πλησίον
them already declining the day having-entered near
τυγχάνοντι τῷ τοῦ ἁγίου μάρτυρος Διομήδους προσπελάζει
being to-the of-the holy martyr Diomedes he-approaches
μοναστηρίῳ, καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ὁδοιπορίας κατάκοπος ὢν αὐτοῦ
monastery and from the journey worn-out being there
που πρὸ τοῦ πυλῶνος ἐν τοῖς ἐκεῖσε βάθροις ἀτημελῶς
somewhere before the gateway on the there steps carelessly
οὕτως ἐπιρρίψας ἑαυτὸν ἀνεπαύετο. καὶ δὴ περὶ πρώτην
so having-thrown himself he-rested and indeed about first
τυχὸν φυλακὴν νυκτὸς ὄναρ τῷ τῆς μονῆς καθηγουμένῳ
perhaps watch of-night in-dream to-the of-the monastery abbot
ὁ μάρτυς Διομήδης ἐφίσταται, κελεύων ἐπὶ τὸν πυλῶνα
the martyr Diomedes stands-over ordering to the gateway
τῆς μονῆς ἐξελθεῖν καὶ ἐξ ὀνόματος καλέσαι Βασίλειον,
of-the monastery to-go-out and by name to-call Basil
καὶ ὃς ἂν αὐτῷ ὑπακούσῃ καλοῦντι, τοῦτον εἰσαγαγεῖν
and whoever — him obeys calling this-one to-bring-in
εἰς τὸ μοναστήριον καὶ ἐπιμελείας ἀξιῶσαι, τροφῆς τε
into the monastery and of-care to-deem-worthy of-food both
καὶ σκέπης καὶ ἐνδυμάτων καὶ πάσης μεταδόντα τῆς
and shelter and clothes and all having-given-a-share of-the
ἐνδεχομένης χρείας καὶ θεραπείας· κεχρισμένον γὰρ εἰς
possible need and service anointed for for
βασιλέα τυγχάνειν παρὰ θεοῦ, καὶ αὐτὸν μέλλειν εἰς
emperor to-be by god and him to-be-going for

ἀνοικοδομὴν καὶ αὔξησιν τῆς παρούσης γενέσθαι μονῆς.
rebuilding and increase of-the present to-be monastery
ὡς δὲ φαντασίαν ἄλλως καὶ κενὸν διανοίας ἀνάπλασμα
when but fantasy in-vain and empty of-mind fabrication
δόξας τὸ ὁραθὲν ὁ ἡγούμενος ἐν οὐδενὶ λόγῳ
having-thought the(-thing) seen the abbot in no account
ἔθετο, ἀλλὰ πάλιν ἑαυτὸν τῷ ὕπνῳ ἐκδέδωκεν, ἐκ
put but again himself to-the sleep gave-up for
δευτέρου βλέπει καὶ ἀκούει τὰ ὅμοια. ὡς δὲ καὶ ἔτι
second he-sees and hears the like-things when but also still
νωθὴς καὶ ὑπνώδης, ὡς ἔοικεν, ὢν οὐκ ἀνέφερεν, ἐκ
sluggish and sleepy as it-seems being not he-recovered for
τρίτου βλέπει τὸν μάρτυρα, οὐκέτι πράως καὶ ἱλαρῶς
third he-sees the martyr no-longer mildly and cheerfully
παρακελευόμενον ἀλλὰ σφοδρῶς ἀπειλοῦντα καὶ μάστιγας
exhorting but vehemently threatening and whips
τῷ δοκεῖν ἐπιφέρειν πειρώμενον, εἰ μὴ θᾶττον ὑπηρετήσει
to-the seeming to-bring trying if not quicker he-will-serve
πρὸς τὰ λεγόμενα. τότε δ' οὖν μόλις οἱονεὶ
to the(-things) said then but then scarcely as-it-were
ἀνανήψας καὶ τὸν γείτονα θανάτου ὕπνον τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν
having-sobered and the neighbor of-death sleep from-the eyes
ἀποτιναξάμενος τῷ πυλῶνι ἐφίσταται, καὶ κατὰ τὸ
having-shaken-off to-the gateway stands and according-to the
τοῦ μάρτυρος πρόσταγμα ἐξ ὀνόματος ἐκάλει Βασίλειε. ὁ
of-the martyr command by name called Basil he
δὲ εὐθὺς ἀπεκρίνατο "ἰδοὺ ἐγώ, κύριε· τί προστάσσεις
but straightway answered behold I lord what do-you-order
τῷ δούλῳ σου;" εἴσω δὲ αὐτὸν τῆς μονῆς ποιησάμενος,
the servant your within but him the monastery having-made
καὶ ἰδὼν ῥυπῶντά τε καὶ αὐχμῶντα καὶ πολὺν ἐπὶ τοῦ
and having-seen being-filthy both and squalid and much on the

προσώπου τὸν ἥλιον φέροντα, τῆς δεούσης ἐπιμελείας καὶ
face the sun bearing of-the needful care and
θεραπείας ἠξίωσεν καὶ πάσης φιλανθρωπίας μετέδωκεν.
service deemed-worthy and all humanity gave-a-share
εἶτα τὸ μυστήριον παρ᾽ ἑαυτῷ φυλάττειν καὶ πρὸς
then the mystery with himself to-keep and to
μηδένα ἐκλαλῆσαι διὰ τὸ κινδυνώδες εἰσηγησάμενος,
no-one to-blurt-out because-of the danger having-advised
τὴν τοῦ μάρτυρος αὐτῷ ἐφανέρωσε πρόρρησιν καὶ πρὸς
the of-the martyr to-him revealed prediction and for
τὸ μεμνῆσθαι μετὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν ἠσφαλίσατο.
the to-remember after the outcome made-sure
τοῦ δέ, ὡς ὑπὲρ αὐτὸν ὄντος τοῦ πράγματος, μηδὲ
he but as above him being the thing not-even
παραδέχεσθαι δόξαντος, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον δι᾽ αὐτοῦ ἀξιοῦντος
to-accept seeming but rather through him asking
εἰσοικισθῆναι καὶ πρὸς δουλείαν δοθῆναι τῶν ἐμφανεστέρων
to-be-housed and to slavery to-be-given of-the more-conspicuous
τινί, προθύμως ἑαυτὸν εἰς τοῦτο ἐπέδωκεν ὁ ἡγούμενος.
to-someone eagerly himself to this gave the abbot
καὶ ἐπεὶ συνήθως εἶχε πρὸς τὴν τοιαύτην μονὴν καὶ πολλάκις
and since familiarly was to the such monastery and often
ἐτύγχανεν ἐκεῖσε φιλίως φοιτῶν ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως Μιχαὴλ
happened there in-friendship coming the of-the emperor Michael
καὶ Βάρδα τοῦ Καίσαρος συγγενής, ὃν ὑποκοριζόμενοι
and of-Bardas the Caesar kinsman whom diminutively
Θεοφιλίτζην ἐκάλουν, ἐπώνυμον φέροντα τὸν Παιδευόμενον,
Theophilitzes they-called surname bearing the Educated
τούτῳ συνέστησε τὸν Βασίλειον ὁ ἡγούμενος· ἐτύγχανε
to-this-one commended — Basil the abbot happened
γάρ πως τὸ Θεοφιλίδιον τοῦτο γαῦρον ὂν τῷ φρονήματι
for somehow — little-Theophilus this proud being in-the spirit

καὶ μεγαλοφροσύνης οὐκ ἀφεστώς, ἀλλὰ εἰς σπουδὴν ἔχον
and from-magnificence not standing-off but in zeal having
γενναίους ἄνδρας καὶ εὐειδεῖς καὶ εὐήλικας καὶ ἐπ᾽ ἀνδρίᾳ
noble men and good-looking and of-good-age and in courage
μάλιστα καὶ ῥώμῃ σώματος διαφέροντας κεκτῆσθαι περὶ
especially and strength of-body excelling to-have-acquired about
αὐτὸν καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις μέγα φρονεῖν καὶ σεμνύνεσθαι· οὓς
him and on these great to-think and to-pride-himself whom
εὐθὺς ἦν ὁρᾶν σηρικαῖς τε κοσμουμένους ἐσθῆσι καὶ τῇ
straightway it-was to-see with-silk both adorned garments and in-the
ἄλλῃ καταστολῇ διαπρέποντας. τούτοις καταλεγέντα τὸν
other attire distinguished among-these enlisted the
νέηλυν νεανίαν Βασίλειον, καὶ κατὰ πολὺ προέχειν δόξαντα
newcomer youth Basil and by much to-excel seeming
τῶν λοιπῶν κατά τε σωματικὴν ἀλκὴν καὶ ψυχικὴν
of-the rest in both bodily strength and of-soul
ἀνδρίαν, πρωτοστράτορα αὐτοῦ πεποίηκεν ὁ Θεόφιλος,
courage protostrator his made — Theophilus
καὶ ἡμέραν ἐξ ἡμέρας ἐπὶ πλέον ἠγαπᾶτο παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ
and day after day to more he-was-loved by him
καὶ ἐπὶ τοῖς οἰκείοις προτερήμασιν ἐθαυμάζετο· ἐφαίνετο
and for the own excellences was-admired he-appeared
γὰρ καὶ κατὰ χεῖρα γενναῖος καὶ κατὰ ψυχὴν συνετὸς
for both in hand noble and in soul intelligent
καὶ πρὸς τὸ κελευόμενον πᾶν ὀξύς τε καὶ ἐπιτήδειος.
and toward the(-thing) ordered all quick both and fit
10 Ἡ δὲ μήτηρ αὐτοῦ διηνεκῶς ποτνιωμένη περὶ αὐτοῦ, καὶ
the but mother his continually praying about him and
διὰ τὸ μήπω μαθεῖν ὅπως αὐτῷ τὰ τῆς ἀποδημίας
because-of the not-yet to-have-learned how for-him the(-things) of-the journey
εὐώδωται δυσθυμοῦσά τε καὶ ἀσχάλλουσα, βλέπει πάλιν
have-prospered being-dispirited both and distressed sees again

κατὰ τοὺς ὕπνους μέγα φυτὸν κυπαρίσσῳ προσεοικός, κατὰ
in the sleep great plant to-cypress like in
τὴν αὐλὴν αὐτῆς ἑστηκός, φύλλοις τε χρυσοῖς πυκαζόμενον
the courtyard her standing with-leaves both golden thick
καὶ χρυσοῦς τοὺς κλάδους καὶ τὸ στέλεχος ἔχον, οὗπερ
and golden the branches and the stem having over-which
ὕπερθεν ὑπὲρ κορυφῆς ὁ ταύτης υἱὸς Βασίλειος ἐκαθέζετο.
above at top the her son Basil sat
διυπνισθεῖσα δὲ καὶ μεθ᾽ ἡμέραν τινὶ τῶν εὐλαβῶν γυναικῶν,
having-woken but also by day to-some of-the devout women
ἣ νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας κατὰ τὴν Ἄνναν ἐκείνην οὐκ ἀφίστατο
who night and day after — Anna that-one not stood-away
ἀπὸ τοῦ θείου ναοῦ ἀλλὰ ταῖς εὐχαῖς καὶ νηστείαις ἐσχόλαζε,
from the divine temple but to-the prayers and fasts was-given
τὰ τῆς ὄψεως διηγήσατο. ἡ δὲ εὐθυμεῖν τε παρῄνεσεν
the(-things) of-the vision narrated she but to-be-cheerful both advised
ἐπὶ τῷ υἱῷ, καὶ τὸ ὁραθὲν ἐπικρίνασα βεβαίως δηλοῦν
about the son and the(-thing) seen having-judged firmly to-show
ἀπεφήνατο βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων γενέσθαι σου τὸν υἱόν. τοῖς
declared emperor of-Romans to-become your the son to-the
προτέροις οὖν καὶ τοῦτο προσλαβοῦσα λοιπὸν ἡ μήτηρ
former then also this having-added henceforth the mother
οὐκέτι περὶ αὐτοῦ ἐδυσφόρει οὐδὲ ἤσχαλλεν, ἀλλὰ τρεφομένη
no-longer about him was-distressed nor grieved but nourished
ταῖς ἐλπίσι καὶ τὴν ἄνωθεν ἀντίληψιν ἐκδεχομένη ἀνέθαλλεν.
by-the hopes and the from-above help awaiting flourished
Συνέβη δὲ κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνον τὸν χρόνον τὸν κύριον τοῦ Βασιλείου 11
it-happened but at that the time the master — of-Basil
Θεόφιλον διά τινας τοῦ δημοσίου δουλείας παρὰ τοῦ
Theophilus because-of some of-the public services by the
βασιλεύοντος Μιχαὴλ καὶ Βάρδα τοῦ Καίσαρος ἀποσταλῆναι
reigning Michael and Bardas the Caesar to-be-sent

εἰς Πελοπόννησον. συνῆν δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ Βασίλειος, εἰς
to Peloponnese was-with but him also — Basil in
τὴν ἀφορισθεῖσαν αὐτῷ δουλείαν καθυπουργῶν. γενόμενος
the assigned to-him service assisting having-been
δὲ κατὰ τὰς Πάτρας τῆς Ἀχαΐας ὁ εἰρημένος Θεόφιλος
but at — Patras — of-Achaea the said Theophilus
εἰσῄει εἰς τὸν τοῦ πρωτοκλήτου ἀποστόλου Ἀνδρέου ναὸν
went-in into the of-the first-called apostle Andrew church
προσευξόμενος. ὁ δὲ Βασίλειος περὶ τὴν οἰκείαν διακονίαν,
going-to-pray — but Basil about the own ministry
ὡς ἔοικεν, ἀσχολούμενος οὐ συνεισῆλθεν αὐτῷ, ἀλλ᾽ ὕστερον
as it-seems being-busy not went-in-with him but later
καταμόνας τὸ ὀφειλόμενον καὶ αὐτὸς τῷ ἀποστόλῳ
alone the owed also himself to-the apostle
σέβας ἀποδιδοὺς πρὸς τὸν τοιοῦτον ναὸν παραγέγονε.
reverence paying to the such church came
μοναχὸς δέ τις ἐκεῖσε ποιούμενος τὰς διατριβὰς καὶ τὸν
monk but some there making the stay and the
πλείονα χρόνον ἐν τῷ τοῦ ἀποστόλου σχολάζων ναῷ
more time in the of-the apostle spending church
τὸν μὲν Θεόφιλον εἰσελθόντα ἰδὼν οὔτε διανέστη οὔτε
— indeed Theophilus having-entered having-seen neither rose nor
ἐπηύξατο οὔτε τινὸς ἠξίωσε ῥήματος, μηδὲ τὴν περὶ
prayed-for-him nor any deemed-worthy word not-even the about
αὐτὸν ὡς εἰκὸς δορυφορίαν καὶ λαμπρότητα αἰδεσθείς·
him as likely bodyguard and splendor having-respected
ὕστερον δὲ τοῦ Βασιλείου εἰσερχομένου ὑπεξανέστη τε ὥς
later but — Basil entering he-rose-up both as
τινι τῶν κρειττόνων καὶ τὴν ἐξ ἔθους τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν
to-some of-the greater-ones and the from custom to-the emperors
εὐφημίαν προσήνεγκεν. ὅπερ τῶν ἐκεῖσε τυχόντων
acclamation offered which of-the(-ones) there being

ἰδόντες καὶ ἀκηκοότες τινὲς τῇ κατὰ τοὺς τόπους
having-seen and having-heard some to-the in the places
ἐκείνους εὐγενεῖ καὶ πλουσιωτάτῃ γυναικί, ἣ Δανηλὶς
those noble and richest woman who Danelis
ἀπὸ τοῦ ταύτης ἀνδρὸς ὠνομάζετο, ἀπαγγέλλουσιν. ἐκείνη
from the her husband was-named report she
δὲ διὰ πείρας τὸν μοναχὸν γινώσκουσα, ὅτι προορατικοῦ
but by experience the monk knowing that of-prophetic
χαρίσματος κατηξίωται, οὐκ ἐγένετο περὶ τὸ
gift he-had-been-deemed-worthy not became about the(-thing)
λεχθὲν ἀμελής, ἀλλὰ μετακαλεσαμένη τὸν μοναχὸν διῆλθε
said careless but having-summoned the monk went-through
προσονειδίζουσα. "τοσοῦτος χρόνος ἐξ οὗ σοι γνώριμος"
reproaching so-much time from when to-you known
ἔφη "τυγχάνω, πάτερ πνευματικέ, καὶ οἶδάς με πάντως
she-said I-happen father spiritual and you-know me surely
οὖσαν ὑπὲρ τοὺς πολλοὺς καὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ
being above the many and of-the(-women) in the country
ταύτῃ ὑπερέχουσαν καὶ προάρχουσαν, καὶ οὐδέποτε οὔτ'
this excelling and leading and never either
ἐπηγέρθης θεασάμενός με οὔτε ἐπηύξω μοι, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ
you-rose having-seen me or you-prayed-for me but not-even
τῷ υἱῷ ἢ τῷ ἐκγόνῳ μου τὴν τοιαύτην τιμὴν ἀπένειμας.
to-the son or to-the grandson my the such honor you-assigned
καὶ πῶς νῦν ἄνθρωπον εὐτελῆ καὶ ξένον μηδὲ γνώριμον
and how now man paltry and stranger not-even known
τοῖς πολλοῖς ἰδὼν καὶ ὑπεξανέστης καὶ ὡς βασιλέα
to-the many having-seen both you-rose-up and as emperor
ἐτίμησας;" ὁ δὲ εὐλαβὴς ἐκεῖνος μοναχὸς πρὸς αὐτὴν
you-honored the but devout that monk to her
ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐχ ὡς σὺ λέγεις, ἕνα τῶν τυχόντων
answered that not as you say one of-the chance-ones

εἶδον τὸν ἄνδρα ἐγώ, ἀλλ' ὡς μέγαν βασιλέα τῶν
saw the man I but as great emperor of-the
Ῥωμαίων ὑπὸ Χριστοῦ κεχρισμένον εἶδον, καὶ ἐξανέστην
Romans by Christ anointed I-saw and I-rose-up
καὶ ἐπευφήμησα· τοῖς γὰρ ὑπὸ θεοῦ τετιμημένοις
and acclaimed to-the(-ones) for by god honored
ὀφειλομένη πάντως ἐστὶ καὶ ἡ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων τιμή."
owed surely is also the from men honor
διατρίψαντος τοίνυν ἐν τοῖς ἐκεῖσε μέρεσιν ἐπὶ χρόνον
having-spent therefore in the there parts for time
τινὰ τοῦ κυρίου τοῦ Βασιλείου, καὶ τὰς ἐπιτραπείσας
some the master — of-Basil and the entrusted
αὐτῷ τοῦ δημοσίου δουλείας ἀνύσαντος καὶ ἀνατρέχειν
to-him of-the public services having-accomplished and to-run-back
πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν μέλλοντος, ἐπεὶ ἔτυχεν ἀσθενείᾳ
to the reigning-city being-about since it-happened by-sickness
σώματος ληφθεὶς ὁ Βασίλειος, αὐτόθι καταλιμπάνεται.
of-body taken — Basil there is-left-behind
ἐπιμελείας δὲ τῆς προσηκούσης τυχὼν μετὰ χρόνον
care but the befitting having-obtained after time
τινὰ τῆς νόσου κρείττων ἐγένετο καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἄνοδον
some than-the disease stronger he-became and for the going-up
καὶ αὐτὸς ἡτοιμάζετο. μετακαλεσαμένη δὲ αὐτὸν ἡ
also himself was-preparing having-summoned but him the
προρρηθεῖσα γυνὴ Δανηλὶς πολλοῖς καὶ μεγάλοις δεξιοῦται
aforesaid woman Danelis with-many and great welcomes
χαρίσμασιν, ἐμφρόνως πάνυ καὶ συνετῶς ὥσπερ τινὰ
gifts sensibly very and intelligently as some
σπόρον εἰς ἀγαθὴν αὐτὰ καταβαλλομένη χώραν, ἵνα
seed into good them casting land that
ἀμήσῃ παμπολλαπλασίονα ἐν εὐθέτῳ καιρῷ· δέδωκε γὰρ
she-may-reap many-times-more in convenient season she-gave for

αὐτῷ καὶ χρυσὸν ἱκανὸν καὶ ἀνδράποδα πρὸς ὑπηρεσίαν
him both gold sufficient and slaves for service
τριάκοντα καὶ ἐν ἱματισμῷ καὶ διαφόροις εἴδεσι πλοῦτον
thirty and in clothing and various kinds wealth
πολύν, μηδὲν ἕτερον ἐπιζητήσασα τὸ πρότερον παρ' αὐτοῦ
much nothing other having-sought the first from him
ἢ τὸ ποιήσασθαι πνευματικῆς ἀδελφότητος σύνδεσμον
than the to-make of-spiritual brotherhood bond
πρὸς Ἰωάννην τὸν ταύτης υἱόν. ὁ δὲ ὡς ὑπὲρ αὐτὸν
with John the her son he but as above him
μᾶλλον οὖσαν διωθεῖτο τὴν ἔντευξιν διὰ τὸ δοκοῦν τῆς
rather being pushed-away the meeting because-of the seeming of-the
γυναικὸς περιφανὲς καὶ τὸ αὐτοῦ κατὰ τὸ ὁρώμενον
woman distinguished and the his by the(-thing) seen
εὐτελές. ὅμως πλείονα παράκλησιν δεξάμενος ὑπ' αὐτῆς
paltry nevertheless more entreaty having-received from her
τοῦτο πεποίηκε. καὶ τότε οἱονεὶ ἐπὶ πλέον θαρρήσασα
this he-did and then as-it-were to more having-taken-courage
εἶπε φανερῶς πρὸς αὐτὸν ὅτι σε ὁ θεὸς μέγαν
she-said openly to him that you — god great
ἄνθρωπον ἔχει καὶ ἐπὶ μεγάλης μέλλει τιμῆς ἀνυψοῦν,
man has and to great is-going honor to-exalt
καὶ οὐδὲν ἕτερον ἐπιζητῶ ἢ ἀπαιτῶ παρὰ σοῦ πλὴν ἵνα
and nothing other I-seek or demand from you except that
ἀγαπᾷς καὶ ἐλεῇς ἡμᾶς. ὁ δὲ τῆς γῆς ἐκείνης ἁπάσης,
you-may-love and may-pity us he but of-the land that all
εἰ δυνατόν, κυρίαν αὐτὴν ἀποφῆναι, εἰ τοῦτο ἔσται,
if possible mistress her to-make if this shall-be
κατεπηγγείλατο. καὶ οὕτως ἐκεῖθεν ἀπάρας ἀνῄει καὶ
promised and so from-there having-set-out went-up also
αὐτὸς πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν καὶ τὸν αὐτοῦ κύριον. ἀπὸ
himself to the reigning-city and the his master from

δὲ τῶν ἐντεῦθεν αὐτῷ προσγεγονότων χρημάτων μετὰ τὴν
but the thence to-him having-accrued moneys after the
ἐπάνοδον ἐξωνήσατο κτήματα κατὰ Μακεδονίαν μεγάλα,
return he-bought estates in Macedonia great
καὶ κατέστησεν ἐπ᾽ εὐπορίας ἅπαντας τοὺς προσήκοντας
and set in prosperity all the(-ones) belonging
ἱκανῆς, καὶ γέγονε πλούσιος καὶ αὐτός, ὥσπερ ταῖς
sufficient and became rich also himself as in-the
ἀρεταῖς, οὕτω δὴ καὶ τοῖς κτήμασι καὶ τοῖς χρήμασι.
virtues so indeed also in-the estates and in-the moneys
συνῆν δὲ ὅμως τῷ κυρίῳ αὐτοῦ καὶ διηκόνει αὐτῷ.
was-with but nevertheless the master his and served him
12 Κατὰ δέ τινα τῶν ἡμερῶν Ἀντίγονος ὁ πατρίκιος καὶ
on but one of-the days Antigonus the patrician and
δομέστικος τῶν σχολῶν κλητόριον ἐν ταῖς βασιλικαῖς
domestic of-the scholae banquet in the imperial
οἰκίαις, αἳ κατὰ τὴν πλησιάζουσαν τοῖς βασιλείοις
houses which by the near to-the palace
αὐλήν, ᾠκοδόμησε καὶ πολυτελὲς ἐσκευάσατο, ἑστιάτορα
court built and costly prepared host
καὶ δαιτυμόνα τὸν οἰκεῖον πατέρα Βάρδαν ποιούμενος.
and feaster the own father Bardas making
ὁ δὲ Καῖσαρ τοὺς μείζονας τῆς συγκλήτου καὶ τοὺς
the but Caesar the greater of-the senate and the(-men)
οἰκείους παραλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς συνήθεις πρὸς τὴν
of-his-household having-taken and the acquaintances to the
εὐωχίαν ἀπῄει, συμπαραλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς ἀπὸ Βουλγαρίας
feast went-off having-taken-along also the from Bulgaria
φίλους, συνήθως κατὰ τὸν τότε καιρὸν τῇ βασιλευούσῃ
friends customarily at the then season in-the reigning-city
ἐνδιατρίβοντας. παρῆν δὲ τῇ ἑστιάσει καὶ Θεόφιλος
spending-time was-present but at-the banquet also Theophilus

ὁ τοῦ Βασιλείου κύριος οἷα συγγενὴς καὶ αὐτὸς τοῦ
the — of-Basil master as kinsman also himself of-the
Καίσαρος, ἀλλὰ καὶ Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ πατρίκιος, ὁ τοῦ
Caesar but also Constantine the patrician the of-the
καθ' ἡμᾶς λογοθέτου τοῦ δρόμου καὶ ἐν φιλοσοφίᾳ ἄκρου
among us logothete of-the drome and in philosophy highest
καὶ ἀδωροτάτου περιφανῶς πατρικίου Θωμᾶ πατήρ.
and most-incorruptible conspicuously patrician Thomas father
οἱ δὲ Βούλγαροι ἀεί πως οἰηματίαι καὶ καυχηματίαι
the but Bulgarians always somehow conceited and boastful
τυγχάνοντες, ἐπεὶ ἔτυχον τότε μεθ' ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες
being since they-happened then with themselves having
Βούλγαρον ἐπ' ἀνδρίᾳ σεμνυνόμενον σώματος καὶ ἄκρον ἐν
Bulgarian in strength priding-himself of-body and highest in
παλαισμοσύνῃ ὑπάρχοντα, ὃν οὐδεὶς σχεδὸν μέχρι τότε
wrestling being whom no-one almost until then
τῶν προσπαλαιόντων κατέβαλεν, οὐκ ἀνεκτὸν ἐδόκουν
of-the(-ones) wrestling-against threw not bearable they-seemed
ἐπ' αὐτῷ φρονεῖν ἀλλ' ὑπὲρ τὸ μέτρον ἠλαζονεύοντο.
in him to-think but beyond the measure they-boasted
τοῦ δὲ πότου προϊόντος καὶ θυμηδίας χορευούσης κατὰ
of-the but drinking going-on and gladness dancing at
τὴν τράπεζαν, λέγει ὁ μικρὸς ἐκεῖνος Θεόφιλος πρὸς τὸν
the table says the little that Theophilus to the
Καίσαρα ὅτι ἔχω, δέσποτα, ἄνθρωπον ὃς ἐὰν κελεύῃς ἵνα
Caesar that I-have master man who if you-order that
παλαίσῃ μετὰ τοῦ περιβοήτου τούτου Βουλγάρου. μέγιστον
he-may-wrestle with the famous this Bulgarian greatest
γὰρ ὄνειδος τοῦτο Ῥωμαίοις, καὶ οὐδεὶς ὑποίσει τὴν
for reproach this to-Romans and no-one will-bear the
ἀλαζονείαν αὐτῶν, εἰ οὗτος ἀκαταγώνιστος ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ
boastfulness their if this-one unbeaten in Bulgaria

παραγένηται. τοῦ δὲ Καίσαρος γενέσθαι προστάξαντος, ὁ
returns the but Caesar to-happen having-ordered the
προμνημονευθεὶς Κωνσταντῖνος πατρίκιος, σφόδρα φιλίως
aforesaid Constantine patrician very friendly
πρὸς τὸν Βασίλειον διακείμενος ἅτε καὶ αὐτὸς ἐξ Ἀρμενίων
to — Basil disposed as also himself from Armenians
ἕλκων τὸ γένος, ἐπεὶ δίγυρον εἶδε τὸν τόπον ἐν ᾧ
drawing the race since moist he-saw the place in which
διαγωνίζεσθαι ἔμελλον, καὶ ἐδεδοίκει μή πως ὀλισθήσῃ
to-contend they-were-going and he-feared lest somehow should-slip
τυχὸν ὁ Βασίλειος, αἰτεῖ προτροπὴν γενέσθαι παρὰ τοῦ
perhaps — Basil asks instruction to-be-given by the
Καίσαρος ἐκ ξύλων ἐπιρρανθῆναι πρίσμα κατὰ τὸ ἔδαφος.
Caesar from wood to-be-sprinkled sawdust on the floor
οὗ γενομένου συμπλακεὶς τῷ Βουλγάρῳ ὁ Βασίλειος,
which having-been-done having-grappled with-the Bulgarian — Basil
καὶ θᾶττον συμπιέσας καὶ περισφίγξας αὐτόν, ὡσεὶ δεσμόν
and quicker having-squeezed and having-bound-tight him as bundle
τινα χόρτου κοῦφον καὶ ἄψυχον ἢ ἐξ ἐρίου πόκον ξηρόν
some of-hay light and lifeless or from wool fleece dry
τε καὶ ἐλαφρόν, οὕτω ῥᾳδίως αὐτὸν ἐπάνω τῆς τραπέζης
both and light so easily him above the table
μετεωρίσας ἀπέρριψεν. τοῦ δὲ γεγονότος οὐδεὶς τῶν
having-lifted threw-off of-the but having-happened no-one of-the(-ones)
παρόντων ἦν ὃς οὐ περιεῖπε καὶ ἐθαύμαζε τὸν Βασίλειον.
present was who not made-much-of and admired — Basil
ἐκπλαγέντες δὲ καὶ οἱ Βούλγαροι τὴν περιουσίαν τῆς
having-been-astonished but also the Bulgarians at-the abundance of-the
εὐχερείας τε καὶ δυνάμεως ἔμειναν ἐνεοί. ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνης δὲ
ease both and power remained speechless from that but
τῆς ἡμέρας ἤρξατο ἐπὶ πλέον ἡ τοῦ Βασιλείου φήμη εἰς
the day began to more the — of-Basil fame into

πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν διαφοιτᾶν, καὶ τοῖς ἁπάντων διεφέρετο
all the city to-spread and in-the of-all was-carried
στόμασιν, ἀπόβλεπτος ἤδη καθεστηκώς.
mouths conspicuous already having-become
Ἦν δὲ παρὰ τῷ βασιλεῖ Μιχαὴλ ἵππος ἀφηνιαστὴς καὶ 13
was but with the emperor Michael horse unbridled and
ἄτακτος σκληραύχην τε καὶ ἀγέρωχος, τὰ δ' ἄλλα
unruly stiff-necked both and arrogant the but other(-respects)
γενναῖος καὶ ἀγαθὸς καὶ καθ' ἡλικίαν καὶ κάλλος καὶ τάχος
noble and good and in age and beauty and speed
μέγας καὶ θαυμαστός, ὃς εἰ ἔτυχε λυθεὶς τοῦ δεσμοῦ
great and wonderful which if it-happened loosed from-the bond
ἢ ἄλλως πως ἀφεθείς, λίαν ἦν δυσχερὴς εἰς χεῖρας αὖθις
or otherwise somehow let-go very was difficult into hands again
ἐλθεῖν καὶ πολλὰ πράγματα πρὸς τὸ κατασχεῖν παρεῖχε
to-come and many troubles for the to-hold-down provided
τοῖς ἱπποκόμοις. συνέβη δέ ποτε τὸν βασιλέα πρὸς θήραν
to-the grooms it-happened but once the emperor to hunt
ἐξελθόντα καὶ τὸν τοιοῦτον ἵππον ἐπιβεβηκότα αὐτοχειρίᾳ
having-gone-out and the such horse having-mounted with-his-own-hand
ῥάβδῳ τυχεῖν λαγωοῦ. εὐθὺς οὖν ὑφ' ἡδονῆς ὁ βασιλεὺς
with-stick to-hit hare straightway then from pleasure the emperor
θᾶττον ἐκ τοῦ ἵππου καθήλατο πρὸς τὸ σφάξαι τὸν
quicker from the horse leapt-down for the to-slaughter the
λαγωόν. ἄφετος δὲ ὁ ἵππος καταλειφθεὶς ἀπεσκίρτησεν,
hare let-loose but the horse having-been-left bolted
καὶ πολλῶν συνδραμόντων, καὶ τῶν τε τοῦ ἱπποστασίου
and many having-run-together and of-the both of-the stable
ἀρχόντων καὶ μαγγλαβιτῶν καὶ λοιπῶν τῶν περὶ
officers and manglabites and other of-the(-men) about
αὐτοὺς συγκινηθέντων, οὐκ ἦν τινὶ δυνατὸν τὸν
them having-been-stirred not it-was for-anyone possible the

ἵππον λαβεῖν, ὥστε θυμωθέντα τὸν βασιλέα κελεῦσαι, εἰ
horse to-take so-that angered the emperor to-order if
κρατηθείη, διακοπῆναι τοὺς ὀπισθίους αὐτοῦ τῶν ποδῶν.
it-should-be-caught to-be-cut the hind its of-the feet
ὁ δὲ Καῖσαρ Βάρδας παρὼν ἐδεῖτο τοῦ βασιλέως
the but Caesar Bardas being-present begged the emperor
μὴ διὰ μίαν κακίαν τοσαύτην ἀρετὴν ἵππου μάτην
not because-of one vice so-great virtue of-horse in-vain
παραπολέσθαι. ὁ οὖν Βασίλειος συμπαρὼν τῷ κυρίῳ
to-be-lost — then Basil being-present-with the master
αὐτοῦ λέγει πρὸς αὐτὸν ὅτι εἰ παραδράμω τὸν βασιλικὸν
his says to him that if I-run-beside the imperial
ἵππον καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἵππου ἐκτιναχθεὶς ἔποχος
horse and from the my horse having-sprung mounted
αὐτοῦ γένωμαι, ἆρα μὴ διὰ τὸ βασιλικοῖς φαλάροις
on-it I-become — perhaps because-of the with-imperial trappings
κεκοσμῆσθαι αὐτὸν ἀγανάκτησις παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
to-have-been-adorned it indignation from the emperor
γένηται κατ᾽ ἐμοῦ; τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως ὑπομνησθέντος καὶ
arise against me the but emperor having-been-reminded and
κελεύσαντος τοῦτο γενέσθαι, ἑτοίμως καὶ εὐφυῶς ὁ
having-ordered this to-happen readily and cleverly —
Βασίλειος τοῦτο πεποίηκεν. ὃ θεασάμενος ὁ βασιλεύς,
Basil this did which having-beheld the emperor
καὶ ἀγαπήσας τὴν μετ᾽ ἀνδρίας εὐφυίαν αὐτοῦ καὶ σύνεσιν,
and having-loved the with courage cleverness his and intelligence
εὐθέως ἀπὸ τοῦ Θεοφιλίτζη αὐτὸν ἀνέλαβέ τε καὶ εἰς τοὺς
straightway from — Theophilitzes him took both and into the
βασιλικοὺς κατέταξε στράτορας. προσεῖχε δὲ καὶ ἠγάπα
imperial enrolled grooms he-attended but and loved
αὐτόν, ὁρῶν αὐτοῦ τὸ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους ἐν πᾶσι διαφέρον
him seeing his the toward the others in all-things excelling

κατὰ πολύ. διὸ καὶ πολλάκις ἐπιδειξάμενον κατενώπιον
by much wherefore also often having-shown-himself before
αὐτοῦ εἰς τὴν τοῦ πρωτοστράτορος ἀξίαν ἐβίβασε.
him to the of-the protostrator dignity raised

14–19 · CHAMBERLAIN, BARDAS'S FALL, AND CO-EMPEROR

At a hunt Basil splits a wolf's head with the emperor's club, and Bardas foresees his line's ruin; Theodora, seeing Basil at table, faints at the signs her husband foretold. Bardas ousts Damian, and Michael makes Basil chamberlain. On the Cretan expedition, at Kepoi, Michael plots Bardas's death; when the assassins falter, Basil steels them and Bardas is cut down. Michael adopts Basil, makes him magistros, and crowns him co-emperor, as Isaac foretold of an Arsacid; the envious Symbatius and Peganes rebel and are blinded and exiled, and Basil later recalls them.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα κυνηγεσίου καταγγελθέντος εἰς τὸ λεγόμενον 14
after but these-things hunt having-been-proclaimed to the so-called
Φιλοπάτιον, ἣν ὁ πρωτοστράτωρ κατὰ τὸν τύπον τοῦ
Philopation which the protostrator according-to the custom of-the
βασιλέως προπορευόμενος ἔφιππος, ἐπεφέρετο δὲ καὶ τὸ
emperor going-before on-horseback carried but also the
ῥόπαλον τὸ βασιλικὸν ἐπὶ τῆς ζώνης αὐτοῦ, ὃ βαρδούκιον
club the imperial on the belt his which bardoukion
οἶδε καλεῖν ἡ συνήθεια. θορύβου δὲ κινουμένου ἀπὸ τῶν
knows to-call the usage uproar but being-stirred by the(-men)
συμπληρούντων τὸ κυνηγέσιον, ἐξέθορεν ἐκ τῆς ὕλης λύκος
filling-out the hunt leapt-out from the wood wolf
παμμεγεθέστατος, ὥστε σχεδὸν πάντας διαπτοηθῆναι καὶ
very-great so-that almost all to-be-terrified and
εἰς ταραχὴν ἐμπεσεῖν. ὁρμήσας δὲ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ὁ Βασίλειος,
into confusion to-fall having-rushed but against it — Basil

καὶ ῥίψας ἐξόπισθεν τὸ βασιλικὸν βαρδούκιον, ἔτυχε
and having-thrown from-behind the imperial bardoukion hit
τοῦ θηρίου κατὰ τὸ μέσον τῆς κεφαλῆς καὶ ταύτην
the beast at the middle of-the head and it
ἐδιχοτόμησεν. ὁ δὲ Καῖσαρ ὄπισθεν τοῦ βασιλέως κατὰ
split-in-two the but Caesar behind the emperor according-to
τὸ εἰωθὸς πορευόμενος καὶ τὸ γεγονὸς θεασάμενος
the custom going and the(-thing) having-happened having-beheld
εἶπε πρός τινας τῶν συνεπομένων συνήθων αὐτοῦ καὶ
said to some of-the following acquaintances his and
γνωστῶν ὅτι οἶμαι πάσης τῆς γενεᾶς ἡμῶν τὴν κατάλυσιν
familiars that I-think of-all the line our the destruction
τὸν ἄνθρωπον τοῦτον μέλλειν γενήσεσθαι· κατεστοχάζετο
the man this to-be-going to-become he-guessed
γὰρ καὶ τὸ πρὸς πάντα τούτου ἐπιτυχές τε καὶ εὐτυχὲς
for both the in all-things his success both and good-fortune
καὶ τὴν διὰ ταῦτα τοῦ βασιλέως διάθεσιν πρὸς αὐτόν.
and the because-of these-things of-the emperor disposition toward him
οὐ μόνον δέ, ἀλλὰ καὶ παρὰ Λέοντός φασι τοῦ τηνικαῦτα
not only and but also from Leo they-say the then
ἐπὶ παντοδαπῇ σοφίᾳ πρωτεύοντος ἀκοῦσαι αὐτόν, ἐν τῷ
in every-kind-of wisdom being-first to-have-heard him in the
πολλάκις περὶ τούτων πυνθάνεσθαι τοῦ ἀνδρός, πρῶτα μὲν
often about these-things to-inquire of-the man first indeed
ὅτι ὑπὸ νεανίσκου τινὸς εὑρίσκω τὴν κατάλυσιν τῆς ὑμῶν
that by youth some I-find the destruction of-the your
γενεᾶς· ἔπειτα, ὡς εἰς ἐμφάνειαν προέβαινεν ὁ Βασίλειος,
line then as into prominence advanced — Basil
καὶ τῷ δακτύλῳ τοῦτον ὑποδεῖξαι τῷ Καίσαρι, λέγοντα
also with-the finger him to-point-out to-the Caesar saying
ὅτι οὗτος τυγχάνει ὃν ἔλεγον διάδοχον ὑμῶν μέλλειν
that this-one is whom I-said successor your to-be-going

ἔσεσθαι. ἐξ οὗ καὶ ὑφωρᾶτο καὶ ἐνήδρευεν ὁ Καῖσαρ
to-be from which also suspected and lay-in-wait the Caesar
ἀεὶ τὸν Βασίλειον, εἰ καὶ μηδὲν ἀκυρῶσαι ἠδύνατο
always — for-Basil if even nothing to-annul he-was-able
τῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ θείου προκυρωθέντων βουλήματος· οὐ
of-the(-things) by the divine ratified-beforehand will not
γὰρ οὕτως ἀπροσδόκητον ὡς ἄφυκτον ἀεὶ τὸ πεπρωμένον
for so unexpected as inescapable always the fated
ἐστίν. καὶ ταῦτα μέν, εἰ καὶ κατὰ παράβασιν ἴσως,
is and these-things indeed if even by digression perhaps
ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἔξω τῆς ὑποθέσεως εἴρηται.
but not outside of-the subject has-been-said
Φιλοθήρου δὲ τοῦ βασιλέως τυγχάνοντος, καὶ πάλιν μετ᾽ 15
fond-of-hunting but the emperor being and again after
ὀλίγον κυνηγεσίου τε χάριν καὶ μετρίου περιοδεύματος
little of-hunt both for-the-sake and moderate tour
κατὰ τὸν τῆς Ἁρμαμενταρέας λεγόμενον τόπον περάσαντος,
to the of-the Armamentarea called place having-crossed
εἶτα δουλικίου κατ᾽ ἰδίαν εὐτρεπισθέντος καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως
then meal by own having-been-made-ready and the emperor
ἐπὶ τραπέζης μετὰ Θεοδώρας καθεσθέντος τῆς οἰκείας
at table with Theodora having-sat the own
μητρὸς καὶ τῶν ἰδίων συγγενῶν καὶ οἰκειοτέρων τῆς
mother and the own kinsmen and more-intimate of-the
συγκλήτου, προσεκλήθη καὶ ὁ πρωτοστράτωρ τοῦ
senate was-invited also the protostrator the
βασιλέως κελεύσαντος, καὶ καθεσθέντος αὐτοῦ ἤρξατο
emperor having-ordered and having-sat he began
Θεοδώρα ἡ βασιλὶς πυκνότερον ἀτενίζειν καὶ ἀφορᾶν
Theodora the empress more-frequently to-gaze and to-look
πρὸς αὐτὸν καὶ κατανοεῖν καὶ παρεπισκοπεῖν αὐτὸν
at him and to-observe and to-examine him

ἀκριβέστερον. ἐπιγνοῦσα δέ τινα σύσσημα ἐν αὐτῷ κατ᾽
more-closely having-recognized but some signs in him by
ὀλίγον ἐλιποψύχησεν, ὥστε καὶ ὕδωρ ἐπιχεθῆναι αὐτῇ
little she-fainted so-that also water to-be-poured on-her
καὶ διὰ τοῦ ἀπὸ ῥόδων στάγματος τὸ πνεῦμα μόλις
and through the from roses essence the breath scarcely
ἀνακαλέσασθαι, ὅτεπερ οἱ παρόντες ὑπανεχώρησαν. εἰς
to-recall when the(-ones) present withdrew to
ἑαυτὴν δὲ ἐλθοῦσα καὶ ἀναλάμψασα παρὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ καὶ
herself but having-come and having-revived by the son and
βασιλέως ἐπηρωτᾶτο, τί ἄρα τὸ γεγονὸς ἐπ᾽ αὐτῇ,
emperor she-was-asked what then the(-thing) having-happened to her
καὶ πόθεν οὕτως ἀθρόως ἐπισυνέβη αὐτῇ ἡ ἔκστασις. ἡ δὲ
and whence so suddenly befell her the fit she but
μόλις ἑαυτὴν ἐκ τῶν θορύβων τῶν φρενῶν συναθροίσασα
scarcely herself from the confusions of-the wits having-gathered
ἔλεγεν ὅτι ὃν ἤκουον παρὰ τοῦ πατρός σου, δέσποτα
said that whom I-heard from the father your master
καὶ τέκνον ἐμόν, μέλλειν ἐξολοθρεῦσαι τὴν γενεὰν ἡμῶν,
and child my to-be-going to-destroy the line our
οὗτός ἐστιν ὃν λέγεις Βασίλειον· τὰ σύμβολα γάρ, ἅπερ
this-one is whom you-call Basil the signs for which
ἔλεγεν ἔχειν τὸν ἡμᾶς διαδέχεσθαι μέλλοντα, οὗτος ὁ
he-said to-have the(-one) us to-succeed going this the
ἄνθρωπος κέκτηται. ὅθεν τὸ πρᾶγμα ὅλον τῇ διανοίᾳ
man has whence the thing whole in-the mind
παραλαβοῦσα, καὶ ὥσπερ κατ᾽ ὀφθαλμοὺς τὸν ὄλεθρον
having-taken and as before eyes the destruction
βλέπουσα, διαταραχθεῖσα ἐξέλιπον. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὸ δέος
seeing having-been-confounded I-fainted the but emperor the fear
ἀφαιρῶν τῆς μητρός, καὶ εἰς τὸ καθεστὸς ἐπανάγων καὶ
taking-away from-the mother and to the settled bringing-back and

παραμυθούμενος, "κακῶς ὑπέλαβες" εἶπεν, "ὦ μῆτερ· ὁ
consoling wrongly you-supposed he-said O mother the
γὰρ ἄνθρωπος οὗτος ἰδιώτης ἐστὶ καὶ πάνυ ἀφελής, ἀνδρίαν
for man this private-man is and very simple strength
μόνον ἔχων, οἵαν ὁ πάλαι Σαμψών, καὶ οὐδὲν ἕτερον, ἀλλ'
only having such-as the of-old Samson and nothing other but
ὥς τις Ἐνὰκ ἢ Νεμβρὼδ ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις ἡμῶν ἀναφανείς.
as some Anak or Nimrod in the days our having-appeared
ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοίνυν μηδένα φόβον ἔχε, μηδ' ὑπόνοιάν τινα
from him therefore no fear have nor suspicion any
κεκτήσῃ πονηράν." καὶ τότε μὲν οὕτως τὸ τοιοῦτον κῦμα
have wicked and then indeed so the such wave
ὑπὸ θεοῦ φρουρούμενος παρέδραμεν ὁ Βασίλειος.
by god guarded passed — Basil

Εἶχε δὲ κατὰ τοὺς χρόνους ἐκείνους παρακοιμώμενον ὁ 16
had but in the times those parakoimomenos the
βασιλεὺς τὸν εὐνοῦχον Δαμιανὸν τὸν πατρίκιον, τῷ γένει
emperor the eunuch Damian the patrician by-the race
Σκλάβον, ὃς διὰ φιλοδέσποτον πάθος ἔλεγε πολλάκις
Slav who because-of master-loving passion said often
τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ περὶ ἄλλων μέν τινων ὡς μὴ κατὰ τὸ
to-the emperor both about others indeed some as not according-to the
δέον τῶν πραγμάτων ἐξηγουμένων, ἐξαιρέτως δὲ περὶ τοῦ
needful the affairs managing especially but about the
θείου αὐτοῦ Βάρδα τοῦ Καίσαρος, ὡς τὸ πλεῖστον τοῦ
uncle his Bardas the Caesar how the most of-the
κράτους εἰς ἑαυτὸν μετηγάγετο καὶ πολλάκις ἐκφέρεται τοῦ
power to himself he-transferred and often is-carried-beyond the
καθήκοντος, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ἐνίας τῶν τοῦ Καίσαρος ἀνέτρεπεν
befitting and by the some of-the of-the Caesar overturned
διοικήσεων ἑτέρως ἔχειν τὰ πράγματα ἀναδιδάσκων τῷ
arrangements otherwise to-be the affairs teaching to-the

βασιλεῖ. δι' ἃ συμπεισθεὶς ὁ Καῖσαρ ὑπὸ τῶν
emperor because-of which having-been-persuaded the Caesar by the
οἰκείων φίλων καὶ γνησίων παραινετῶν καὶ συμβούλων
own friends and genuine advisers and counselors
κατὰ τοῦ Δαμιανοῦ συσκευάζεται, καὶ πολλαῖς διαβολαῖς
against — Damian schemes and many slanders
κατ' αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα χρησάμενος, καὶ πιθανῶς
against him to the emperor having-used and plausibly
συνθεὶς τὰ κατηγορούμενα, μετεκίνησε τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως
having-composed the charges changed the of-the emperor
γνώμην καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς περὶ τὸν Δαμιανὸν εὐνοίας μετέστησεν,
mind and from the toward — Damian goodwill removed-it
ὥστε καὶ διαδέξασθαι πεῖσαι τῆς οἰκείας ἀξίας αὐτόν.
so-that also to-succeed to-persuade the own dignity him
ἐξωσθέντος οὖν ἐκείνου ἐχήρευε λοιπὸν ἐπὶ χρόνον
having-been-thrust-out then that-one was-vacant henceforth for time
τινὰ τὸ τοιοῦτον ἀξίωμα. ἀλλ' ὅταν ἡ πρόνοια πρὸς ὃ
some the such dignity but when the providence toward what
βούλεται συνελαύνῃ τὰ πράγματα, καὶ φρόνησις ἀπρακτεῖ
it-wills drives-together the affairs both prudence is-idle
καὶ πανουργία τοῖς οἰκείοις σοφίσμασι περιδράσσεται. τοῦ
and villainy in-the own sophistries is-caught of-the
γὰρ Καίσαρος καὶ πολλῶν ἄλλων ἐκεῖνόν τε καὶ τοῦτον
for Caesar and many others that-one both and this-one
εἰς τὸ τοιοῦτον ἐπαναβιβασθῆναι ἀξίωμα λογοποιούντων
to the such to-be-raised-again dignity making-up-stories
καὶ λεληθότως ἐπισπευδόντων, παρὰ πᾶσαν αὐτῶν ἐλπίδα
and secretly hastening beyond all their hope
μετὰ καιρὸν οὐ πολὺν προβάλλεται παρακοιμώμενον ὁ
after time not long puts-forward as-parakoimomenos the
βασιλεὺς τὸν Βασίλειον, τιμήσας αὐτὸν καὶ πατρίκιον,
emperor — Basil having-honored him also as-patrician

καὶ γυναικὶ συζεύξας εὐμορφίᾳ σώματος καὶ κάλλει καὶ
and to-wife having-yoked in-shapeliness of-body and beauty and
κοσμιότητι πρωτευούσῃ πασῶν τῶν εὐγενίδων σχεδόν, ἣ
in-modesty being-first of-all the noble-women almost who
θυγάτηρ ἐτύγχανε τοῦ παρὰ πάντων ἐπ᾽ εὐγενείᾳ
daughter happened-to-be of-the(-man) by all for nobility
καὶ φρονήσει λαλουμένου τότε τοῦ Ἴγγερος. τούτου δὲ
and prudence spoken-of then — of-Inger this but
γενομένου, καὶ καθ᾽ ἑκάστην ἐπιδιδούσης τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως
having-happened and by each(-day) increasing the of-the emperor
ἀγάπης πρὸς τὸν Βασίλειον, ὁρῶν ὁ Καῖσαρ καὶ τῷ
love toward — Basil seeing the Caesar both by-the
φθόνῳ δακνόμενος καὶ ὑπὲρ τοῦ μέλλοντος ὀρρωδῶν
envy stung and for the future fearing
πολλάκις τοὺς ἐπὶ διαβολῇ τοῦ Δαμιανοῦ γενέσθαι
often the(-ones) for slander — of-Damian to-happen
αὐτὸν βουλευσαμένους καὶ παρορμήσαντας ἐλοιδορεῖτο καὶ
him having-counseled and having-urged reviled and
κατεμέμφετο, ἄφρονας αὐτοὺς καὶ κακοβούλους ἀποκαλῶν,
blamed senseless them and ill-advised calling
“οἷς” φησίν “ἐγὼ παρὰ τὸ δέον πεισθείς, καὶ
by-whom he-says I beyond the needful having-been-persuaded also
ἐξώσας ἀλώπεκα, λέοντα ἀντεισήγαγον, ἵνα πάντας
having-thrust-out fox lion brought-in-instead that all
ἡμᾶς λαφύξῃ καὶ καταβρώξηται.”
us he-may-gulp-down and devour
Ἄρτι δὲ τοῦ βασιλέως Μιχαὴλ μετὰ Βάρδα τοῦ 17
just but the emperor Michael with Bardas the
θείου Καίσαρος κατὰ Κρήτης ἐκστρατεύοντος, καὶ
uncle Caesar against Crete campaigning and
σοβαρώτερον τοῦ Καίσαρος χρωμένου τοῖς πράγμασι
more-haughtily the Caesar handling the affairs

καὶ ἐξουσιαστικώτερον ἐκφέροντος τὰ προστάγματα,
and more-authoritatively issuing the commands
ἤρξαντο πυκναὶ καὶ συνεχεῖς αἱ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ διαβολαὶ καθ᾽
began frequent and continuous the against him slanders by
ἑκάστην τῷ βασιλεῖ Μιχαὴλ διαγγέλλεσθαι. ἐν Κήποις
each(-day) to-the emperor Michael to-be-reported at Kepoi
δὲ γενομένων αὐτῶν (τόπος δὲ οὗτος κατὰ τὴν πρὸς
but having-been they place but this(-is) on the near
Μαιάνδρῳ τῶν Θρᾳκησίων παράλιον) καὶ εἴτε κατὰ
Maeander of-the Thracesians coast and whether by
τύχην εἴτε κατὰ σπουδὴν τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως αὐλαίας
chance or by design of-the of-the emperor pavilion
ἤτοι κόρτης ἐπὶ χθαμαλοῦ καὶ ἐπιπέδου ταθείσης
that-is curtain on low and level having-been-stretched
τόπου, τῆς δὲ τοῦ Καίσαρος ἐν ἀπόπτῳ καὶ ὑψηλῷ,
place the(-pavilion) but of-the Caesar in conspicuous and high
ταύτης εὐλόγου δῆθεν δραξάμενοι ἀφορμῆς οἱ πάλαι
this reasonable forsooth having-seized occasion the(-ones) long-ago
βαρυνόμενοι καὶ μισοῦντες τὸν Καίσαρα πολλὰς κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ
being-burdened and hating the Caesar many against him
ὡς ἐντρυφῶντος ἤδη καὶ φανερῶς εἰς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
as wanton already and openly against the emperor
ἐξυβρίζοντος, εἰ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασιν οὐκ ἀρκούμενος κἂν
outraging if with-the other all-things not being-content even
τούτῳ φιλοτιμήσασθαι ἔσπευσεν, ἵνα χθαμαλὴ μὲν καὶ
in-this to-show-ambition he-hastened that low indeed and
ταπεινὴ ἡ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος σκηνὴ δείκνυται, ἡ
humble the of-the emperor tent is-shown the(-tent)
δὲ ἐκείνου περιφανὴς καὶ μετέωρος. πεισθεὶς οὖν
but his conspicuous and lofty having-been-persuaded then
τούτοις ὁ βασιλεὺς κινεῖται πρὸς τὴν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ
by-these the emperor is-moved toward the against him

συσκευὴν καὶ πρὸς τὴν βουλὴν καὶ σκέψιν τῆς αὐτοῦ
plot and toward the counsel and consideration of-the his
ἀναιρέσεως· οὐ γὰρ ἠδύνατο φανερῶς κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ τι
killing not for he-was-able openly against him anything
εἰπεῖν ἢ ἀποφήνασθαι διὰ τὸ ὁμότιμον σχεδὸν εἶναι καὶ
to-say or to-declare because-of the of-equal-rank almost to-be and
κοινωνὸν τῆς ἀρχῆς, καὶ διὰ τὸ δεδιέναι πάντας τὴν
partner of-the rule and because-of the to-fear all the
ἑταιριῶτιν αὐτοῦ φατρίαν καὶ σύστασιν, καὶ τὸ πάντας
companion his faction and combination and the all
τοὺς ἄρχοντάς τε καὶ στρατηγοὺς αὐτῷ προσανακεῖσθαι
the rulers both and generals on-him to-depend
καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ὁρᾶν, ὡς
and to him rather than to the emperor to-look as
καὶ μᾶλλον ἐκείνου τοῖς πράγμασι νήφοντος καὶ πρὸς
also more than-he in-the affairs being-sober and to
τὸ δοκοῦν μεταφέροντος ἕκαστα, καὶ μάλιστα διὰ τὸ
the seeming transferring each-thing and especially because-of the
τὸν ἀνθύπατον καὶ πατρίκιον Ἀντίγονον τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ
the proconsul and patrician Antigonus the son his
δομέστικον τὸ τηνικαῦτα τῶν βασιλικῶν τυγχάνειν σχολῶν.
domestic — at-that-time of-the imperial to-happen-to-be scholae
πλὴν ἔσχε πολλοὺς ὁ βασιλεὺς τοὺς κοινωνοῦντας αὐτῷ
but had many the emperor the(-ones) sharing with-him
τοῦ βουλεύματος καὶ κατεπαγγελλομένους καταπράξασθαι
of-the counsel and promising to-accomplish
τὴν σφαγήν. ὡς οὖν κατὰ τὴν ἕω συνήθως ὁ Καῖσαρ
the slaughter when then at the dawn customarily the Caesar
πρὸς τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ἦλθε σκηνήν, καίτοι πονηρῶν
to the of-the emperor came tent although wicked
οἰωνῶν προφανέντων αὐτῷ, ὅπως περὶ τῶν προκειμένων
omens having-appeared to-him that about the(-things) proposed

βουλεύσωνται, εὔθετον καιρὸν τοῦτον εἶναι νομίσας
they-may-take-counsel convenient season this to-be having-thought
ὁ βασιλεὺς πρὸς τὴν τούτου ἀναίρεσιν διὰ νεύματος
the emperor for the his killing by nod
γνωρίζει τῷ πατρικίῳ Συμβατίῳ λογοθέτῃ τοῦ δρόμου
makes-known to-the patrician Symbatius logothete of-the drome
τυγχάνοντι, ὃς καὶ γαμβρὸς ἦν τοῦ Καίσαρος ἐπὶ θυγατρὶ
being who also son-in-law was of-the Caesar by daughter
καὶ τῆς κατ' αὐτοῦ βουλῆς ἐκοινώνει βασιλεῖ, ἐξελθόντι
and of-the against him counsel shared with-emperor having-gone-out
εἰσαγαγεῖν τοὺς αὐτόχειρας αὐτοῦ γενέσθαι ὀφείλοντας.
to-bring-in the(-ones) slayers his to-become obliged
ὃς ἐξελθὼν καὶ τὸ συγκείμενον σημεῖον πεποιηκώς,
who having-gone-out and the agreed sign having-made
ὅπερ ἦν τὸ τοῦ σταυροῦ σημεῖον, τῇ οἰκείᾳ ὄψει
which was the of-the cross sign on-the own face
ἐπισφραγίσασθαι, ἐπεὶ ἐκεῖνοι μαλακόψυχοι τυχὸν ὄντες
to-seal-on-himself since they faint-hearted perhaps being
ἀπεδειλίασαν καὶ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ δεινῷ γεγονότες διὰ
lost-courage and at very the terrible-deed having-become because-of
τὸ μέγεθος τῆς πράξεως ἰλιγγίασαν καὶ τριβὴ τοῦ χρόνου
the greatness of-the deed grew-dizzy and wearing-away of-the time
ἐγένετο, ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ κατέστη ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ διά τινος
happened in helplessness was the emperor and through some
τῶν βασιλείων κατευναστῶν μαθὼν αὐτοὺς κατεπτηχέναι
of-the imperial chamberlains having-learned them to-have-cowered
καὶ δειλιᾶν καὶ ἀναβάλλεσθαι τὸ ἐγχείρημα, τῷ ὄντι
and to-be-afraid and to-put-off the undertaking in-the fact
διανοίας τόλμημα καὶ φρενὸς ἀνδρείας καὶ εὐθαρσοῦς· καὶ
of-mind a-daring and of-spirit manly and bold and
τῶν ἔνδον τινὰ οἰκεῖόν τε καὶ πιστὸν ἐκπέμπει πρὸς
of-the(-men) inside some own both and trusty he-sends-out to

Βασίλειον τὸν πατρίκιον καὶ παρακοιμώμενον, καὶ δηλοῖ
Basil the patrician and parakoimomenos and shows
μετὰ δέους αὐτῷ ὡς εἰ μὴ θᾶττον ἀναρρώσῃς τοὺς εἰς
with fear to-him that if not quicker you-strengthen the(-men) for
τὸ πρᾶγμα ἠὐτρεπισμένους καὶ παρορμήσῃς αὐτίκα πρὸς
the deed made-ready and urge at-once to
τὸ ἔργον χωρῆσαι, πάντως οἶδα ὅτι εὐθέως ἐμὲ δεήσει
the work to-go surely I-know that straightway me it-will-be-needful
ὑπὸ τούτου ἀναιρεθῆναι· ἀδύνατον γὰρ λαθεῖν αὐτὸν
by this-one to-be-killed impossible for to-escape-notice-of him
τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ μοι βεβουλευμένα, καὶ δόξετε
the(-things) against him by-me planned and you-will-seem
μᾶλλον ὑμεῖς αὐτόχειρες καὶ σφαγεῖς χρηματίσαι μου. ἅπερ
rather you slayers and murderers to-be-called my which
ἀκηκοὼς ὁ Βασίλειος, καὶ περὶ τοῦ βασιλέως μή τι
having-heard — Basil and about the emperor lest anything
πάθοι ἐν ἀγωνίᾳ γεγονώς, θᾶττον θαρραλέους ἐποίησε τοὺς
he-suffer in agony having-become quicker bold made the
δειλοὺς καὶ τοὺς τρέμοντας εὐθαρσεῖς, καὶ τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως
cowardly and the trembling confident and to-the of-the emperor
αὐτοὺς ὑπηρετήσασθαι βουλῇ διηρέθισεν. ὧν ὥσπερ μένους
them to-serve counsel provoked who as-if with-fury
πλησθέντων καὶ ἀθρόως εἰσπηδησάντων εἰς τὴν βασιλέως
filled and all-at-once having-leapt-in into the of-emperor
σκηνήν, ὁ Καῖσαρ, ὅπερ ἦν, ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸν δόξας εἶναι
tent the Caesar which it-was against him having-thought to-be
τὴν συνδρομήν, ἀναπηδήσας τοῖς τοῦ βασιλέως περιεπλάκη
the rush having-sprung-up the of-the emperor embraced
ποσίν. ὃν ἐκεῖθεν ἑλκύσαντες οἱ αὐτόχειρες πρὸ τῶν
feet whom from-there having-dragged the slayers before the
ποδῶν τοῦ βασιλέως ἀπέσφαξαν. πρώτην εἶχε μετ᾽ εἰκάδα
feet of-the emperor slaughtered first had after twentieth

ὁ μὴν ὁ Ἀπρίλλιος, τῆς τεσσαρεσκαιδεκάτης ἐπινεμήσεως.
the month the April of-the fourteenth indiction
εὐθὺς οὖν ἡ στρατεία τῷ βασιλεῖ καταλύεται, καὶ
straightway then the campaign for-the emperor is-dissolved and
πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανέρχεται.
to the reigning-city he-returns

18 Τῆς δὲ προνοίας ἀγούσης τὸν Βασίλειον εὐμηχάνως πρὸς
of-the but providence leading — Basil skillfully to
ὅπερ ἐβούλετο, εὐθέως μετὰ τὴν ἐκ τῆς στρατείας
what it-willed straightway after the from the campaign
ὑποστροφὴν υἱοποιεῖται τοῦτον ὁ βασιλεύς (ἐτύγχανε γὰρ
return adopts this-one the emperor he-happened for
καθάπαξ οἰκείας γονῆς ἀμοιρῶν) καὶ τῆς τῶν μαγίστρων
altogether of-own offspring having-no-share and of-the of-the magistroi
ὑπερλάμπρου τιμῆς ἀξιοῖ. ἐφ' ὧν τῇ βασκανίᾳ
most-splendid honor deems-worthy at which by-the envy
διαρρηγνύμενος ὁ λογοθέτης Συμβάτιος, καὶ μὴ δυνάμενος
bursting the logothete Symbatius and not being-able
τὸν φθονούμενον καθορᾶν οὐκ ὀλίγην ἐπίδοσιν καθ' ἑκάστην
the envied to-behold not little increase by each(-day)
λαμβάνοντα, παραιτεῖται μὲν τὴν προσοῦσαν αὐτῷ μέχρι
taking asks-to-be-relieved-of indeed the belonging to-him until
τότε διακονίαν, ὡς μὴ δυνάμενος κατὰ τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
then ministry as not being-able in the reigning-city
ζῆν, τῆς δὲ τῶν Ἰώνων ἤτοι Θρακησίων στρατηγίας
to-live of-the but of-the Ionians that-is Thracesians generalship
αἰτεῖ τὴν ἀρχήν. οὗ τὴν αἴτησιν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐκπληρῶν
asks the command of-whom the request the emperor fulfilling
προβάλλεται τοῦ εἰρημένου θέματος στρατηγόν. ὀλίγου
puts-forward of-the said theme as-general little
δὲ διελθόντος καιροῦ, καὶ τῶν πραγμάτων ἐπισφαλῶς
but having-passed season and of-the affairs precariously

σαλευόντων καὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς κραδαινομένης καὶ ζητούσης
tossing and of-the rule quaking and seeking
τὸν προστησόμενον διὰ τὸ τὸν βασιλέα πρὸς ἄλλοις
the(-one) going-to-preside because-of the the emperor to other-things
μᾶλλον εἶναι ἢ πράγμασιν εἰς δέον εἰδέναι χρῆσθαι,
rather to-be than with-affairs as needful to-know to-deal
πρότερον δὲ τὰ πολλὰ λανθάνειν διὰ τὸ τὸν κοινωνὸν
before but the many-things to-escape-notice because-of the the partner
τῆς ἀρχῆς Καίσαρα ἀεὶ τὰ κατεπείγοντα διοικεῖν καὶ
of-the rule Caesar always the pressing-things to-administer and
αὐτῷ σχεδὸν ἀνακεῖσθαι τὰ πράγματα καὶ τὴν μέριμναν
to-him almost to-be-referred the affairs and the care
πᾶσαν τῆς κοσμικῆς διοικήσεως, ἐγίνοντο καταβοήσεις
all of-the worldly administration there-arose outcries
τε καὶ διαγογγυσμοὶ κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως παρά τε
both and grumblings against the emperor from both
τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς καὶ τοῦ πολιτεύματος καὶ παρὰ
the senatorial council and the citizen-body and from
πάντων σχεδὸν τῶν ὄντων ἐπὶ τῶν διοικήσεων καὶ
all almost of-the(-men) being over the administrations and
μεταχειριζομένων τὰ πράγματα, ἔτι δὲ καὶ παρὰ τῶν
handling the affairs still but also from the
στρατευμάτων καὶ παντὸς τοῦ πλήθους τοῦ ἀστικοῦ·
armies and all the multitude the urban
ἃ διὰ τῶν οἰκειοτάτων ὁ βασιλεὺς γνούς, καὶ
which-things through the most-intimate the emperor having-learned and
μόλις οἷον ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἀνανήψας, καὶ ἐπιγνοὺς τὴν
scarcely as for short having-sobered and having-recognized the
οἰκείαν περὶ τὰ κοινὰ οὐ μόνον ἀμέλειαν καὶ ῥᾳθυμίαν
own about the common-affairs not only neglect and indolence
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀνεπιτηδειότητα καὶ ἀφέλειαν, καὶ ἐπανάστασιν ἢ
but also unfitness and simplicity and uprising or

ἀπόστασιν παρὰ τοῦ πλήθους εὐλαβηθείς, ἔγνω κοινωνὸν
revolt from the multitude having-feared he-decided partner
τῶν πραγμάτων προσλαβέσθαι καὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς· καὶ ἐπείπερ
of-the affairs to-take-on and of-the rule and since
πρὸ ὀλίγου υἱοποιησάμενος ἦν τὸν Βασίλειον, ἤδει δὲ
before little having-adopted he-was — Basil he-knew but
αὐτὸν οὐ μόνον ἀνδρίᾳ ἀλλὰ καὶ συνέσει τῶν πολλῶν
him not only in-courage but also in-intelligence than-the many
διαφέροντα καὶ ἱκανὸν ἀναπληροῦν αὐτοῦ τὸ ἐν τῇ
excelling and able to-fill-up his the in the
κυβερνήσει τοῦ κοσμικοῦ σκάφους ὑστέρημα, ἅμα
steering of-the worldly vessel shortcoming at-the-same-time
καὶ τῆς θείας ἐναγούσης εἰς τοῦτο προνοίας αὐτόν, βεβαιοῖ
also the divine leading to this providence him confirms
πρὸς τοῦτο τὴν γνώμην αὐτοῦ ὥστε Βασίλειον βασιλέα
toward this the mind his so-that Basil emperor
*** καὶ δὴ θεοῦ συνεφαπτομένου τῆς βουλῆς καὶ τοῦ
(lacuna) and indeed god taking-hold-with of-the counsel and of-the
πράγματος, κατ᾽ αὐτὴν τὴν ἡμέραν τῆς ἁγίας πεντηκοστῆς,
deed on very the day of-the holy pentecost
ἐν ᾗ τοῦ πατρὸς ὁ παράκλητος πρὸς τοὺς τοῦ Χριστοῦ
on which of-the father the paraclete to the — of-Christ
καὶ θεοῦ ἡμῶν ἐφοίτησε μαθητάς, ἐν τῷ περιβλέπτῳ
and god our came disciples in the conspicuous
καὶ ἐπωνύμῳ τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ σοφίας ναῷ τὸν βασίλειον
and named of-the — of-god wisdom church the imperial
ὁ Βασίλειος περιτίθεται στέφανον, χειρὶ μὲν τοῦ τότε
— Basil puts-on crown by-hand indeed of-the then
Μιχαὴλ βασιλεύοντος, ψήφῳ δὲ καὶ κρίσει Χριστοῦ τοῦ
Michael reigning by-vote but and judgment of-Christ the(-one)

ἀεὶ βασιλεύοντος. ἔκτην πρὸς ταῖς εἴκοσιν εἶχεν ὁ Μαΐος
always reigning sixth besides the twenty had the May
μήν, τῆς τεσσαρεσκαιδεκάτης κατὰ Ῥωμαίους ἐπινεμήσεως.
month of-the fourteenth among Romans indiction
Μαθὼν δὲ τὸ γεγονὸς ὁ Συμβάτιος κατὰ τὴν 19
having-learned but the(-thing) having-happened — Symbatius in the
ἀπονεμηθεῖσαν αὐτῷ στρατηγίδα διάγων, οὐκ ἠδυνήθη
assigned to-him command spending-time not was-able
τὸν διατήκοντα φθόνον αὐτῷ ἀνθρωπίνως ὑπενεγκεῖν,
the consuming envy for-him humanly to-bear
ἀλλὰ συναπομανέντα σχὼν καὶ Πηγάνην ἐκεῖνον τὸν
but as-fellow-madman having also Peganes that the
πατρίκιον, ὃς τῆς κατὰ τὸ Ὀψίκιον ἡγεῖτο στρατηγίδος,
patrician who of-the in the Opsikion led command
εἰς ἀπόστασιν βλέπουσι, καὶ μοῦλτον ἐξ ἀπονοίας ἔγνωσαν
to revolt they-look and rebellion from madness resolved
συνιστᾶν. ἀναπείσαντες δὲ καὶ τὰ ὑπ᾽ αὐτοὺς στρατεύματα
to-form having-persuaded but also the under them armies
εἰς ἔργον ἐξάγουσι τὰ βουλεύματα, εὐφημοῦντες μὲν
into deed lead-out the counsels acclaiming indeed
τὸν Μιχαὴλ ὡς βασιλέα διὰ τὸ ἐκ τούτου τὰ
— Michael as emperor because-of the from this the
πλήθη ἐπάγεσθαι καὶ μὴ δοκεῖν πτέρναν ἀποστασίας
multitudes to-be-attracted and not to-seem heel of-revolt
αἴρειν κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος, δυσφημοῦντες δὲ τὸν
to-raise against the emperor defaming but —
Βασίλειον καὶ μυρίαις πλύνοντες ὕβρεσι. φρυαξάμενοι δὲ
Basil and with-countless washing insults having-snorted but
ταῖς τοιαύταις ἀπονοίαις κατὰ τὸν τοῦ θέρους καιρόν,
with-the such madnesses in the of-the summer season
καὶ πολλοὺς ἀγροὺς τῶν κατὰ τὴν βασιλίδα δυνατῶν
and many fields of-the in the queen-city powerful

πυρπολήσαντες, καὶ ναῦς οὐκ ὀλίγας τῶν πρὸς τὴν
having-burned and ships not few of-the(-ones) to the
βασιλεύουσαν ποιουμένων τὸν πλοῦν ἐν τοῖς ὅρμοις
reigning-city making the voyage in the anchorages
κατασχόντες καὶ κατακαύσαντες, ὡς ἔφθασεν ὁ χειμών,
having-seized and having-burned when came the winter
διαλύονται, διαδιδρασκόντων λάθρα καὶ κατ' ὀλίγους
they-disband running-away secretly and by few
τῶν κοινωνῶν τοῦ τολμήματος. ὃ συνιδόντες οἱ τοῦ
of-the partners of-the daring which having-perceived the of-the
δράματος ἀρχηγοὶ φυγῇ τὴν σωτηρίαν λαβεῖν ἐπειράθησαν.
drama leaders by-flight the safety to-take tried
καὶ ὁ μὲν Συμβάτιος εἰς τὸ τῆς Πλατείας λεγομένης
and — indeed Symbatius into the of-the Plateia called
πέτρας φρούριον ὑπεισέρχεται, ὁ δὲ Πηγάνης κατέχει
rock fort steals-in — but Peganes holds
τὸ Κοτυάειον. ἀλλ' εἰς οὐδὲν τῆς τοιαύτης ἐπινοίας
— Cotyaeum but into nothing from-the such device
ἀπώναντο· ὑπὸ γὰρ τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως ληφθέντες χειρὸς
they-profited by for the of-the emperor having-been-taken hand
δέσμιοι πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀναφέρονται. καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ
bound to him are-brought-up they-find but
τοῦτον ἐν τοῖς τοῦ ἁγίου Μάμαντος παλατίοις διάγοντα·
him in the of-the holy Mamas palace spending-time
οὓς ἰδών, καὶ πολλὰ τῆς ἀπονοίας καὶ ἀταξίας
whom having-seen and much of-the madness and disorder
ὀνειδίσας ἔτι καὶ λοιδορησάμενος, καὶ διὰ μαστίγων
having-reproached still also having-abused and with whips
πρότερον ἐπεξελθὼν ἱκανῶν, ὕστερον ἐκδότους ταῖς
first having-gone-against sufficient later handed-over to-the
τοῦ νόμου ποιναῖς ἐποιήσατο. καὶ ὁ μὲν Συμβάτιος
of-the law punishments made and — indeed Symbatius

ἀμφοτέρων τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν καὶ τῆς μιᾶς χειρὸς στερηθεὶς
of-both the eyes and of-the one hand deprived
εἰς ἐξορίαν ἐκπέμπεται, ὁ δὲ Πηγάνης καὶ αὐτὸς τῇ τῶν
into exile is-sent — but Peganes also himself to-the of-the
ὀφθαλμῶν ὑποπεσὼν ἐκκοπῇ καὶ τῇ τῶν ῥινῶν διὰ
eyes having-fallen-under gouging and to-the of-the nostrils by
ξίφους ἀνατομῇ, πρὸς ἐξορίαν καὶ αὐτὸς ἀποστέλλεται·
sword cutting to exile also himself is-sent
οὗς ὁ γενναῖος βασιλεὺς Βασίλειος, ὅτε τὴν μόναρχον
whom the noble emperor Basil when the sole
ἐξουσίαν ἐδέξατο, καὶ τῆς ὑπερορίας ἀνεκαλέσατο καὶ
authority he-received both from-the exile recalled and
ταῖς πρὸ τῆς ἀποστασίας δωρεαῖς ἐφιλοτιμήσατο, καὶ
with-the before the revolt gifts honored and
μηδὲ ἴχνος μνησικακίας πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἐνδειξάμενος καὶ
not-even trace of-rancor toward them having-shown and
ὁμοδιαίτους πολλάκις ἐποιεῖτο καὶ λόγοις παρεμυθεῖτο,
table-companions often made and with-words consoled
καὶ ἔργοις εὐεργετῶν ῥᾷον αὐτοὺς ἐποίει φέρειν τὸ τῆς
and by-deeds benefiting more-easily them made to-bear the of-the
ἀνοίας ἀτύχημα.
folly misfortune
Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὕστερον· τότε δὲ καὶ ἡ πρὸ πεντήκοντα
but these-things indeed later then but also the before fifty
καὶ τριακοσίων ἐτῶν πρόρρησις καὶ προφητεία τὸ τέλος
and three-hundred years prediction and prophecy the end
ἐλάμβανεν Ἰσαὰκ τοῦ διορατικωτάτου τῶν ἱερέων καὶ
received of-Isaac the most-clear-sighted of-the priests and
μοναχῶν, ὃς ἐξ Ἀρσακιδῶν καὶ αὐτὸς καταγόμενος
monks who from Arsacids also himself descended
δι᾽ ὁράματος ἔμαθεν ὅτι μετὰ τοσοῦτον χρόνον τὸν
through vision learned that after so-much time the

μεταξὺ ἐκ τῶν ἀπογόνων Ἀρσάκου μέλλει τις ἐπὶ
between from the descendants of-Arsaces is-going someone to
τὰ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς βασιλείας σκῆπτρα ἀναβιβάζεσθαι.
the of-the Roman empire scepters to-be-raised
γίνεται δὲ κατ᾽ εὐχὴν τὸ πρᾶγμα τοῖς τε ἐν τέλει
happens but according-to prayer the thing for-the both in office
καὶ τῷ δήμῳ παντὶ καὶ στρατοπέδῳ καὶ στρατηγοῖς
and for-the people all and for-army and for-generals
καὶ τοῖς ὑπὸ τὴν ἀρχὴν ἀνὰ πάσαις ταῖς χώραις
and for-the(-ones) under the rule throughout all the countries
καὶ πόλεσιν ἅπασι πλήθεσι· πάντες γὰρ ἐπιστῆναι
and cities for-all multitudes all for to-preside
τοῖς πράγμασιν ηὔχοντο ἄνδρα καὶ τῆς ἐλάττονος
over-the affairs prayed man also of-the lesser
τύχης πεῖραν δεξάμενον καὶ ἐγνωκότα τοὺς κατὰ
fortune experience having-received and having-known the against
τῶν πενήτων ὑπὸ τῶν ὑπερεχόντων κονδυλισμοὺς καὶ
the poor by the powerful buffetings and
τὰς ἀδίκους ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀφαιρέσεις καὶ τὰς ὥσπερ
the unjust from them seizures and the as-it-were
ἀναστάσεις τῶν ταπεινοτέρων καὶ τοὺς παρὰ τῶν
removals of-the humbler and the by the
ὁμοφύλων ἀνδραποδισμούς, ἃ πάντα ἐπὶ τῆς τοῦ
fellow-tribesmen enslavements which all in the —
Μιχαὴλ βασιλείας ἔσχε καιρὸν διὰ τὸ πρὸς ἄλλοις
of-Michael reign had season because-of the to other-things
μᾶλλον εἶναι τὸν βασιλέα ἢ περὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἐθέλειν
rather to-be the emperor than about the such-things to-wish
σκοπεῖν.
to-consider

Constantine pauses on Michael's life, to show that God's vote called Basil. Michael races chariots and pours the treasury out on charioteers and revels; he makes the buffoon Gryllus a mock patriarch, mocks Ignatius's procession, and tricks his mother Theodora into kneeling to Gryllus. Basil admonishes him and is hated for it; one of Michael's men hurls a lance at Basil on a hunt and misses, and Michael parades the worthless oarsman Basilikinos before the senate in imperial dress. Drunk, he orders murders and mutilations, which his servants often delay and he repents of at dawn.

Μᾶλλον δέ, ἐπεὶ ἐνταῦθα τοῦ λόγου ἐγενόμην, οἶομαι 20
rather but since here of-the account I-have-come I-think
δεῖν τὴν μὲν κατὰ τὸν βασιλέα Βασίλειον ἱστορίαν
it-to-be-needful the indeed about the emperor Basil history
σχολάσαι ἐπὶ μικρόν, ἄνωθεν δὲ ἀναλαβόντα δηλῶσαι διὰ
to-pause for little from-above but having-taken-up to-show in
βραχέων, ὡς οἷόν τε, οἷος ἦν ὁ βίος τῷ βασιλεῖ Μιχαὴλ
brief as possible — what-sort was the life for-the emperor Michael
καὶ οἵοις πράγμασιν ἔχαιρε καὶ ἐπὶ τίσι τὸν χρόνον καὶ
and in-what-sort affairs he-rejoiced and on what the time and
τὴν πᾶσαν αὐτοῦ σπουδὴν καὶ τὰ δημόσια κατανήλισκε
the all his zeal and the public spent
χρήματα, ἵν' ἐντεῦθεν εἰδέναι λογιζόμενος ἔχοι πᾶς ὁ
moneys that from-here to-know reckoning may every the(-one)
βουλόμενος ὅτι καὶ τὸν Βασίλειον θεία ψῆφος σαφῶς ἦν
wishing that also — Basil divine vote clearly was
ἡ ἐπὶ τὸ ἄρχειν καλέσασα (ἀδύνατον γὰρ ἦν ὡς εἶχεν
the(-vote) to the to-rule having-called impossible for it-was as they-were
ἔχοντα συστῆναι τὰ πράγματα) καὶ ὅτι μετὰ ταῦτα αὐτὸς
being to-stand the affairs and that after these-things himself
ὁ Μιχαὴλ καθ' ἑαυτοῦ τὰ ξίφη ἠκόνησε καὶ τὰς τῶν
— Michael against himself the swords sharpened and the of-the(-men)

ἀνελόντων αὐτὸν ἐστόμωσε δεξιὰς καὶ εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν
having-killed him steeled right-hands and to the own
σφαγὴν διηρέθισε· τοσοῦτον ἑαυτὸν τῶν καθηκόντων
slaughter provoked so-much himself from-the befitting-things
ἐξεδιήτησε, καὶ τοσοῦτον πρὸς πᾶσαν παράνομον
estranged and so-much to every lawless
ἐξεβακχεύθη πρᾶξιν, καὶ οὕτως τά τε θεῖα ἐξωρχήσατο
raved deed and so the both divine-things mocked
καὶ πρὸς τοὺς τῆς πολιτείας ὁμοῦ καὶ τῆς φύσεως νόμους
and against the of-the polity together and of-the nature laws
ἐξύβρισεν. συστησάμενος γὰρ περὶ ἑαυτὸν ἀσελγῶν καὶ
outraged having-formed for about himself of-licentious and
μιαρῶν καὶ παμπονήρων ἀνθρώπων χορὸν δυσσεβῆ, καὶ τὴν
of-polluted and utterly-wicked men chorus impious and the
τοῦ βασιλικοῦ μεγέθους ἀτιμάσας σεμνότητα, περὶ κώμους
of-the imperial greatness having-dishonored majesty about revels
καὶ μέθας καὶ ἔρωτας ἀσελγεῖς καὶ αἰσχρὰ διηγήματα, ἔτι
and drunkennesses and loves licentious and shameful tales still
δὲ περὶ ἡνιόχους καὶ ἵππους καὶ ἅρματα καὶ τὴν ἐντεῦθεν
but about charioteers and horses and chariots and the thence
μανίαν καὶ παρακοπὴν τῶν φρενῶν ὁ ἄθλιος διημέρευε,
madness and derangement of-the wits the wretch spent-the-days
καὶ εἰς τοὺς τοιούτους ἀνθρώπους ἀφειδῶς ἐξεκένου τὰ
and on the such men unsparingly he-emptied the
δημόσια χρήματα. καὶ τὸ δὴ σχετλιώτατον, ὅτι καὶ αὐτὰ
public moneys and the indeed most-wretched that also very
τὰ τῆς πίστεως ἡμῶν σύμβολα χλευάζων καὶ κερτομῶν,
the of-the faith our symbols mocking and jeering
ἀντιτύπους τῶν σεμνῶν ἱερέων ἐκ τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν μίμων
counterfeits of-the august priests from the about him mimes
καὶ γελοίων καταστησάμενος, μυκτηρισμὸν καὶ χλεύην
and buffoons having-set-up sneer and mockery

ἐτίθει ταῦτα καὶ γέλωτα. διηγήσομαι δέ τινα ἐξ αὐτῶν,
he-made these-things and laughter I-shall-narrate but some of them
οὐ πολλά, ἵνα ἀπὸ τῶν ὀλίγων γνῶτε καὶ τὰ λοιπά.
not many that from the few you-may-know also the rest
Ὅτι μὲν οὖν ἁρματηλάτης καὶ ἡνίοχος ἦν, ἐπὶ τοῦ δίφρου 21
that indeed then charioteer and driver he-was on the car
τῶν ἵππων μεθ' ἡνιόχου στολῆς καθεζόμενος καὶ πρὸς τοὺς
of-the horses with of-driver garb sitting and on the
διαύλους τῶν δρόμων τοῖς ἀντιτέχνοις διαμιλλώμενος
double-laps of-the courses with-the rivals competing
ἔνδον τε τῆς βασιλευούσης καὶ τῶν βασιλείων καὶ
within both the reigning-city and the palace and
ἔξω κατὰ τὰ ἐν τῷ τοῦ μάρτυρος Μάμαντος βασιλικὰ
outside at the in the of-the martyr Mamas imperial
ἐνδιαιτήματα, καὶ ὅτι πάμπολλα χρήματα εἰς ταῦτα
residences and that very-many moneys on these-things
ἀνήλισκε, θεωρικῶν γενομένων τῶν στρατιωτικῶν, καὶ ἀπὸ
he-spent of-spectacle having-become the military-funds and from
τῶν πολεμικῶν τάξεων εἰς τὰς θυμελικὰς ὀρχήσεις καὶ
the military ranks to the theatrical dances and
λέσχας ὁ Ῥωμαϊκὸς ἐξεχεῖτο πλοῦτος, καὶ εἰς ἀσελγεῖς
chatter the Roman was-poured-out wealth and on licentious
καὶ παρανόμους βακχείας καὶ ἔρωτας ἀσώτους ἀσώτως
and lawless revels and loves profligate profligately
καὶ ῥύδην ἐξεφοροῦντο οἱ βασιλικοὶ θησαυροί, ὡς πᾶσι
and in-streams were-carried-out the imperial treasures as to-all
γνώριμον καὶ καταφανὲς καθεστὼς παρήσειν μοι δοκῶ·
known and evident being to-pass-over to-me I-seem
ὅτι δὲ τὰ θεῖα κατέπαιζε, καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν συνόντων αὐτῷ
that but the divine-things he-mocked and from the being-with him
μιαρῶν καὶ ἀσελγῶν ἀνδρογύνων καὶ πατριάρχην ἕνα
polluted and licentious effeminates both patriarch one

ὠνόμαζε καὶ μητροπολίτας ἐκ τούτων ἀφώρισεν ἕνδεκα
named and metropolitans from these appointed eleven
ὡς αὐτοῦ συμπληροῦντος τὸν δώδεκα ἀριθμόν, τοῦτο δὲ
as himself filling-up the twelve number this but
διηγήσομαι. τὸν γὰρ ἐναγῆ καὶ μιαρώτατον ἐκεῖνον Γρῦλλον
I-shall-narrate the for accursed and most-polluted that Gryllus
τὸ τοῦ πατριάρχου ἐπιφημίσας ὄνομα, καὶ ἀρχιερατικῇ
the of-the patriarch having-given name and with-high-priestly
τοῦτον χρυσοστίκτῳ καὶ ὑπερλάμπρῳ κοσμήσας στολῇ καὶ
this-one gold-spangled and most-splendid having-adorned robe and
ὠμοφόριον περιθείς, καὶ ἐν τάξει μητροπολιτῶν ἑτέρους
omophorion having-put-on and in rank of-metropolitans others
ἕνα πρὸς τοῖς δέκα, ὡς εἴρηται, ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ τῶν
one besides the ten as has-been-said from the same of-the
ὁμογνωμόνων αὐτῷ συνεδρίου σκευάσας, καὶ δωδέκατον
like-minded with-him council having-dressed and twelfth
ἑαυτὸν Κολωνείας ὀνομάσας ἀρχιεπίσκοπον, καὶ κιθάραν
himself of-Colonea having-named archbishop and lyre
ἕκαστον ἔσωθεν τῆς ἱερατικῆς στολῆς ἐπιφέρεσθαι δούς,
each within the priestly robe to-carry having-given
καὶ ταύτας κάτωθεν ὑπηχεῖν προστάξας, οὕτω σὺν αὐτοῖς
and these below to-sound having-ordered so with them
τὴν ἱερὰν δῆθεν παίζων καὶ κατορχούμενος ἐπετέλει
the holy forsooth mocking and dancing-over performed
μυσταγωγίαν καὶ λειτουργίαν, μετὰ τῶν παμμιάρων
rite and liturgy with the utterly-polluted
ὁ μιαρώτατος, μετὰ τῶν βεβήλων ὁ ἐναγής. καὶ
the most-polluted with the profane the accursed and
ὅτε μὲν μυστηριώδης δῆθεν εὐχὴ ἐλέγετο, ἠρέμα τὰς
when indeed mystic forsooth prayer was-said softly the
κιθάρας ἔδει ὑποφωνεῖν· ὅτε δὲ ἱερέως ἐκφώνησιν
lyres it-was-needful to-sound-under when but of-priest exclamation

ἢ λαοῦ ἀμοιβαίαν ἀπόκρισιν ὁ χρόνος ὑπέβαλλεν, ἐπὶ
or of-people responsive answer the time brought to
μέγα τὰς κιθάρας τῷ πλήκτρῳ κρουομένας ἔδει
great the lyres with-the plectrum struck it-was-needful
ἠχεῖν καὶ ἐξάκουστον αὐτῶν τὴν μελῳδίαν καθίστασθαι.
to-sound and audible their the melody to-be-made
εἶτα τοῖς σκεύεσι τοῖς ἱεροῖς, ἅ τινα λίθοις τιμίοις
then in-the vessels the holy which — with-stones precious
καὶ μαργάρων κατεκοσμεῖτο φαιδρότησιν, ἐξ ἀργύρου
and of-pearls were-adorned with-brilliances from silver
καὶ χρυσοῦ κατεσκευασμένοις, ἃ καὶ λελειτουργηκότα
and gold made which also having-served
πολλάκις τῇ θείᾳ μυσταγωγίᾳ ἐτύγχανεν, ἐν τούτοις
often in-the divine rite happened in these
τοίνυν σίνηπι καὶ ὄξος ἐμβαλόντες οὕτω μετεδίδοσαν τοῖς
therefore mustard and vinegar having-put so they-gave-a-share to-the
ὁμοίοις μετὰ πολλοῦ τοῦ μεταξὺ γέλωτος καὶ ῥημάτων
like with much the meanwhile laughter and words
αἰσχρῶν καὶ σχημάτων ἀποτροπαίων καὶ βδελυρῶν. εἶεν.
shameful and gestures abominable and loathsome so-be-it
Τοῦ δὲ ἁγιωτάτου πατριάρχου Ἰγνατίου ποτέ, μετὰ πάσης 22
of-the but most-holy patriarch Ignatius once with all
τῆς περὶ αὐτὸν ἐκκλησιαστικῆς δορυφορίας καὶ τάξεως,
the about him ecclesiastical escort and order
λιτανείαις πρόοδον πρὸ τῆς πόλεως ποιουμένου καὶ πρός
with-litanies procession before the city making and to
τινα πορευομένου θεῖον ναὸν μετὰ τῆς εἰωθυίας ἱερᾶς
some going divine church with the customary holy
μελῳδίας καὶ καταστάσεως, συνέβη καὶ τὸν δυσσεβῆ καὶ
melody and order it-happened also the impious and
βέβηλον τοῦ βασιλέως φατριάρχην Γρῦλλον, ἱερατικὴν
profane of-the emperor faction-patriarch Gryllus priestly

στολὴν ἀμπεχόμενον καὶ ὄνῳ ἐποχούμενον, μετὰ τῶν
robe wearing and on-ass riding with the
δυσσεβεστέρων αὐτοῦ μητροπολιτῶν καὶ πάσης αὐτοῦ τῆς
more-impious his metropolitans and all his the
σκηνῆς τε καὶ Σατυρικῆς χορείας καὶ τάξεως, ἀκόλουθα τῶν
stage both and Satyric dance and order following of-the
οἰκείων πράξεων θυμελικῶς ἐπιτραγῳδοῦντας καὶ ᾄδοντας
own deeds theatrically declaiming and singing
ἐξ ἐναντίας χωρεῖν. ὡς δὲ πλησίον ἐγένοντο, τοῖς ὤμοις
from opposite to-come when but near they-came on-the shoulders
τοὺς φελόνας μετεωρίσαντες καὶ τὰς κιθάρας εὐτονώτερον
the chasubles having-lifted and the lyres more-vigorously
κρούσαντες, καὶ ῥήματα καὶ ᾄσματα πορνικὰ κατὰ τὸν
having-struck and words and songs lewd to the
φθόγγον τοῦ μέλους τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἀντεπᾴδοντες, καὶ Πανικῶς
sound of-the melody the holy singing-against and Pan-like
τε καὶ Σατυρικῶς σκιρτῶντες καὶ κυμβαλίζοντες, καὶ ὡς
both and Satyr-like leaping and clanging-cymbals and as
ἀντιτέχνους τοὺς ἱερεῖς καὶ τὸν ἀρχιερέα μυκτηρίσαντες,
rivals the priests and the high-priest having-sneered-at
τὴν διαβολικὴν χορείαν καὶ πορείαν διήνυον. πυθόμενος
the diabolical dance and procession accomplished having-learned
δὲ ὁ τοῦ θεοῦ ἀρχιερεὺς καὶ μαθὼν οἵτινές εἰσι καὶ
but the — of-god high-priest and having-found-out who they-are and
παρὰ τίνος καὶ ἐπὶ ποίᾳ προφάσει συνέστησαν, πολλὰ
by whom and on what pretext were-formed much
καταστενάξας καὶ ἀποκλαυσάμενος τὸν κορυφαῖον τούτων
having-groaned and having-wept-for the leader of-these
καὶ αἴτιον, καὶ μετὰ δακρύων τοῦ θεοῦ δεηθεὶς στῆσαι
and cause and with tears — god having-begged to-stop
τὴν τοιαύτην βλασφημίαν καὶ ὕβριν καὶ διασκεδάσαι παρὰ
the such blasphemy and outrage and to-scatter to

τὸν ᾅδην τοὺς δυσσεβεῖς, ἵνα μὴ βεβηλῶνται τὰ ἅγια
— Hades the impious that not may-be-profaned the holy-things
καὶ τὰ μυστικὰ καὶ σεπτὰ διασύρωνται, τῆς προκειμένης
and the mystic and august may-be-mocked to-the proposed
ὑμνῳδίας ἐχόμενος τὴν πορείαν διήνυεν.
hymnody holding the procession accomplished
Ἄλλοτέ ποτε ἐπὶ φαυλισμῷ δῆθεν τοῦ ἀοιδίμου τούτου 23
another-time once for disparagement forsooth of-the celebrated this
Ἰγνατίου τοῦ πατριάρχου καὶ τῆς οἰκείας μητρὸς ἐμπαιγμῷ
Ignatius the patriarch and of-the own mother mockery
ὁ ἀνόητος καὶ παραπλὴξ βασιλεὺς τοιοῦτόν τι
the senseless and deranged emperor such something
ἐδραματούργησεν. ἐν τῷ ὑπερλάμπρῳ Χρυσοτρικλίνῳ ἐπὶ
staged in the most-splendid Chrysotriklinos on
τοῦ βασιλείου θρόνου προκαθεσθείς, καὶ τὸν αἰσχρότατον
the imperial throne having-sat-before and the most-shameful
Γρῦλλον μετὰ τῶν ἀρχιερατικῶν ἐνδυμάτων ὡς εἰς
Gryllus with the high-priestly vestments as in
ὄνομα τοῦ ἀληθῶς πατριάρχου πλησιαίτατα ἑαυτοῦ
name of-the truly patriarch nearest to-himself
παρακαθισάμενος, καὶ τὴν ἀρχιερεῖ θεοῦ πρέπουσαν
having-seated-beside and the to-high-priest of-god befitting
ἀπονέμων τιμήν, καὶ μετὰ τοῦ τῆς κεφαλῆς καλύμματος
assigning honor and with the of-the head covering
ἐπικρύψασθαι τὴν ἐξάγιστον γενειάδα πεποιηκώς, τὴν ἰδίαν
to-hide the abominable beard having-made the own
μητέρα διά τινος τῶν θαλαμηπόλων εὐνούχων δηλοῖ
mother through some of-the chamber eunuchs informs
ὡς ὁ ἁγιώτατος πατριάρχης Ἰγνάτιος ἐνταῦθα μετ᾽ ἐμοῦ
that the most-holy patriarch Ignatius here with me
συγκαθέζεται, καὶ εἰ βούλει λαβεῖν τὴν εὐχὴν αὐτοῦ, ἐλθέ,
sits-together and if you-wish to-receive the blessing his come

καὶ μετ᾽ ἐμοῦ τυγχάνεις αὐτῆς. ἐκείνη δὲ οἷα φιλευσεβὴς
and with me you-obtain it she but as pious
γυνὴ καὶ φιλόθεος, πόθον πολὺν καὶ πίστιν ζέουσαν πρὸς
woman and god-loving longing much and faith boiling toward
τὸν ἁγιώτατον κεκτημένη Ἰγνάτιον, σπουδαίως ἐκδραμοῦσα
the most-holy having Ignatius eagerly having-run-out
ὡς ἤκουσε, καὶ μηδὲ ἀτενίσαι δι᾽ αἰδῶ δυναμένη, ἔξω
as she-heard and not-even to-gaze for modesty being-able outside
δὲ πάσης κακίας καὶ ὑπονοίας τυγχάνουσα καὶ μηδέν τι
but of-all malice and suspicion being and nothing at-all
φαῦλον ὑποτοπήσασα, προσέπεσε τοῖς ποσίν, ὡς ἐδόκει,
bad having-suspected fell at-the feet as it-seemed
τοῦ ἁγίου ἐκείνου ἀρχιερέως, καὶ ὑπὲρ αὐτῆς ἐδέετο
of-the holy that high-priest and for her begged
εὔχεσθαι. ὁ δὲ παμμίαρος ἐκεῖνος τῆς καθέδρας ὀλίγον
to-pray the but utterly-polluted that from-the seat little
ὑπεγερθεὶς καὶ ἀπ᾽ αὐτῆς τοὐναντίον ἀποστραφείς, ὀνώδη
having-risen and from her the-opposite-way having-turned asinine
ψόφον ἀπὸ τῶν μυσαρῶν ἐγκάτων ἀφείς, πρὸς αὐτὴν
noise from the foul bowels having-let-off to her
ἀπεφθέγξατο ὅτι ἵνα μὴ λέγῃς, κυρά, ὡς οὐδὲ κἂν
uttered that that not you-may-say lady that not even
τούτῳ σε ἠξιωσάμεθα. τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως ἀνακαγχάσαντος
in-this you we-deemed-worthy of-the but emperor having-guffawed
καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ παμβεβήλου παμμέγεθες ἐκγελάσαντος,
and himself the utterly-profane enormously having-laughed-out
καὶ πολλὰ καταφλυαρησάντων ἢ μᾶλλον τῷ παραφόρῳ
and much having-babbled or rather by-the frenzy
τῆς γνώμης ἀλογώτατα ἐξοιστρησάντων, ἐπιγνοῦσα τὸ
of-the mind most-irrationally having-raved having-recognized the
πλάσμα καὶ τὴν ἀπάτην ἡ βασιλίς, καὶ πολλὰ τῶν
fiction and the deceit the empress and much before-the(-ones)

παρόντων καταστενάξασα, καὶ πλείστας ἀρὰς τῷ υἱῷ
present having-groaned and very-many curses on-the son
ἐπιρρίψασα, τέλος ἐξεῖπε πρὸς αὐτὸν ὅτι ἰδού, κακὸν
having-cast at-last spoke-out to him that behold evil
τέκνον, ὁ θεὸς τὴν χεῖρα αὐτοῦ ἀφείλετο ἀπὸ σοῦ, καὶ
child — god the hand his has-taken-away from you and
ἐδόθη σοι ἀδόκιμος νοῦς ποιεῖν τὰ μὴ καθήκοντα.
was-given to-you reprobate mind to-do the(-things) not befitting
καὶ ταῦτα εἰποῦσα καὶ μετ᾽ ὀδυρμοῦ θρήνων τὰς οἰκείας
and these-things having-said and with wailing of-laments the own
τρίχας ἐκτίλλουσα ἀνεχώρησεν. τοιαῦτα τοῦ γενναίου
hairs tearing withdrew such of-the noble
βασιλέως τὰ νεανιεύματα, καὶ τοιαύτη αὐτοῦ ἡ περὶ τὰ
emperor the youthful-exploits and such his the about the
θεῖα καὶ τοὺς ἱεροὺς ἄνδρας ὁσιότης τε καὶ εὐλάβεια.
divine-things and the holy men holiness both and piety
Τοιούτων δὲ καὶ χειρόνων πολλῶν καθ᾽ ἑκάστην παρὰ 24
such but and worse many by each(-day) through
πάντα τὸν τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ χρόνον παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ
all the of-the reign his time by him
γινομένων, ἐπεὶ καὶ μετὰ τὸ προσλαβέσθαι καὶ ἀνυψῶσαι
being-done since even after the to-take-on and to-exalt
τὸν Βασίλειον περὶ τὰ ὅμοια ἀνεστρέφετο, ὁρῶν ταῦτα
— Basil about the like-things he-busied-himself seeing these-things
καὶ ἀκούων ἐκεῖνος λίαν ἐδυσφόρει καὶ ἠνιᾶτο καὶ τὴν
and hearing that-one very was-vexed and was-grieved and the
ἑαυτοῦ ζωὴν ἀπελέγετο. βουλόμενος δὲ πᾶσαν τὴν δυνατὴν
his-own life renounced wishing but all the possible
ἐπιφέρειν βοήθειαν καὶ μηδὲν τῶν εἰς ἐπανόρθωσιν
to-bring help and nothing of-the(-things) toward correction
δοκούντων τείνειν παραλιπεῖν, πρότερον μὲν δι᾽ ἑτέρων
seeming to-tend to-leave-out first indeed through others

ἐπειρᾶτο ἀπὸ τῶν τοιούτων ἀποτρέπειν αὐτὸν καὶ πρὸς τὸ
he-tried from the such-things to-turn him and to the
δέον ἐπαναγαγεῖν, ἔπειτα ἐθάρρησέ ποτε καὶ αὐτὸς δι᾽
needful to-bring-back then he-dared once also himself through
ἑαυτοῦ μετ᾽ εὐνοούσης γνώμης καὶ προαιρέσεως νουθετῆσαι
himself with well-disposed mind and purpose to-admonish
τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ εἰ δυνατόν, ἀποστῆσαι τῶν τοιούτων
the emperor and if possible to-remove-him from-the such
ἀσεβημάτων, καὶ τοιάδε πρὸς αὐτὸν μεθ᾽ ὑποπεπτωκότος
impieties and such-things to him with submissive
καὶ ταπεινοῦ διελέχθη τοῦ σχήματος. "δίκαιόν ἐστιν, ὦ
and humble conversed the bearing just it-is O
δέσποτα καὶ βασιλεῦ, τοσούτων εὐεργεσιῶν τε καὶ δωρεῶν
master and emperor of-so-many benefits both and gifts
παρὰ σοῦ με καταπολαύσαντα καὶ εἰσηγεῖσθαι τὰ δέοντα
from you me having-enjoyed both to-propose the needful-things
καὶ ὑποτιθέναι τὰ ἄριστα καὶ ὑπομιμνήσκειν τὰ λυσιτελῆ
and to-suggest the best and to-remind the profitable
καὶ σωτήρια. μισούμεθα, γίνωσκε, δέσποτα, μισούμεθα"
and saving-things we-are-hated know master we-are-hated
(συγκατεμίγνυε γὰρ καὶ ἑαυτὸν διὰ τὸ ἀνεπαχθές, καίτοι
he-mingled for also himself because-of the inoffensive although
μηδενὸς τῶν ἀτόπων αὐτῷ κοινωνῶν) "παρά τε τῆς πόλεως
in-none of-the outrages with-him sharing by both the city
πάσης καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς, καὶ παρὰ τῶν ἀρχιερέων
all and the senatorial council and by the high-priests
θεοῦ ἐπάρατοι καθεστήκαμεν, καὶ πάντες ἡμᾶς διαβάλλουσι
of-god accursed we-have-become and all us slander
καὶ κακίζουσιν. ὅτε δὲ καὶ τὸ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων εἰς οὐδὲν
and revile when but even the(-thing) from men as nothing
λογισώμεθα, δεδοικέναι καὶ τὴν ἀπὸ θεοῦ ἀγανάκτησιν
we-may-reckon to-fear also the from god indignation

χρή, καὶ φοβεῖσθαι μὴ πειραθῶμεν αὐτοῦ ὀργιζομένου
it-is-needful and to-be-afraid lest we-experience him being-angry
καὶ χαλεπαίνοντος.” ἀλλὰ ταῦτα λέγων πέτρας ἔσπειρεν
and being-harsh but these-things saying rocks he-sowed
καὶ αἰγιαλῷ προσελάλει καὶ σμήχειν ἐῴκει Αἰθίοπα· οὕτω
and to-shore talked and to-wash seemed Ethiopian so
δευσοποιὸς ἡ πονηρία γέγονε παρ᾽ αὐτῷ, καὶ οὕτως
fast-dyed the wickedness had-become in him and so
ἐξεκώφει πρὸς πάντα λόγον σωτήριον, βύων τὰ ὦτα ὡσεὶ
he-was-deaf to every word saving stopping the ears like
ἀσπὶς πρὸς ἐπᾴσματα. οὐ μόνον γὰρ οὐ μετεβάλλετο πρὸς
asp to charms not only for not he-changed toward
τὸ ἄμεινον, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸν ἤδη ἐμίσει καὶ ἀπεστρέφετο,
the better but also him already hated and turned-from
καὶ σὺν τοῖς θιασώταις αὐτοῦ καὶ συνοργιασταῖς διαβάλλων
and with the revelers his and fellow-celebrants slandering
καὶ μυκτηρίζων ταῦτα τὴν πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀλλοτρίωσιν
and sneering-at these-things the toward him estrangement
ὑπηνίττετο, εἶτα καὶ παρεδήλου τρανότερον. ὅπερ δὴ
hinted then also showed more-clearly which indeed
συννοήσαντες ἐκεῖνοι οἱ μιαροὶ καὶ ἀλάστορες κατ᾽
having-perceived those the polluted and accursed(-men) against
αὐτοῦ συνεκινοῦντο καὶ συνετάττοντο, καὶ τὰς διαβολὰς
him were-moved-together and drew-up and the slanders
πιθανῶς ὑπεκρίναντο, αὐθάδειαν μὲν καλοῦντες αὐτοῦ
plausibly acted-out arrogance indeed calling his
τὴν σεμνότητα, καὶ τὸ μὴ μετέχειν τῶν ἡδονῶν δύσνοιαν
the dignity and the not to-share of-the pleasures ill-will
ὀνομάζοντες καὶ τὸ μὴ συνεξαμαρτάνειν καταφρονεῖν.
naming and the not to-sin-with to-despise

καὶ "πῶς γὰρ ἂν εἴποι σε ἀγαπᾶν" ἔλεγον "ὁ μὴ
and how for — could-say you to-love they-said the(-one) not
χαίρων οἷς χαίρεις αὐτός, μηδὲ συσπουδάζων ἐκπορίζειν
rejoicing in-what rejoice you-yourself nor zealous-together to-provide
σοι τὰ καθ' ἡδονήν;" οἷς δὴ μᾶλλον ὑπενδιδοὺς ὁ
for-you the(-things) for pleasure to-which indeed rather yielding the
βασιλεὺς καὶ πειθόμενος θάνατον τῷ Βασιλείῳ ἐτύρευεν, καὶ
emperor and being-persuaded death — for-Basil contrived and
ἀφορμὴν ἐζήτει τῆς ἀναιρέσεως εὔλογον, ἀλλ' οὐχ εὕρισκεν.
pretext sought of-the killing reasonable but not he-found
εἰς τοσοῦτον δὲ προῆλθε τὰ τῆς μανίας αὐτοῦ ὥστε
to so-far but advanced the(-things) of-the madness his so-that
πρὸς τὴν λαθραίαν χωρῆσαι ἀναίρεσιν καί τισι τῶν
to the secret to-go killing and some of-the(-men)
ἀπὸ τοῦ παλαμναίου συνεδρίου, οἷς τὰ πάντα ἐθάρρει,
from the bloodstained council to-whom the all-things he-trusted
προτρέψασθαι, ὅταν εἰς θήραν ἐξέλθωσι, προφάσει τοῦ τὸ
to-exhort when to hunt they-go-out on-pretext of-the the
θηρίον βαλεῖν ἀκοντίσαι τὴν λόγχην κατ' αὐτοῦ καὶ οὕτως
beast to-hit to-hurl the lance at him and so
αὐτὸν διαχρήσασθαι· ὅπερ εἷς, ὥς φασι, πεποιηκὼς καὶ
him to-make-away-with which one as they-say having-done and
ἀφεὶς τὸ ἀκόντιον αὐτοῦ μὲν ἥμαρτε, καὶ παραδραμὸν
having-let-fly the javelin him indeed missed and having-run-past
τὸ δόρυ προσεπάγη τῇ γῇ, αὐτὸν δὲ ὁ ἵππος αἴφνης τὸν
the spear was-fixed in-the ground him but the horse suddenly the
χαλινὸν ἐνδακὼν καὶ συναρπάσας κατὰ τοῦ κρημνοῦ
bit having-seized-in-teeth and having-snatched-up over the cliff
ἀπεδίσκευσεν, ὡς ἀπ' ἐκείνου τοῦ πτώματος καὶ τὸ τέλος
hurled so-that from that the fall also the end
ἐλθεῖν ἐπ' αὐτόν, ὅτε καὶ ἀνόνητα μεταμελόμενος, ὥς
to-come upon him when also uselessly repenting as

φασι, τοῖς συμμύσταις ἐπέσκηπτε μὴ τολμῆσαι κατὰ τοῦ
they-say to-the fellow-initiates he-charged not to-dare against the
ἀναιτίου ἐπιχειρεῖν τοῦ λοιποῦ, εἰ μὴ τολμῆσαι κατὰ τὸν
guiltless to-attempt for-the rest if not to-dare into the
ὅμοιον ὄλεθρον πεσεῖν καὶ αὐτοί· καί τινα τῶν εὐλαβῶν
like destruction to-fall also themselves and some of-the devout
προσκαλεσάμενος μετὰ τῶν λοιπῶν ἀτοπημάτων αὐτοῦ
having-summoned with the other outrages his
καὶ ἀνομιῶν καὶ τοῦτο ἐξωμολογήσατο καὶ ἐξηγόρευσεν.
and lawless-deeds also this confessed and declared
Ὡς δ' οὐκ εἶχε λοιπὸν εὑρεῖν ὁ βασιλεὺς πρὸς τὸ 25
when but not could henceforth to-find the emperor for the
ἀνελεῖν αὐτὸν πόρον ἢ πρόφασιν, εἰς ἑτέραν ἦλθε βουλὴν
to-kill him means or pretext to other came counsel
πονηράν τε καὶ ἄθεσμον. ἐβουλεύσατο γὰρ ἐπεμβαλεῖν
wicked both and lawless he-planned for to-bring-in
τοῖς σκήπτροις καὶ ἕτερον σύγκληρον. καὶ δὴ τὸν
to-the scepters also other co-heir and indeed the
κατ' ἐπωνυμίαν Βασιλικῖνον ἐκεῖνον, ἕνα καὶ αὐτὸν τοῦ
by surname Basilikinos that-one one also himself of-the
παλαμναίου συνεδρίου τυγχάνοντα, φαῦλον καὶ μιαρὸν
bloodstained council being worthless and polluted
θηλυδρίαν τε καὶ φιλόκωμον, ἀπὸ τῆς Νικομήδους
effeminate both and revel-loving from the of-Nicomedes
ὁρμώμενον, ὁμόγνιον ἀδελφὸν τοῦ κατὰ τὸν Καπνογένην
setting-out full brother of-the by-name the Capnogenes
Κωνσταντίνου, τοῦ δὶς τὴν τοῦ ὑπάρχου μετὰ ταῦτα
Constantine the(-one) twice the of-the prefect after these-things
ἐγχειρισθέντος ἀρχήν· τότε δὲ ἐν τοῖς ἐλαύνουσιν εἰς
entrusted-with office then but among the(-ones) rowing on
τὴν βασιλικὴν τριήρη κατειλεγμένος ἐτύγχανε. τοῦτον δὴ
the imperial trireme enrolled happened this-one indeed

τὸν δυσώνυμον Βασιλικῖνον ἐνδύει ποτὲ τὴν πολυύμνητον
the ill-named Basilikinos clothes once the much-hymned
βασιλικὴν πορφύραν καὶ τὸν περίοπτον καὶ ἐπίφθονον
imperial purple and the conspicuous and envied
στέφανον χλαμύδα τε πάγχρυσον καὶ τὰ κοκκοβαφῆ καὶ
crown cloak both all-golden and the scarlet-dyed and
διάλιθα πέδιλα καὶ τἆλλα τῆς βασιλείας ἐπίσημα, ἐξάγει
jeweled sandals and the-other of-the empire insignia leads-out
τε αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν σύγκλητον τῆς χειρὸς ἅμα κρατῶν
both him to the senate by-the hand at-once holding
καὶ ὑπουργῶν αὐτῷ, ὡς ὁ Νέρων ἐκεῖνος πάλαι τὸν
and serving him as — Nero that-one of-old the
πολυθρύλητον Ἔρωτα, καὶ φησιν ἐπὶ λέξεως ἴδετε πάντες
much-talked-of Eros and says on word see all
ὑμεῖς, καὶ θαυμάσατε. ἆρα οὐ πρέπει αὐτὸν εἶναι βασιλέα;
you and wonder — not befits him to-be emperor
πρῶτον μὲν εἶδος ἄξιον τυραννίδος, τὸ δεύτερον δὲ συμφυὲς
first indeed form worthy of-tyranny the second but natural
πέλει στέφος, ἅπαντα δ' ἁρμόζουσι πρὸς τὴν ἀξίαν. καὶ
is crown all-things but fit to the dignity and
ὅτι πόσον ἦν κάλλιον τοῦτόν με ποιῆσαι βασιλέα ἢ τὸν
that how-much was better this-one me to-make emperor than —
Βασίλειον; ταῦτα πάντες οἱ κατὰ τὰ βασίλεια ἰδόντες
Basil these-things all the(-ones) in the palace having-seen
τε καὶ ἀκούσαντες ἔμειναν ἀχανεῖς, ἐκπληττόμενοι τὴν
both and having-heard remained agape being-astonished-at the
παράλογον ἐξ ἀφροσύνης τοῦ βασιλέως ἐμβροντησίαν τε
unreasonable from folly of-the emperor stupefaction both
καὶ παρακοπήν. οὕτως ἦν ἄνθρωπος ὑπὸ τῆς κατακοροῦς
and derangement so was man by the excessive

μέθης καὶ τῶν ἀθέσμων καὶ ἀσελγῶν πράξεων ὅλως
drunkenness and the lawless and licentious deeds wholly
τῶν δεόντων ἐξεστηκὼς καὶ φρενοπλὴξ καὶ παράφορος.
from-the needful-things deranged and frenzied and frantic
Πλὴν οὐ τὸ μειλίχιον μόνον καὶ λυαῖον καὶ τρυφηλόν 26
but not the gentle only and lyaean and luxurious
τε καὶ ἀνειμένον καὶ ἁπαλὸν καὶ παρακεκινηκὸς ἐκ τῆς
both and relaxed and soft and deranged from the
μέθης ἐκέκτητο τοῦ χαριδότου Διονύσου, ὃν μιμεῖσθαι
drunkenness he-had-acquired of-the grace-giving Dionysus whom to-imitate
ᾤετο καὶ ἐσπούδαζεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς ὠμηστὴς πάλιν
he-thought and was-zealous but also as raw-eater again
κατ᾽ αὐτὸν ἐκεῖνον εἶχε τὸ ἐρινυῶδές τε καὶ τιτανικόν,
after very that-one he-had the fury-like both and titanic
καὶ πολλάκις κωμικὴ παννυχὶς εἰς τραγῳδίαν συμφορῶν
and often comic all-night-revel into tragedy of-misfortunes
ἐτελεύτησεν. ἔκ τε γὰρ τῆς μέθης παροινῶν καὶ ἐκ
ended from both for the drunkenness being-drunken and from
τῆς εὐτυχίας παρανόμως εἰς ἅπαν ἐξώκειλε δυσσεβές.
the good-fortune lawlessly into all ran-aground impious
ὅτε οὖν ὅλος τοῦ ἀκράτου καὶ τῆς μέθης ἐγένετο
when then wholly of-the unmixed-wine and of-the drunkenness he-became
καὶ πάντῃ τὰς οἰκείας φρένας ἀπώλεσε, πρὸς φόνους
and in-every-way the own wits lost to murders
ἐχώρει καὶ πρὸς ἀναιτίων ἀνθρώπων ἀλλοκότους ποινὰς
he-went and to of-guiltless men strange punishments
καὶ σφαγάς, καὶ τοῖς ὑπηρέταις ἐνεκελεύετο, τὸν δεῖνα,
and slaughters and to-the servants he-ordered the so-and-so
φησί, καὶ δεῖνα λαβόντες τῷ δημίῳ παράδοτε, καὶ
he-says and so-and-so having-taken to-the executioner hand-over and
ἑτέρου τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς ἐξορύξατε, καὶ ἄλλου τὰς χεῖρας
of-another the eyes gouge-out and of-another the hands

καὶ τοὺς πόδας ἐκκόψατε. καὶ οὗτος κεφαλῆς τιμωρείσθω,
and the feet cut-off and this-one of-head let-be-punished
κἀκεῖνος γενέσθω πυρίκαυστος. οὓς λαβόντες οἱ ὑπηρέται,
and-that-one let-be-made burned-with-fire whom having-taken the servants
καὶ τῷ ἔξω τῶν φρενῶν αὐτὸν τυγχάνειν, ὅταν ἐξῆγε
and by-the outside of-the wits him to-be when he-issued
τὰς ἀποφάσεις, γινώσκοντες, ἐμφρούρους μὲν αὐτοὺς
the sentences knowing in-custody indeed them
ἐποίουν, ταῖς ποιναῖς δὲ οὐ καθυπέβαλλον. πολλάκις δέ, εἰ
they-made to-the punishments but not subjected often but if
ἔτυχέν τις πρὸς ὃν οὐκ εἶχον ἡδέως ἀλλ' ἀπεχθῶς,
there-happened anyone toward whom not they-were pleasantly but hatefully
ἀπεχρῶντο τῇ βασιλικῇ κελεύσει, καὶ τῇ τιμωρίᾳ τὸν
they-abused the imperial command and by-the punishment the
ἀθῷον ἐξεδίκουν κατάδικον. εἶτα ὁ δείλαιος ἐκεῖνος καὶ
guiltless punished condemned then the wretched that and
ἄθλιος τότε μὲν οὐδ' ἐν οἷς ἔστιν εἰδώς, παρὰ τῶν
miserable then indeed not-even in what he-is knowing by the
κατευναστῶν τῷ βασιλικῷ προσανεκλίνετο σκίμποδι καὶ
chamberlains on-the imperial was-laid couch and
τῷ γείτονι τοῦ θανάτου ὕπνῳ ὡς ἀνδράποδον ἐξεδίδοτο·
to-the neighbor of-the death sleep like slave was-given-up
ἔωθεν δέ, τοῦ ὕπνου τοὺς ἐκ τοῦ οἴνου ἀτμοὺς καὶ
at-dawn but the sleep the from the wine vapors and
τὴν παχεῖαν ἐκείνην ἀχλὺν μόλις ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐγκεφάλου
the thick that mist scarcely from the brain
διασκεδάσαντος, ἐξεγειρόμενος οὐδὲν τῶν ἐν τῇ ἑσπέρᾳ
having-scattered waking-up nothing of-the(-things) in the evening
ἐμέμνητο, καὶ ἐζήτει πολλάκις τινὰς ἀφ' ὧν ἐν τῇ μέθῃ
he-remembered and sought often some of whom in the drunkenness
κατεψηφίσατο καὶ τῷ θανάτῳ ἐξέδωκε, μανθάνων δὲ παρὰ
he-had-condemned and to-the death had-given-up learning but from

τῶν δορυφόρων τε καὶ ὑπηρετῶν ἃ ἐν τῇ ἑσπέρᾳ κατ᾽
the guards both and servants what in the evening against
αὐτῶν ἐψηφίσατο, μετεμελεῖτο καὶ ἔστενεν. καὶ ἄλλοτε
them he-had-voted he-repented and groaned and at-other-times
μὲν εὑρίσκοντο οἱ ζητούμενοι, ἄλλοτε δὲ ἀνόνητος
indeed were-found the(-ones) sought at-other-times but useless
ἦν αὐτῷ ἡ ἐπὶ τοῖς ἀνοσίοις τῶν ἔργων μετάνοια,
was for-him the at the unholy of-the deeds repentance
τῶν ἐκδοθέντων ἀνῃρημένων. πάλιν δὲ τῆς ἑσπέρας
of-the(-ones) handed-over having-been-killed again but the evening
καταλαβούσης, καὶ νεανικῶς τοῦ πότου πόρρω τῆς νυκτὸς
having-come and youthfully the drinking far of-the night
μετὰ τῶν ἀλαστόρων ἔργων καὶ λόγων προκόπτοντος,
with the accursed deeds and words advancing
ἐν τοῖς ὁμοίοις ἐγίνετο. ἃ τίς ἀκούων τε καὶ ὁρῶν, εἰ
in the like-things he-was which who hearing both and seeing if
καὶ λιθίνην καρδίαν ἐκέκτητο ἢ παντάπασιν ἀναίσθητος
even stony heart had or altogether insensible
ἦν, μὴ πρὸς ὀργὴν ἐκινήθη καὶ διεθερμάνθη ποτὲ πρὸς
was not to anger was-moved and grew-hot ever toward
τὴν τῶν ἀναιτίως ἀπολλυμένων ἐκδίκησιν; μηδὲ τὸν
the of-the(-ones) guiltlessly perishing vengeance not-even the
πραότατον πάντων ἀνθρώπων Δαβὶδ ἀνασχέσθαι οἶμαι τὴν
gentlest of-all men David to-have-endured I-think the
τοσαύτην τοῦ καθάρματος παροινίαν· ἠλιθιότης γὰρ καὶ
so-great of-the scum drunken-violence foolishness for and
ἀναλγησία, οὐ μακροθυμία ἐνταῦθα λογίζεται ἡ φειδώ.
insensibility not long-suffering here is-reckoned the forbearance

Michael, having squandered on charioteers and buffoons the thousand centenaria his parents left, is killed by the leading men, asleep from wine, at St. Mamas. Basil, acclaimed emperor, dedicates himself and the kingdom to Christ; finding only three centenaria, he has the recipients of Michael's gifts return half. News of victories greets his accession; he holds the consulship and gives from his own wealth. He appoints incorruptible officials and judges, restores the Chalke as a court, feeds plaintiffs while their cases are heard, hears suits himself, and has tax registers written in plain letters. He restores Ignatius, confirms the Seventh Council, and purges the civil laws.

27 Ἤδη δὲ πάντων σχεδὸν τῶν ἀποθέτων χρημάτων
already but of-all almost the stored moneys
ἐπιλειπόντων, ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις ἀναλωθέντων αὐτῶν,
failing in the such-things having-been-spent they
ἀνάγκη ἐπήρτητο τοὺς ἐν τέλει πάντας φανερῶς
necessity hung-over the(-men) in office all openly
ἀποσφάττεσθαι καὶ δημεύεσθαι τὰς οὐσίας αὐτῶν, ἵν'
to-be-slaughtered and to-be-confiscated the estates their that
ἔχοι πόρον ὁ βασιλεὺς ἡνιόχοις καὶ πόρναις καὶ
may-have means the emperor for-charioteers and harlots and
ἀσελγέσιν ἀνθρώποις χαρίζεσθαι. ἑβδομήκοντα γὰρ καὶ
licentious men to-gratify seventy for and
ἐννακόσια κεντηνάρια κεχαραγμένου χρυσοῦ, χωρὶς ἀργύρου
nine-hundred centenaria of-minted gold without silver
τοῦ τε ἀσήμου καὶ ἐπισήμου, καταλιπόντος Θεοφίλου
the(-silver) both uncoined and coined having-left Theophilus
τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῦ ἐν τῷ φύλακι τηρούμενα τῷ βασιλικῷ,
the father his in the treasury being-kept the imperial
ἔτι δὲ καὶ Θεοδώρας τῆς τούτου μητρὸς ἄλλα προσθείσης
still but also Theodora the his mother other having-added

τριάκοντα καὶ ἀπαρτισάσης τὸν χίλια τῶν κεντηναρίων
thirty and having-completed the thousand of-the centenaria
ἀριθμόν, ἐν οὐδὲ ὅλοις τεσσαρεσκαίδεκα χρόνοις, ἀφ' οὗ
number in not-even whole fourteen years from when
τὴν τῶν ὅλων ἐξουσίαν οὗτος ἐδέξατο, πάντα διεφόρησε
the of-the whole authority this-one received all-things he-squandered
καὶ ἀνάλωσεν, ὡς μηδὲν ἕτερον μετὰ τὸν αὐτοῦ θάνατον
and spent so-that nothing other after the his death
εὑρεθῆναι πλὴν τρία καὶ μόνα κεντηνάρια. καὶ πῶς δὲ οὐκ
to-be-found except three and only centenaria and how too not
ἔμελλον ἐπιλιπεῖν, κἂν ἐκ ποταμῶν ἐπέρρει, οὕτως
were-they-going to-fail even-if from rivers they-flowed-in so
ἀσελγῶς καὶ ἀσώτως διασκιδνάμενα; ἡνιόχου γάρ ποτε
licentiously and profligately being-scattered of-charioteer for once
παιδίον δεξάμενος τοῦ οὕτω καλουμένου Χειλᾶ ὁλόκληρον
child having-received of-the so called Cheilas whole
αὐτῷ κεντηνάριον ἐδωρήσατο. ἀλλὰ καὶ τῷ πατρικίῳ
to-him centenarium he-gave but also to-the patrician
Ἡμερίῳ, ὃν Χοῖρον αὐτὸς μὲν ὁ βασιλεὺς διὰ τὴν τῆς
Hemerius whom Pig himself indeed the emperor because-of the of-the
ὄψεως ὠνόμαζεν ἀγριότητα, διὰ δὲ τὸ χοιρῶδες τοῦ βίου
face named savagery because-of but the swinish of-the life
μᾶλλον καὶ ῥυπαρὸν ἄξιος ἦν τῆς τοιαύτης προσρήσεως,
rather and filthy worthy he-was of-the such name
τούτῳ τοίνυν αἰσχρολογοῦντί ποτε κατενώπιον αὐτοῦ
to-this-one therefore talking-obscenely once before him
καὶ ταῖς ἀπὸ σκηνῆς φλυαρίαις καταχρωμένῳ, ἔκ τε
and with-the from stage nonsense using-to-excess from both
τοῦ παντελῶς ἀπερυθριᾶσαι καὶ μηδὲν τῶν ἐπονειδίστων
the altogether to-have-lost-shame and nothing of-the disgraceful-things
ὀκνῆσαι καὶ ψόφον ἀκόλαστον ἀπὸ τῆς μιαρᾶς ἀφέντος
to-shrink-from and noise licentious from the polluted having-let-off

γαστρός, οὕτω βαρὺν καὶ σφοδρῶς καταιγίζοντα ὥστε
belly so heavy and vehemently blasting that
καὶ τὸ φαῖνον φατλίον ἀποσβεσθῆναι, πεντήκοντα λιτρῶν
also the shining lamp to-be-extinguished fifty of-pounds
ἐπιδόσει ἐτίμησεν ὡς Ἡράκλειόν τινα τοῦτον ἆθλον
with-a-gift he-honored as Heraclean some this labor
ἀνύσαντι. καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους δὲ τῶν ὁμοίων αὐτῷ
having-accomplished and toward the others too of-the like to-him
οὕτως ὑπέρμετροι αἱ δόσεις ἦσαν αὐτοῦ. ταῦτα δὲ εἰ μὲν
so excessive the gifts were his these-things but if indeed
εἰς στρατιώτας καὶ προμάχους καὶ ἀριστεῖς ἢ εἰς τοὺς
on soldiers and champions and heroes or on the(-men)
ἐπ᾽ ἄλλῳ τινὶ τῶν ἀγαθῶν διαφέροντας ἑτοίμως οὕτως
in other some of-the goods excelling readily so
προΐετο, μεγαλοψυχίας ἄν τις καὶ ἐλευθεριότητος καὶ
he-lavished of-magnanimity — anyone and of-liberality and
τρόπου φιλοτίμου ἐνόμισε σύμβολα· ὅτε δὲ εἰς μίμους
of-manner generous would-have-thought tokens when but on mimes
καὶ ἡνιόχους καὶ ὀρχηστὰς καὶ βωμολόχους καὶ κόλακας
and charioteers and dancers and buffoons and flatterers
καὶ βδελυρίας ἁπάσης μεστοὺς ἀφρόνως διεσκορπίζετο, εἰς
and of-loathsomeness all full senselessly it-was-scattered on
δέ τι τῶν σπουδαίων προῄει οὐδ᾽ ὀβολός, ἀσωτίας
but anything of-the serious went not-even obol of-profligacy
πάντως καὶ παροινίας καὶ ἐμπληξίας λογίσαιτ᾽ ἄν τις
surely and of-drunken-violence and of-folly would-reckon — anyone
εἶναι τεκμήρια. καὶ τούτων ἐπιλειπόντων ἤδη ἀνάγκη ἦν,
to-be evidences and these failing already necessity was
ὥσπερ εἴρηται, καὶ ναοὺς περισυλᾶσθαι καὶ εὐαγεῖς οἴκους
as has-been-said both temples to-be-plundered and holy houses
αἰχμαλωτίζεσθαι καὶ πάντας τοὺς πλέον τῶν ἄλλων
to-be-made-captive and all the(-ones) more than-the others

κεκτημένους εἰς χρήματα ἀναιρεῖσθαι καὶ ἀποσφάττεσθαι.
possessing in moneys to-be-killed and to-be-slaughtered
δι᾽ ἃ δὴ πάντα συμφρονήσαντες τῶν ἐν τέλει
because-of which indeed all having-agreed of-the in office
οἱ δοκιμώτατοι καὶ τὸ ἔμφρον τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς,
the most-esteemed and the sensible of-the senatorial council
διὰ τῶν προκοιτούντων τοῖς βασιλεῦσι στρατιωτῶν, ἐν
through the sleeping-before the emperors soldiers in
τοῖς παλατίοις τοῦ ἁγίου μάρτυρος Μάμαντος ἀναιροῦσιν
the palace of-the holy martyr Mamas kill
αὐτόν, ἐκ τῆς ἄγαν οἰνοφλυγίας ἀνεπαισθήτως τὸν ὕπνον
him from the excessive drunkenness unperceivingly the sleep
τῷ θανάτῳ συνάψαντα. ὥσπερ γὰρ τοὺς σκορπίους καὶ
with-the death having-joined as for the scorpions and
ἔχεις μόνον ἰδόντες καὶ πρὶν ἢ τρῶσαι ἀναιροῦσιν οἱ
vipers only having-seen and before than to-wound kill the
ἄνθρωποι διὰ τὴν ἐνυπάρχουσαν αὐτοῖς κακίαν, οὕτω
men because-of the inherent in-them evil so
καὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τοὺς ἰώδεις καὶ φονικοὺς πρὸ τοῦ τρῶσαι
also of-the men the venomous and murderous before the to-wound
καὶ ἀνελεῖν σπουδάζουσιν ἀποκτεῖναι οἱ ἐκ τούτων
and to-kill hasten to-kill the(-ones) from these
προσδοκῶντες τὸν κίνδυνον. καὶ οὗτος μὲν οὕτω βιούς,
expecting the danger and this-one indeed so having-lived
αἰσχρῶς τε καὶ ὀλεθρίως ἑαυτῷ καὶ τοῖς πράγμασι,
shamefully both and ruinously for-himself and for-the affairs
τοιοῦτον καὶ τὸ τέλος ἐδέξατο, τῶν προβεβιωμένων
such also the end received of-the(-things) having-been-lived-before
ἐπάξιον.
worthy

28 Προάγεται δὲ εὐθὺς ἐπὶ τὴν πάντων ἀρχὴν ὁ μέχρι τοῦδε
is-advanced but straightway to the of-all rule the until this
δευτερεύων ταύτης Βασίλειος, καὶ παρά τε τῆς ἐντίμου
second-in-rank of-it Basil and by both the honorable
βουλῆς καὶ τῶν ὑποβεβηκότων ταγμάτων καὶ παντὸς τοῦ
senate and the subordinate orders and all the
στρατεύματος καὶ τοῦ ὄχλου τοῦ ἀστικοῦ ὁ καὶ πρὸ
army and the crowd the urban the also before
τούτου δι᾽ ἱκετηρικῶν εὐχῶν ἐπιζητούμενος ἀναγορεύεται
this through suppliant prayers sought is-proclaimed
αὐτοκράτωρ Βασίλειος. ὃς ἅμα τῷ παρελθεῖν ἐπὶ τὴν
emperor Basil who at-once with-the to-come to the
τῶν ὅλων ἀρχὴν καὶ ἑαυτὸν καὶ τὰς τοῦ κράτους ἡνίας
of-the whole rule both himself and the of-the power reins
θεῷ ἀνατέθεικεν, εὐξάμενος ἐπὶ λέξεως τάδε "Χριστὲ
to-god dedicated having-prayed on word these-things Christ
βασιλεῦ, τῇ σῇ κρίσει τὴν βασιλείαν δεξάμενος σοὶ
king by-the your judgment the kingship having-received to-you
καὶ ταύτην καὶ ἐμαυτὸν ἀνατίθημι." προσκαλεσάμενος δὲ
both it and myself I-dedicate having-summoned but
αὐτίκα τοὺς τῆς γερουσίας προκρίτους καὶ ἐν ἀξιώμασι
at-once the of-the senate foremost and in dignities
προύχοντας, μετ᾽ αὐτῶν τὸν τῶν βασιλείων θησαυρῶν
excelling with them the of-the imperial treasures
ἀνέῳξε φύλακα· καὶ οὐδὲν ἕτερον ἐκ τοῦ τοσούτου τῶν
opened treasury and nothing other from the so-great of-the
χρημάτων πλήθους εὑρέθη πλὴν τρία καὶ μόνα, καθὼς ἤδη
moneys multitude was-found except three and only as already
καὶ πρὸ ὀλίγου μοι εἴρηται, κεντηνάρια. ζητήσας οὖν ὁ
also before little by-me has-been-said centenaria having-sought then the
βασιλεὺς τὴν τῆς ἐξόδου καταγραφήν, καὶ ταύτην εὑρὼν
emperor the of-the expenditure register and this having-found

παρά τινι τῶν εὐνούχων γέροντι τῷ πρωτοσπαθαρίῳ
with some of-the eunuchs old-man the protospatharius
Βασιλείῳ, καὶ γνοὺς ὅπου ταῦτα ἐχώρησε, βουλὴν
Basil and having-learned where these-things went counsel
περὶ τούτου τοῖς ἀρίστοις προύθηκεν· ὧν ἡ ψῆφος
about this to-the best put-forward of-whom the vote
ὁμοφώνως συνᾴδουσα αὐτοὺς ἐκείνους τοὺς κακῶς
unanimously agreeing themselves those the(-ones) wrongly
ταῦτα λαβόντας ἀντιστρέψαι πρὸς τὸ δημόσιον, ὁ
these-things having-received to-return to the treasury the
βασιλεὺς τὸ ἄγαν ὑποθραύων δίκαιον τὰς ἡμισείας ὧνπερ
emperor the excessive softening justice the halves of-what
ἔλαβον ἕκαστοι ἀντιστρέψαι πρὸς τὸ βασιλικὸν ταμιεῖον
they-received each to-return to the imperial treasury
ἐκέλευσε. καὶ οὕτως συνέβη κἀκείνοις, εἰ καὶ ἀνάξιοι
ordered and so it-happened also-for-them if even unworthy
πάσης φιλοτιμίας ἐτύγχανον, οὐκ ὀλίγον ἔτι περιλειφθῆναι
of-all generosity they-were not little still to-be-left
τῆς δωρεᾶς, καὶ τῷ βασιλικῷ θησαυροφυλακίῳ τριακόσια
of-the gift and to-the imperial treasury three-hundred
ἐπεισαχθῆναι κεντηνάρια, ἀφ᾽ ὧν ἐν τοῖς ἐπείγουσιν
to-be-brought-in centenaria from which in the pressing-needs
ἤρξατο χορηγεῖν καὶ δεόντως ὁ βασιλεὺς διοικεῖν.
began to-supply and fittingly the emperor to-administer
Κατὰ δὲ τὴν ἡμέραν καθ᾽ ἣν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτοκράτορα 29
on but the day on which to the sole
ἦλθεν ἀρχὴν ὁ Βασίλειος, ὥσπερ ἐνδεικνυμένου θεοῦ τὴν
came rule — Basil as showing god the
ἐπὶ τὰ κρείττω τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν πραγμάτων μεταβολήν,
to the better of-the Roman affairs change
συνέβη πολλῶν ἐπινικίων ἀγγελίαν τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
it-happened of-many victories news the reigning-city

ταύτην καταλαβεῖν καὶ ἀνάρρυσιν πλήθους αἰχμαλώτων
this to-reach and ransoming of-multitude of-captives
Χριστιανῶν ἀγγελθῆναι. πρόοδον οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπὶ
Christians to-be-announced procession then the emperor to
τὸν μέγαν τοῦ θεοῦ ναὸν τὸν τῆς ἐκείνου σοφίας
the great — of-god church the(-church) of-the his wisdom
ἐπώνυμον ποιησάμενος, καὶ τὰς περὶ πάντων ὁμοῦ
named having-made and the for all together
εὐχαριστίας αὐτῷ ἀποδούς, ἐν τῷ ὑποστρέφειν ὑπάτευσεν,
thanksgivings to-him having-paid in the returning held-the-consulship
καὶ χρήματα πολλά, οὐκ ἐκ τῶν δημοσίων (οὐδὲ γὰρ
and moneys many not from the public not-even for
ἦν) ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν οἰκείων, ἃ ἐκέκτητο πρότερον,
there-was but from the own which he-had-acquired before
τοῖς ὑπηκόοις διένειμεν. καὶ ἡ τούτου δὲ σύζυγος
to-the subjects distributed and the his too wife
Εὐδοκία ἡ βασιλὶς ἅμα τοῖς υἱοῖς Κωνσταντίνῳ καὶ
Eudocia the empress together-with the sons Constantine and
Λέοντι ὑπατεύσασα πολλὰ τῇ πολιτείᾳ χρήματα ἀπὸ
Leo having-held-the-consulship many to-the state moneys from
τῶν ἑαυτῆς ἐδωρήσατο. πλὴν εἰ καὶ τότε ἔτι ἐσπάνιζε
the her-own gave but if even then still lacked
χρημάτων ὁ βασιλεύς, ὥσπερ εἴρηται, ἀλλὰ μετὰ ταῦτα
moneys the emperor as has-been-said but after these-things
προσεγένετο καὶ ἑτέρων χρημάτων πλῆθος αὐτῷ ἱκανόν,
accrued also of-other moneys multitude to-him sufficient
τοῦτο μὲν θεοῦ διὰ τὸν πρὸς τοὺς πένητας ἔλεον αὐτοῦ
partly indeed god because-of the toward the poor pity his
καὶ τὴν δικαιοσύνην πολλοὺς τῶν ὑπὸ γῆν θησαυρῶν ἐν
and the justice many of-the under earth treasures in
ταῖς ἡμέραις αὐτοῦ εἰς φῶς εὐδοκήσαντος προελθεῖν, τοῦτο
the days his to light having-deigned to-come-forth partly

δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν τῷ εἰδικῷ εὑρεθέντος χρυσοῦ,
but also from the in the private-treasury having-been-found gold
ὃν ὁ προβεβασιλευκὼς Μιχαὴλ τὰ κάλλιστα τῶν ἔργων
which the having-reigned-before Michael the finest of-the works
συγχωνεύσας, λέγω δὴ τὴν χρυσῆν ἐκείνην καλουμένην
having-melted-down I-mean indeed the golden that called
πλάτανον καὶ τοὺς δύο ὁλοχρύσους γρῦπας καὶ τοὺς δύο
plane-tree and the two all-golden griffins and the two
χρυσοῦς σφυρηλάτους λέοντας καὶ τὸ ὁλόχρυσον ὄργανον
golden hammered lions and the all-golden organ
καὶ ἕτερα τῶν ἐπὶ τῆς τραπέζης χρυσωμάτων ἔργα διάφορα
and other of-the on the table gold-plate works various
καὶ τὰς βασιλικάς τε καὶ αὐγουστιακὰς στολὰς καὶ τὰς
and the imperial both and empress's robes and the
ἄρχουσι μεγάλοις ἁρμοζούσας ἐσθῆτας, πάσας τυγχανούσας
for-rulers great fitting garments all being
χρυσοϋφεῖς· ἃ δὴ πάντα συγχωνεύσας, ὡς λέλεκται,
gold-woven which indeed all having-melted-down as has-been-said
εἰς τὰ καθ' ἡδονὴν αὐτῷ ἔμελλεν ἀποχρήσασθαι·
for the(-things) for pleasure to-him he-was-going to-use
προαναρπασθέντος δὲ ἐκείνου εὑρέθη ὁ χρυσός, καὶ
having-been-snatched-away but he was-found the gold and
χαραχθεὶς εἰς ἅπαντα γέγονε χρήσιμος τῷ βασιλεῖ.
having-been-minted for all-things became useful to-the emperor
δεῖ γάρ, φησί, χρημάτων, καὶ ἄνευ τούτων οὐδὲν
there-is-need for he-says of-moneys and without these nothing
ἔστι γενέσθαι τῶν δεόντων. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν ὕστερον.
it-is-possible to-happen of-the needful-things but this indeed later
Τότε δέ, ἐπείπερ ἐπὶ τῶν τῆς ἀρχῆς οἰάκων ὑπὸ τῆς
then but since on the of-the rule tillers by the
προνοίας προβιβασθεὶς ἐκάθισεν ὁ Βασίλειος, εὐθὺς ἀπὸ
providence having-been-advanced sat — Basil straightway from

γραμμῆς, φασίν, ἄξιος ἐσπούδαζε φανῆναι τοῦ μεγέθους
line they-say worthy he-was-eager to-appear of-the greatness
τοῦ πράγματος, καὶ νύκτωρ διηγρύπνει καὶ μεθ' ἡμέραν
of-the thing and by-night he-lay-awake and by day
διεσκόπει, πάντα κινῶν λογισμὸν καὶ πᾶν στρέφων
he-considered every moving reasoning and every turning
βούλευμα, ὅπως ἀγαθοῦ τινὸς αἴτιος τοῖς ὑπ' αὐτὸν
plan how of-good some cause to-the(-ones) under him
ἅπασι γένοιτο καὶ ὅπως ἐπὶ τὸ ἄμεινον ἐμφανῆ καὶ
all he-may-become and how to the better evident and
μεγάλην μεταβολὴν τὰ πράγματα δέξηται. καὶ πρῶτα
great change the affairs may-receive and first
μὲν ἐπὶ τὰς ἀρχὰς ἀδωρότατα τοὺς πάντων ἀρίστους
indeed to the offices most-incorruptibly the of-all best
ἐκλεγόμενος προεβάλλετο, οἷς ἦν καὶ οἴκοθεν, ἅτε
choosing he-put-forward for-whom it-was both from-home as
ἀρίστοις οὖσι, καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ἀκριβοῦς τοῦ βασιλεύοντος
best being and from the exact of-the reigning(-one)
ἐπισκέψεως πρῶτον ἔργον καὶ σπούδασμα τὸ πρὸ
oversight first work and effort the before
τῶν ἄλλων τὰς ἰδίας χεῖρας καθαρὰς ἀπὸ παντοίου
the others the own hands pure from every-kind-of
διαφυλάξαι λήμματος, εἶθ' οὕτως πασῶν τῶν ἀρετῶν
to-keep gain then so of-all the virtues
πλέον τιμῆσαι δικαιοσύνην, καὶ ἰσότητα παρασκευάσαι
more to-honor justice and equality to-prepare
ἐμπολιτεύεσθαι πανταχοῦ, καὶ τὸ μὴ καταδυναστεύεσθαι
to-be-at-home everywhere and the not to-be-oppressed
ὑπὸ τῶν πλουτούντων τοὺς πένητας, μηδὲ ἀδίκως ζημίᾳ
by the rich the poor nor unjustly to-penalty
τινὰ ὑποβάλλεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ῥύεσθαι πένητα καὶ πτωχὸν ἐκ
anyone to-be-subjected but to-rescue poor and beggar from

χειρὸς στερεωτέρων αὐτοῦ, καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν ἀναλαβεῖν
hand of-stronger than-him and by little to-take-up
τοὺς ἀνθρώπους οὕσπερ ἀπὸ τῶν φθασάντων ἤδει
the men whom from the previous(-reigns) he-knew
λειποψυχοῦντάς τε καὶ ἐκλείποντας, καὶ ἀναρρωννύντας ἐπὶ
fainting both and failing and strengthening to
τῆς ἀρχαίας ἅπαντας εὐετηρίας σπουδάζειν ἀποκαθιστᾶν.
the ancient all prosperity to-be-zealous to-restore
ὧν καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐξ ἀρχῆς πρὸς τὰ βελτίω ῥοπὴν
of-whom both because-of the from beginning toward the better inclination
(τοιοῦτοι γὰρ πάντως οἱ ἐκλεγόμενοι) καὶ διὰ τὴν
such for surely the(-men) being-chosen and because-of the
τοῦ κρατοῦντος περὶ ταῦτα σπουδὴν καὶ ἐγρηγορυῖαν
of-the ruler about these-things zeal and wakeful
πανταχόσε περίβλεψιν εἰς πᾶν τὸ δέον προθύμως ἀλλήλους
everywhere looking-round into all the needful eagerly one-another
ὑπερβαλέσθαι ἁμιλλωμένων, ἅπασα μὲν ἀδικία εὐθὺς
to-surpass competing all indeed injustice straightway
ἀπὸ πάντων ἠλαύνετο, καὶ τὸ δίκαιον ἐπαρρησιάζετο, καὶ
from all was-driven and the just spoke-freely and
αἱ πρὶν ὑπὲρ τὰς Βριάρεω χεῖρες πρὸς τὰ ἀλλότρια
the formerly beyond the of-Briareus hands to the(-things) another's
ἐκτεινόμεναι ἐκνεναρκωμέναις ὥσπερ καὶ παρειμέναις
being-stretched-out to-numbed as-it-were and paralyzed
ἐῴκεισαν καὶ τὰ ἀσθενῆ πρὸ τούτου τῶν πενήτων μέλη
were-like and the weak before this of-the poor limbs
ἐρρώννυντο διὰ τὸ ἀδεῶς ἕκαστον τὴν οἰκείαν βῶλον
were-strengthened because-of the fearlessly each the own clod
ἐργάζεσθαι καὶ τὸν ἴδιον ἀμπελῶνα καρποῦσθαι, καὶ τὴν
to-work and the own vineyard to-enjoy and the
ἐλαίαν καὶ τὴν συκῆν τὴν πατρῴαν μηδένα εἶναι τὸν
olive and the fig-tree the paternal no-one to-be the(-one)

τολμῶντα ὑπὸ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ποιεῖσθαι ἐξουσίαν, ἀλλ' ἕκαστον
daring under the his-own to-make authority but each
ἐν τῇ συνήθει καὶ πατρῴᾳ τούτων σκιᾷ ἀναπαύεσθαι. καὶ
in the customary and paternal of-these shade to-rest and
οὕτω μὲν περὶ τὸν ὑπὸ χεῖρα πάντα λαὸν τῶν τε χωρῶν
so indeed about the under hand all people of-the both lands
καὶ τόπων καὶ πόλεων τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἐπικρατείας ὁ εὐσεβὴς
and places and cities of-the his-own dominion the pious
διεγίνετο βασιλεύς. εἰ δέ τις οἷον ὄζος κακίας ἔν
conducted-himself emperor if but any as-it-were knot of-vice in
τινι στερεῶς εὖ μάλα συναθροισθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν κατὰ μέρος
some firmly well very having-been-gathered by the in part
ἀρχόντων μεταβληθῆναι ἢ τέλεον ἐκκοπῆναι οὐχ οἷός τε
rulers to-be-changed or wholly to-be-cut-out not able —
ἦν, δι' αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου τοῦ βασιλεύοντος ἢ μετεβάλλετο
was through very that-one the reigning(-one) either was-changed
ἢ ἀλλοίως πως τὴν ἰατρείαν ἐδέχετο. τέλεον γὰρ ἐξᾶραι
or otherwise somehow the cure received wholly for to-remove
πάντοθεν τὴν ἀδικίαν ὁ κράτιστος οὗτος φιλονεικῶν
from-everywhere the injustice the strongest this-one striving
πανταχοῦ τε διατάγματα ἐξέθετο καὶ κατὰ πᾶσαν χώραν
everywhere both edicts set-forth and to every land
ἐξέπεμψεν, δι' ὧν πᾶσα δόσις μέχρι τότε τὸ εὔλογον
sent-out through which every gift until then the reasonable
ἔχειν δοκοῦσα διὰ τὴν πονηρὰν ἀπὸ χρόνου συνήθειαν
to-have seeming because-of the wicked from time custom
ἀνῃρεῖτο καὶ ἐξεκόπτετο, καὶ ἰσονομία πᾶσα καὶ
was-abolished and was-cut-out and equality-before-the-law all and
δικαιοσύνη ὥσπερ ἀπό τινος ὑπερορίου φυγῆς ἐδόκει
justice as from some foreign exile seemed
κατιέναι πρὸς τὸν βίον καὶ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐμπολιτεύεσθαι.
to-come-back to the life and to-the men to-be-at-home

Ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς εἰς τὸ κρίνειν ἐπιτηδείους, ἀπὸ μὲν 31
but also the for the to-judge fit from indeed
μαθημάτων ἔχειν τὸ ἱκανὸν μαρτυρουμένους, ἀπὸ δὲ
learning to-have the sufficient being-attested from but
γνώμης καὶ προαιρέσεως τὸ εὐσεβές τε καὶ ἀδωρόληπτον,
mind and purpose the pious both and unbribable
ἀξιώμασί τε τῆς ταπεινοτέρας βαθμίδος ὑπεραίρων καὶ
with-dignities both from-the humbler step raising and
ἀνυψῶν καὶ ῥογῶν ἐνιαυσίων ἐκθέσεσι καὶ σιτηρεσίων
exalting and of-stipends annual with-grants and of-allowances
ἄλλων καὶ φιλοτιμιῶν παροχαῖς δεξιούμενος κατὰ πᾶσαν
other and liberalities with-provisions welcoming in every
σχεδὸν ἀγυιὰν καὶ πᾶν εὐαγὲς ἐνδιαίτημα ἐγκατέστησεν.
almost street and every holy residence he-installed
ἐξαιρέτως δὲ τὸ λεγόμενον τῆς Χαλκῆς λαμπρότατον τὸ
especially but the so-called of-the Chalke most-splendid the
πάλαι καὶ ἀξιάγαστον οἴκημα, τῷ χρόνῳ καὶ τῇ τῶν
of-old and admirable building by-the time and by-the of-the
κρατούντων ῥᾳθυμίᾳ, ἴσως δὲ καὶ ἀπό τινων ἐμπρησμῶν,
rulers indolence perhaps but also from some fires
κατὰ μέρη πολλὰ διαρρυὲν καὶ τὴν ὀροφὴν πονήσασαν
in parts many having-fallen-apart and the roof having-suffered
ἐσχηκός, αὐτὸς καὶ πόνῳ καὶ δαπάναις συχναῖς ἀπεκάθηρέ
having-had he-himself both by-toil and expenses frequent cleaned
τε καὶ περιεποιήσατο καὶ κοινὸν κατέστησε δικαστήριον,
both and restored and common made court
Ἀρείου τε πάγου καὶ Ἡλιαίας σεμνότερον. οὐ μόνον δὲ
than-Ares' both hill and Heliaea more-august not only and
διὰ τῆς τῶν κριτῶν ἐκλογῆς τε καὶ προβολῆς τοὺς
through the of-the judges choice both and appointment the(-ones)
ἀδικεῖσθαι λέγοντας τῶν δικαίων τυγχάνειν προενοήσατο,
to-be-wronged saying of-the just-things to-obtain he-provided

ἀλλὰ καὶ διὰ τῆς παροχῆς τῆς καθ' ἡμέραν τροφῆς
but also through the provision of-the by day food
τῶν ἐπὶ τῇ παρὰ τῶν ἰσχυροτέρων βίᾳ ἑκάστοτε πρὸς
of-the(-men) for the from the stronger violence each-time to
τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἀναγκαζομένων εἰσέρχεσθαι. δείσας
the reigning-city compelled to-come-in having-feared
γὰρ μὴ ἀπορίᾳ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων πολλάκις τινὲς πρὸ τοῦ
for lest from-lack of-the necessities often some before the
πέρας τὴν κατ' αὐτοὺς ὑπόθεσιν δέξασθαι τῶν τῆδε
end the about them case to-receive from-the(-things) here
ἀναχωρήσωσι, πρόσοδον ἀρκοῦσαν ἀφώρισεν ἀφ' ἧς οἱ
may-depart revenue sufficient he-assigned from which the(-ones)
ἐγκαλοῦντες κατά τινων ἀπετρέφοντο, ἕως τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ
bringing-charges against some were-maintained until the from the
δικαστοῦ ἀπόφασιν ἔλαβον. οὐ ταῦτα δὲ μόνα πρὸς τὴν
judge sentence they-received not these-things and only for the
παντελῆ τῆς ἀδικίας ἐπενοήσατο ἐξολόθρευσιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ
complete of-the injustice he-devised extermination but also
ἑαυτὸν εἰς τὸ τοιοῦτον μέρος ἐπέδωκε· καὶ ὅταν ἔτυχε
himself to the such part gave and when he-happened
τῶν στρατειῶν σχολάζων καὶ τοῦ χρηματίζειν ταῖς
from-the campaigns being-at-leisure and from-the to-transact with-the
ἀπανταχόθεν πρεσβείαις, αὐτὸς τῶν βασιλείων ὑποκατιὼν
from-everywhere embassies he-himself from-the palace going-down
καὶ εἰς τὸ διὰ τοὺς πανταχόθεν εἰς αὐτὸ συντρέχοντας,
and in the because-of the(-men) from-everywhere to it running-together
ὡς ἔοικεν, λεγόμενον Γενικὸν καθεζόμενος τοὺς ὑπὸ
as it-seems so-called Genikon sitting the(-men) by
τῶν εἰσπραττόντων τοὺς δημοσίους φόρους πολλάκις, οἷα
the(-men) exacting the public taxes often as
συμβαίνει, διὰ τὸ μέγεθος τῆς ἀρχῆς ἀδικουμένους καὶ
happens because-of the greatness of-the office being-wronged and

ὥσπερ εἰς κοινὸν πρυτανεῖον εἰς τὸ τοιοῦτον διαιτητήριον
as to common town-hall to the such court
καταφεύγοντας καὶ τὰς οἰκείας ἐγκλήσεις προβαλλομένους
fleeing and the own charges putting-forward
μετὰ πόνου πολλοῦ καὶ συχνῆς ἐπιμελείας ἐξήταζεν, καὶ
with toil much and frequent care he-examined and
οὕτω τοῖς ἀδικουμένοις ἐπήμυνεν καὶ τοὺς ἀδικοῦντας
so the wronged he-defended and the wrongdoers
ἔπαυε διὰ τῆς νομίμου τιμωρίας τοῦ μηκέτι τολμᾶν τὰ
he-stopped through the lawful punishment from-the no-longer to-dare the
τοιαῦτα ποιεῖν. χρόνοις δὲ ὕστερον λέγεταί ποτε κατελθεῖν
such-things to-do in-times but later it-is-said once to-have-gone-down
εἰς τὴν τοιαύτην διατριβὴν πρὸς τὴν τῶν ἀδικουμένων
to the such court for the of-the wronged
ἐκδίκησιν· ὡς δ' ἔτυχεν οὐδεὶς ἐγκαλῶν, ὑποτοπήσας
vengeance when but there-happened no-one charging having-suspected
ὑπό τινων τῆς πρὸς αὐτὸν εἰσόδου ἀνείργεσθαι, τοὺς περὶ
by some from-the to him entrance to-be-barred the about
αὐτὸν δορυφόρους ἀπέστειλε ζητοῦντας κατὰ πολλὰ μέρη
him guards he-sent seeking in many parts
τῆς πόλεως εἴ τις ἔστι κατά τινος ποιούμενος ἔγκλησιν·
of-the city if anyone is against someone making charge
ὡς δ' ἐπανῆλθον οὗτοι μηδένα μηδαμοῦ εὑρηκέναι λέγοντες
when but returned these no-one anywhere to-have-found saying
ἐγκαλοῦντα κατά τινος, δακρῦσαί φασι τὸν γενναῖον
charging against anyone to-weep they-say the noble
ἐκεῖνον ὑφ' ἡδονῆς, καὶ οὕτω τὴν εὐχαριστίαν ἀποδοῦναι
that-one from joy and so the thanksgiving to-pay
θεῷ. ὁρῶν δὲ ὅτι ἔστι τις τοῖς πονηροῖς εἰς τὸ ἀδικεῖν
to-god seeing but that there-is some for-the wicked for the to-wrong
ἀφορμὴ ἀπὸ τοῦ διὰ τὸ σύντομον τοῖς τῶν ἀριθμῶν
occasion from the for the brevity the of-the numbers

μορίοις καὶ μέρεσι τοῦ ἡμίσεως καὶ ἕκτου καὶ δωδεκάτου
fractions and parts of-the half and sixth and twelfth
τυχὸν κεχρῆσθαι τοῖς παλαιοῖς ἐν ταῖς ἀναγραφαῖς τῆς
perhaps to-have-used the ancients in the registers of-the
τῶν φόρων εἰσπράξεως, ἠθέλησε καὶ τὴν τοιαύτην τῶν
of-the taxes collection he-wished also the such of-the(-ones)
ἀδικεῖν βουλομένων περιελεῖν ἀφορμήν, καὶ διωρίσατο καὶ
to-wrong wishing to-remove occasion and decreed both
γράμμασι λιτοῖς, ἃ καὶ τοῖς ἀγροίκοις ἀναγινώσκειν ἐστὶν
in-letters plain which also for-the rustics to-read is
ἐν δυνατῷ, καὶ ὁλογράφοις καὶ φαναιραῖς ταῖς ψήφοις τῆς
in possible and written-out-in-full and clear the numerals of-the
δηλουμένης ποσότητος τοὺς τῶν ἀπαιτήσεων γράφεσθαι
indicated quantity the of-the demands to-be-written
κώδικας, οἴκοθεν τὸ εἰς τοῦτο τάξας ἀνάλωμα καὶ
codices from-home the for this having-assigned expense both
τῶν χαρτίων καὶ τῆς γραφῆς καὶ τῶν γραφέων, πρὸς τὸ
of-the papers and of-the writing and of-the scribes for the
μὴ ἀδικεῖσθαι τοὺς πένητας. καὶ τοῦτο μὲν τοιοῦτον καὶ
not to-be-wronged the poor and this indeed such and
τοσοῦτον τῆς περὶ τὸ ὑπήκοον κηδεμονίας αὐτοῦ καθέστηκε
so-great of-the about the subjects care his became
γνώρισμα, καὶ ὅτι ὑπ᾽ οὐδενὸς οὐδένα ἀδικεῖσθαι ἐβούλετο.
mark and that by no-one anyone to-be-wronged he-wished
καὶ τοιοῦτος μὲν ἦν περὶ τὰ πολιτικὰ καὶ δημόσια.
and such indeed he-was about the civil and public-things

32 Μὴ βουλόμενος δὲ μηδὲ τῶν ἐκκλησιῶν τοῦ θεοῦ δοκεῖν
not wishing but even the churches — of-god to-seem
ἀμελεῖν (πάντως γὰρ ὡς ἐν τῷ κοσμικῷ περιεχόμεναι
to-neglect surely for as in the worldly contained
σκάφει, ὑπὸ τὴν πρόνοιαν τοῦ κρατοῦντος καὶ αὗται
vessel under the providence of-the ruler also these

τυγχάνουσιν, ἐκείνου δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον ἅτε θεοφιλοῦς καὶ
happen of-that-one but also rather as god-loving and
πολλὴν περὶ τὰ θεῖα κεκτημένου εὐλάβειαν), ἐπεὶ
much about the divine-things having piety since
γοῦν καὶ ταύτας οἷον εἶναι ἐν σάλῳ τινὶ καὶ
at-any-rate also these as-it-were to-be in tossing some and
ταράχῳ τυγχανούσας ἑώρα διὰ τὸ τῆς κοινῆς λύμης
turmoil being he-saw because-of the of-the common ruin
ὑπὸ τοῦ προάρξαντος καὶ ταύτας μεταλαχεῖν καὶ
by the(-one) having-ruled-before also these to-have-had-a-share and
ἐξωσθῆναι μὲν τῆς οἰκείας καθέδρας καὶ ποίμνης
to-have-been-thrust indeed from-the own see and flock
τὸν ἐννόμως τούτων κατάρχοντα, ἀντεισαχθῆναι
the(-one) lawfully them ruling to-have-been-brought-in-instead
δὲ ἕτερον, οὐδὲ τούτων ἠμέλησεν, ἀλλὰ διὰ κοινῆς
but another not-even these he-neglected but through common
συνόδου καὶ συνελεύσεως τῶν ἁπανταχόθεν ἀρχιερέων θεοῦ
synod and assembly of-the from-everywhere high-priests of-god
ταῖς ἐκκλησίαις τὸν σάλον κατὰ τὸ ἐνδεχόμενον ἔστησεν,
for-the churches the tossing as-far-as the possible he-stopped
τήν τε πρὸ τούτου ἑβδόμην ἁγίαν σύνοδον ἐπικυρώσας,
the both before this seventh holy synod having-confirmed
καὶ τοὺς περιλιπεῖς τῶν εἰκονομάχων αἱρετικῶν τῷ
and the remaining of-the iconoclast heretics to-the
ἀναθέματι δούς, καὶ τὸν γνήσιον νυμφίον τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ
anathema having-given and the genuine bridegroom to-the church
καὶ τοῖς τέκνοις τὸν πατέρα κανονικῶς παρασχών, τὸν
and to-the children the father canonically having-provided the(-one)
δὲ ἀντεισαχθέντα σχολάζειν κελεύσας ἕως τοῦτον πρὸς
but brought-in-instead to-be-at-leisure having-ordered until him to
ἑαυτὸν μεταστήσει ὁ κύριος. καὶ οὕτω μὲν εὖ καὶ καλῶς
himself will-remove the lord and so indeed well and finely

τὰ κατὰ τὴν ἐκκλησίαν διέθετο, καὶ τὴν ἐνδεχομένην
the(-things) in the church he-arranged and the possible
καὶ ταύτῃ γαλήνην τῇ οἰκείᾳ σπουδῇ καὶ προμηθείᾳ
also for-it calm by-the own zeal and forethought
παρέσχετο.
provided

33 Εὑρὼν δὲ καὶ τοὺς πολιτικοὺς νόμους πολλὴν
having-found but also the civil laws much
ἀσάφειαν καὶ σύγχυσιν ἔχοντας διὰ τὴν ἀγαθῶν
obscurity and confusion having because-of the of-good
ὥσπερ καὶ πονηρῶν συναναστροφήν, λέγω δὴ τὴν
as-it-were and of-wicked mixing-together I-mean indeed the
τῶν ἀνῃρημένων καὶ πολιτευομένων ἀδιάκριτον καὶ
of-the(-laws) abolished and in-force indiscriminate and
κοινὴν ἀναγραφήν, καὶ τούτους κατὰ τὸ προσῆκον
common registration also these according-to the fitting
καὶ ἐνδεχόμενον προσφόρως ἐπηνωρθώσατο, τὴν τῶν
and possible suitably he-corrected the of-the
ἀνῃρημένων ἀχρηστίαν περιελών, καὶ τῶν κυρίων
abolished uselessness having-removed and of-the valid
ἀνακαθάρας τὸ πλῆθος, καὶ ὥσπερ ἐν συνόψει, ἐν
having-purged the multitude and as in synopsis in
κεφαλαίοις διὰ τὸ εὐμνημόνευτον τὴν προτέρων ἀπειρίαν
heads for the easy-to-remember the of-former(-laws) endlessness
περιλαβών.
having-comprehended

Symbatius and George conspire and are punished by blinding alone; Basil crowns Constantine and Leo, gives Stephen to the Church, and dedicates his daughters at St. Euphemia. He refills and trains the army, holding that war cannot be won untaught. He ravages Chrysocheir's lands but cannot take Tephrike; Taranta asks for peace, and Kourtikios surrenders Lokana. His raiders take Zapetra and sack Samosata; he bridges the Euphrates, carrying beams himself, routs the Melitenians but leaves Melitene untaken, and returns in triumph. He prays to see Chrysocheir dead with three arrows in his head; at the Bathyrrhyax two themes' rivalry becomes a dawn attack that drives the Paulicians thirty miles.

Ἀλλ᾽ ἐπεὶ τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς ἀεὶ παραφύεται φθόνος ὡς τοῖς 34
but since on-the goods always grows-beside envy as on-the
γλυκέσι μάλιστα τῶν ξύλων οἱ σκώληκες, καὶ τῇ κοσμικῇ
sweet most of-the woods the worms and the worldly
εὐετηρίᾳ καὶ εὐθηνίᾳ βασκαίνοντα τὰ φαῦλα δαιμόνια διὰ
prosperity and plenty envying the wicked spirits through
πονηρῶν ἀνθρώπων πειρᾶται τὴν τῶν ἀγαθῶν συνταράξαι
wicked men try the of-the goods to-confound
φοράν, ἐκ τούτων καὶ τούτῳ συσκευὴν ἐπιβουλῆς,
course from these also against-this-one plot of-conspiracy
μετὰ καὶ πρὸς φόνον ὁπλίζεται Συμβάτιος καὶ Γεώργιος
with also for murder arms-himself Symbatius and George
μετὰ στίφους ἀποφράδων ἀνθρώπων καὶ δυσσεβῶν. οὐ
with band of-accursed men and impious not
συγχωροῦντος δὲ πάντως, οὐδ᾽ ἀνεχομένου θεοῦ τὴν κακίαν
allowing but at-all nor enduring god the evil
δι᾽ ἐλαχίστου αὖθις ἀναπαλαῖσαι τὴν οἰκείαν ἧτταν καὶ
through least again to-wrestle-back the own defeat and
ἀπελάσαι τὴν εὐνομίαν καὶ δικαιοσύνην ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς,
to-drive-away the good-order and justice from the earth

κατάδηλος ἡ τούτων πονηρία καθίσταται ἀφ' ἑνὸς τῶν
evident the of-these wickedness becomes from one of-the
συνωμοτῶν. ἀκολουθησάντων δὲ τῶν ἐλέγχων ἐπήρτητο μὲν
conspirators having-followed but the proofs hung indeed
ἀπὸ τῶν νόμων αὐτοῖς ἡ ἐσχάτη τιμωρία, τουτέστι, μετὰ
from the laws over-them the extreme penalty that-is with
καὶ δήμευσιν καὶ τῶν ὄντων ἁπάντων ἔκπτωσιν, καὶ ἡ τῆς
both confiscation and of-the possessions all loss and the of-the
ζωῆς αὐτῆς ἀλλοτρίωσις. ἀλλ' ἡ τοῦ γενναίου βασιλέως
life itself estrangement but the of-the noble emperor
φιλανθρωπία μόνῃ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐκκοπῇ τὴν τιμωρίαν
humanity with-only of-the eyes gouging the penalty
ὡρίσατο τέως τῶν προκατάρξαντων τῆς πονηρᾶς
defined meanwhile of-the(-ones) having-led of-the wicked
συμβουλῆς· καὶ πλέον δ' ἂν τὴν εἴσπραξιν ἐμετρίασεν,
counsel and more too — the exaction he-would-have-moderated
εἰ μὴ τὴν εἰς τούτους ἄκραν φιλανθρωπίαν ἐγίνωσκε
if not the toward these extreme humanity he-knew
καὶ ἄλλους προτρέψεσθαι πρὸς τὴν μίμησιν καὶ τότε εἰς
also others going-to-urge to the imitation and then into
ἀνάγκην ὑπαχθῆναι αὐτὸν καὶ βαρυτέρας ἀνταποδόσεως.
necessity to-be-brought him also of-heavier retribution
διὰ τοῦτο τῇ λεχθείσῃ ποινῇ τούτοις τε μετανοίας
because-of this by-the said punishment to-these both of-repentance
παρέσχε καιρὸν καὶ τοὺς λοιποὺς τῶν πονηρῶν ἐσωφρόνιζε.
he-gave time and the rest of-the wicked chastened
βουλόμενος δ' ἐπὶ μᾶλλον ἀναστεῖλαι τὰς ὁρμὰς τῶν
wishing but to more to-check the impulses of-the(-ones)
ἀδίκως ζητούντων ἀλλότριον θάνατον καὶ πᾶσαν αὐτῶν
unjustly seeking another's death and all their
ἐλπίδα περιελεῖν, ἀνάγει πρὸς τὸ τῆς βασιλείας ἀξίωμα
hope to-remove brings-up to the of-the empire dignity

τοὺς τῶν παίδων καθ' ἡλικίαν προέχοντας, ἤδη βασιλικῶς
the of-the sons in age excelling already royally
ἀναγομένους καὶ παιδευομένους καὶ εἰς πᾶσαν ἐκλάμποντας
brought-up and educated and in all shining
ἀρχικὴν ἀρετήν, Κωνσταντῖνον καὶ Λέοντα, οἱονεὶ
ruling virtue Constantine and Leo as-it-were
κραταιοτέρας ῥίζας καὶ πλείονας βαλλόμενος τῇ ἀρχῇ,
stronger roots and more casting for-the rule
καὶ τοὺς εὐγενεῖς τῆς βασιλείας ὄρπηκας ἐπὶ ταύτης ὑψῶν.
and the noble of-the kingship shoots on it raising
Ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ κατὰ τοῦτο τὸ μέρος ἐγενόμην τῆς διηγήσεως, 35
but since at this the part I-have-come of-the narrative
βούλομαι καὶ περὶ τῶν λοιπῶν αὐτοῦ παίδων ἤδη διαλαβεῖν,
I-wish also about the other his children now to-treat
ὅπως περὶ ἑκάστου αὐτῶν εὐσεβῶς ἐβουλεύσατο. κατὰ γὰρ
how about each of-them piously he-planned like for
τοὺς πάλαι τῶν εὐσεβῶν καὶ μακαρίων ἀνδρῶν, μᾶλλον
the(-ones) of-old of-the pious and blessed men rather
δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ ἐκείνους πολύπαιδα καὶ καλλίπαιδα καὶ
but even beyond those with-many-children and with-fair-children also
τοῦτον ἔδειξεν ὁ θεός. μετὰ χρόνον τοίνυν τινὰ μεταδίδωσι
this-one showed — god after time therefore some he-gives-a-share
τοῦ στέφους καὶ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῷ τρίτῳ υἱῷ· τὸν δὲ τούτων
of-the crown also to-Alexander the third son the but of-these
νεώτατον Στέφανον, ὡς τὸν Ἰσαὰκ ὁ Ἀβραάμ, προσάγει
youngest Stephen as — Isaac — Abraham he-brings
θεῷ καὶ τῇ τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησίᾳ ἐγκαταλέγει καὶ ἀφιεροῖ.
to-god and to-the — of-god church enrolls and dedicates
τὴν θήλειαν δὲ γονὴν ἰσάριθμον οὖσαν τῇ ἄρρενι ἐν ἱερῷ
the female but offspring equal-in-number being to-the male in holy
σεμνείῳ τῆς πανευφήμου μάρτυρος Εὐφημίας καθιεροῖ καὶ
convent of-the all-praised martyr Euphemia he-consecrates and

ὡς δῶρον δεκτὸν καὶ ἀνάθημα θεῷ ἀνατίθησιν, καὶ σχήματι
as gift acceptable and offering to-god dedicates and in-habit
καὶ καταστολῇ κοσμήσας ὁμοίως ταῖς καθαρῶς καὶ ἀμιάντως
and attire having-adorned like the purely and undefiledly
τῷ ἀθανάτῳ νυμφίῳ νυμφευομέναις παρθένοις Χριστῷ.
to-the immortal bridegroom betrothed virgins to-Christ
ταῦτα δὲ εἰ καὶ τοῖς χρόνοις ὕστερον τυχὸν γέγονεν,
these-things but if even in-the times later perhaps happened
ἀλλ᾽ οὖν ἐνταῦθα κείσθω συνημμένα, ὥσπερ τῇ φύσει,
but then here let-them-lie joined as in-the nature
οὕτω δὴ καὶ τῇ διηγήσει τῆς τετρακτύος τῶν ἀδελφῶν.
so indeed also in-the narrative of-the foursome of-the brothers
36 Ἐπεὶ οὖν τὰ οἴκοι καλῶς εἶχεν αὐτῷ καὶ κατὰ
since then the(-things) at-home well were for-him and according-to
σκοπὸν εὐσεβῆ καὶ θεάρεστον, ἐκάλει δὲ αὐτὸν ἡ ζέουσα
aim pious and god-pleasing called but him the boiling
περὶ τῶν ὅλων φροντὶς καὶ πρὸς ὑπερορίους στρατείας,
about the whole care also to foreign campaigns
ὡς ἂν τοῖς οἰκείοις πόνοις καὶ τῇ αὐτοῦ ἀνδρίᾳ
so-that — with-the own toils and the his courage
καὶ γενναιότητι πλατύνῃ μὲν τὰ ὅρια τῆς ἀρχῆς,
and nobility he-may-widen indeed the bounds of-the rule
πορρωτέρω δὲ συνώσῃ καὶ ἀπελάσῃ τὸ δυσμενές, οὐδὲ
farther but may-push and may-drive-off the hostile not-even
τούτων ἠμέλησεν, ἀλλὰ πρῶτα μὲν τοὺς στρατιωτικοὺς
these he-neglected but first indeed the military
καταλόγους ἐλαττωθέντας ἐκ τοῦ περικοπῆναι τὰς
rolls diminished from the to-have-been-cut-down the
διδομένας τούτοις φιλοτιμίας καὶ ῥόγας καὶ τὰ βασιλικὰ
given to-them bounties and stipends and the imperial
σιτηρέσια διὰ νέων συλλογῆς τε καὶ ἐκλογῆς ἀνεπλήρωσεν
allowances through new levying both and choosing he-filled-up

καὶ διὰ τῆς τῶν δεόντων παροχῆς τε καὶ ἐπιδόσεως
and through the of-the necessities provision both and supply
ἔρρωσεν· ἔπειτα γυμνάσας τούτους ταῖς τακτικαῖς μελέταις,
strengthened then having-trained these in-the tactical exercises
καὶ τοῖς ἐνδελεχέσι πόνοις ἐμπείρους τῆς πολεμικῆς
and by-the continual toils experienced of-the military
ἀγωνίας πεποιηκώς, καὶ εὐταξίας ὅτι μάλιστα λόγον ἔχειν
struggle having-made and of-good-order that most account to-have
ἐθίσας καὶ πεφροντικέναι τοῦ εὐπειθοῦς, οὕτω μετ᾽
having-accustomed and to-have-cared-for the obedience so with
αὐτῶν ὑπὲρ τῶν φυλετῶν καὶ συγγενῶν καὶ ὑπηκόων
them for the fellow-tribesmen and kinsmen and subjects
κατὰ βαρβάρων ἐστράτευσεν. ἤδει γὰρ ὡς οὐδὲ τῶν
against barbarians he-campaigned he-knew for that not-even of-the
βαναύσων καὶ χυδαίων τούτων τεχνῶν οὐδεμίαν ἔστιν
mechanical and vulgar these arts any it-is-possible
εἰδέναι πρὸ τοῦ μαθεῖν, οὐδ᾽ ἔστιν ὅστις διδασκάλου χωρὶς
to-know before the to-learn nor there-is anyone teacher without
οὔτε ὑποδηματοράφος, μήτι γε τῶν σπουδαιοτέρων τινὰ
even shoe-stitcher let-alone indeed of-the more-serious some
τεχνῶν κατωρθωκὼς φαίνεται. τὴν δὲ πολεμικὴν ἐπιστήμην
arts having-succeeded appears the but military science
ἢ τέχνην εἰ δίχα μαθήσεως καὶ ἱκανῆς ἐμπειρίας ἐξῆν
or art if without learning and sufficient experience it-were-possible
εἰδέναι τῷ βουλομένῳ, οὐκ εἶχον ἄρα νοῦν ἀλλ᾽
to-know for-the(-one) wishing not had then sense but
ἐλήρουν οἱ πολλὰ περὶ τὸ μέρος τοῦτο πονήσαντες
talked-nonsense the(-men) much about the part this having-toiled
ἐν τοῖς τακτικοῖς συγγράμμασι καὶ οἱ μέγιστοι τῶν
in the tactical writings and the greatest of-the
αὐτοκρατόρων καὶ στρατηγῶν, οἱ πολλὰ ἀπὸ πολλῶν

τρόπαια συστήσαντες, ὧν οὐδεὶς ἐθάρρησε πώποτε μετ'
trophies having-set-up of-whom no-one dared ever with
ἀμαθοῦς καὶ ἀγυμνάστου λαοῦ εἰς πολεμίων παράταξιν
ignorant and untrained people into of-enemies line
ἐμβαλεῖν. ἀλλ' οὐκ ἔστιν οὔτε τὸν μὴ μαθόντα
to-charge but not it-is-possible either the(-one) not having-learned
εἰδέναι οὔτε τὸν μὴ ἀσκήσαντα καὶ γυμνασάμενον
to-know or the(-one) not having-practiced and having-trained
ἀγωνίζεσθαι. διὰ τοῦτο καὶ ὁ γενναῖος οὗτος πρότερον
to-contend because-of this also the noble this-one first
γυμνάσας καὶ καταρτίσας τὰ τάγματα τὰ στρατιωτικά,
having-trained and having-equipped the regiments the military
καὶ τὴν νεοσύλλεκτον στρατιὰν ἀναμίξας τῇ παλαιᾷ, καὶ
and the newly-levied army having-mixed with-the old and
ταῖς ἁρμοζούσαις χορηγίαις καὶ δωρεαῖς λιπάνας αὐτῶν
with-the fitting supplies and gifts having-oiled their
τὰ νεῦρα καὶ τονώσας τὰς δεξιάς, οὕτω μετ' αὐτῶν
the sinews and having-braced the right-hands so with them
προσέβαλε τοῖς ἐχθροῖς καὶ τὰ πολλὰ τρόπαια ἔστησεν
attacked the enemies and the many trophies set-up
καὶ τὰς μυρίας νίκας ἀνείλετο. διὰ βραχέων δὲ διηγήσομαι.
and the countless victories won in brief but I-shall-narrate

37 Καὶ κατάστασιν πόλεως ἐνευκαιρήσας καὶ σχολάσας
and settlement of-city having-found-time-for and having-had-leisure
πράξεσιν, ἔαρος ὑπολάμποντος τὰ ὅπλα ἀνείλετο καὶ μετὰ
for-affairs spring shining-forth the arms took-up and with
τῶν στρατιωτικῶν καταλόγων ξυνεξητάζετο, ἡγούμενος
the military rolls was-reviewed-together thinking
χρῆναι τὸν ὡς ἀληθῶς ἄρχοντα τοῦ οἰκείου
it-to-be-needful the as truly ruler before-the own
προκινδυνεύειν λαοῦ καὶ ὑπὲρ τοῦ πᾶν ἀδεῶς διάγειν
to-run-risk people and for the all fearlessly to-live

τὸ ὑποχείριον πόνους καὶ ταλαιπωρίας ἑκουσίως αὐτὸν
the subject toils and hardships willingly himself
ἀναδέχεσθαι. καὶ ἐπεὶ κατὰ τοὺς καιροὺς ἐκείνους ὁ τῆς
to-undertake and since at the times those the(-one) —
Τεφρικῆς ἐξηγούμενος, ὃν Χρυσόχειρα κατωνόμαζον, ἐπ᾽
of-Tephrike leading whom Chrysocheir they-named for
ἀνδρίᾳ καὶ συνέσει διαφέρειν δοκῶν σφόδρα παρελύπει τὴν
courage and intelligence to-excel seeming greatly grieved the
Ῥωμαίων χώραν καὶ τοὺς λαούς, καὶ πολλοὺς τῶν ἀγροίκων
of-Romans land and the peoples and many of-the rustics
καθ᾽ ἑκάστην αἰχμαλώτους ποιούμενος ἐφρόνει σοβαρὰ
by each(-day) captives making thought haughty
καὶ ὑπέρογκα, κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ καὶ τῆς ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν πόλεως
and overweening-things against him and the under him city
ἐκστρατεύει ὁ βασιλεύς. τοῦ δὲ σοβαροῦ καὶ θρασέος
campaigns the emperor of-the but haughty and bold
ἐκείνου πρὸς τὴν γενναιότητα τοῦ ἐπιόντος στρατεύματος
that-one against the nobility of-the oncoming army
καὶ τὴν σύνεσιν καὶ ἀνδρίαν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἐμφανῶς
and the intelligence and courage of-the emperor openly
μὴ τολμήσαντος ἀντιστῆναι, ἀλλ᾽ ὑποχωροῦντος καὶ μόνην
not having-dared to-withstand but withdrawing and only
τὴν οἰκείαν πόλιν φυλάξαι καὶ κρατύνεσθαι διεγνωκότος,
the own city to-guard and to-be-strengthened having-decided
ἐπήει κατὰ πολλὴν τοῦ κωλύσοντος ἐρημίαν
he-advanced in much of-the(-one) going-to-hinder absence
ληϊζόμενος καὶ πορθῶν καὶ κατατέμνων καὶ πυρπολῶν
plundering and sacking and ravaging and burning
πάσας τὰς ὑπὸ τὸν Χρυσόχειρα χώρας καὶ κωμοπόλεις ὁ
all the under — Chrysocheir lands and towns the
βασιλεύς, λείαν ἄπειρον καὶ αἰχμαλωσίαν περιβαλλόμενος.
emperor booty boundless and captives acquiring

προσβαλὼν δὲ καὶ αὐτῷ τῷ ἄστει Τεφρικῆς, καὶ δι᾽
having-attacked but also very the town of-Tephrike and through
ἀκροβολισμῶν καὶ προσεδρείας οὐχὶ μακρᾶς ἐλεῖν πειραθείς,
skirmishes and siege not long to-take having-tried
ὡς ἑώρα καὶ τειχῶν καρτερότητι καὶ πλήθει βαρβαρικῷ
when he-saw both of-walls by-strength and by-multitude barbarian
καὶ ἀφθονίᾳ χρειῶν κατωχυρωμένον αὐτὸ καὶ δυσάλωτον,
and by-abundance of-necessities fortified it and hard-to-take
ἐπεὶ καὶ τὰ ἐκτὸς ἅπαντα δι᾽ ἐλαχίστου χρόνου τῷ
since also the(-things) outside all in least time by-the
πλήθει τῆς στρατιᾶς κατηρείπωτο καὶ τὰ ἀναγκαῖα σχεδὸν
multitude of-the army had-been-demolished and the necessities almost
κατηνάλωτο, ἀπέστη τῆς πρὸς τὴν πολιορκίαν χρονίου
had-been-consumed he-stood-off from-the toward the siege long
ἐπιμονῆς· τὰ δὲ περὶ αὐτὴν φρούρια τὴν Ἄβαραν καὶ τὴν
persistence the but about it forts — Abara and —
Σπάθην καὶ ἕτερά τινα ἐκπορθήσας, καὶ ἄρας ἐντεῦθεν
Spathe and others some having-sacked and having-set-out from-there
ἀσινῆ τὸν περὶ αὐτὸν πάντα στρατόν, μετὰ συχνῶν, ὡς
unharmed the about him all army with many as
εἴρηται, λαφύρων καὶ ἀνδραπόδων ἐπανεχώρησεν.
has-been-said spoils and captives he-withdrew

38 Τῶν ἐν τῇ Τεφρικῇ τοίνυν τὸν πολὺν φόνον ἡ
of-the(-men) in — Tephrike therefore the great slaughter the
ἑτέρα τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν πόλις θεασαμένη, ἣν Τάραντα
other of-the Ishmaelites city having-beheld which Taranta
λέγουσι, πρέσβεις πέμψασα εἰρήνης ἠξίου τυχεῖν καὶ ταῖς
they-call envoys having-sent of-peace asked to-obtain and among-the
συμμαχίσιν ἐγγράφεσθαι. ὁ δὲ κράτιστος βασιλεύς, ὅσην
allies to-be-enrolled the but strongest emperor as-much-as
πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιταττομένους ἀνδρίαν, τοσαύτην πρὸς τοὺς
toward the(-ones) opposing courage so-much toward the(-ones)

ὑποταττομένους ἐπιείκειαν ἐνδεικνύμενος, ἡττήθη τε τῆς
submitting gentleness showing was-overcome both by-the
πρεσβείας καὶ τῆς εἰρήνης τοῖς αἰτοῦσι μετέδωκε, καὶ
embassy and of-the peace to-the(-ones) asking gave-a-share and
συμμάχους ἀντὶ πολεμίων τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε ἐκέκτητο.
allies instead-of enemies the(-time) from now he-possessed
ἐκ τούτου ἄλλοι τε οὐκ ὀλίγοι καὶ Κουρτίκιός τις
from this others both not few and Kourtikios some
Ἀρμένιος, ὃς εἶχε τότε τὴν Λόκαναν καὶ συνεχῶς τὰς
Armenian who held then — Lokana and continually the
ἐσχατιὰς τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἀρχῆς ἐλυμαίνετο, προσέφυγε
borders of-the Roman rule ravaged fled-for-refuge
πρὸς αὐτόν, καὶ τὴν πόλιν αὐτοῦ καὶ τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὸν
to him and the city his and the arms and the
λαὸν τῷ αὐτοκράτορι καθυπέταξε, θαυμάσας αὐτοῦ τὸ
people to-the emperor subjected having-admired his the
μετὰ τοῦ ἀνδρείου ἐπιεικὲς καὶ μετὰ τῆς δυνάμεως δίκαιον.
with the courage gentleness and with the power justice
Ἕως δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν εἶχον τὸν νοῦν οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ 39
while but on him had the mind the enemies and
περιεσκόπουν πρὸς ὃ μέρος ῥέψει, ἵνα πρὸς τὸ
were-looking-around toward what part he-will-incline that to the(-part)
πονοῦν καὶ αὐτοὶ συνασπίσωσι, κοῦρσον κατὰ τῆς
suffering also themselves they-may-close-shields raid against the
λεγομένης Ζαπέτρας ἀπέστειλεν ἐπιλέκτων πολεμιστῶν, οἳ
so-called Zapetra he-sent of-chosen warriors who
σπουδῇ τὰ στενὰ τῆς ὁδοῦ διελθόντες αὐτῇ τῇ πόλει
with-zeal the narrows of-the road having-passed-through on-very the city
προσπίπτουσι, καὶ ταύτην ἐξ ἐφόδου λαμβάνουσι, καὶ
fall and it by assault take and
πολλοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ κατασφάττουσιν, αἰχμαλωσίαν τε πολλὴν
many in it slaughter captives both many

καὶ λείαν λαμβάνουσι, καὶ δεσμίους χρονίους ἐξάγουσι
and booty take and prisoners long-held lead-out
τῆς φρουρᾶς. εἶτα τὰς ἐφεξῆς πυρπολήσαντες χώρας
from-the prison then the next having-burned lands
καὶ τὸ Σαμόσατον ἐκπορθήσαντες, καὶ τῇ αὐτῇ ῥύμῃ
and — Samosata having-sacked and in-the same rush
τὸν Εὐφράτην περάσαντες κατὰ πολλὴν ἐρημίαν τῶν
the Euphrates having-crossed in much absence of-the(-ones)
κωλυσόντων διὰ τὸ παραστρατοπεδεύειν τοὺς πολεμίους
going-to-hinder because-of the to-encamp-beside the enemies
τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ πολλὴν λαβόντες αἰχμαλωσίαν καὶ
beside-the emperor and many having-taken captives and
λάφυρα, ὑπέστρεψαν πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ἔτι πρὸς τῷ
spoils returned to the emperor still at the
Ζαρνοὺχ ποταμῷ, ἔνθα τὸ Κεραμίσιον ἐστί, διατρίβοντα
Zarnouch river where — Keramision is spending-time
καὶ ἀργεῖν μὲν δοκοῦντα, τὰ δὲ τοιαῦτα πανσόφως διὰ
and to-be-idle indeed seeming the but such-things all-wisely through
τῶν ὑπὸ χεῖρα καταπραττόμενον.
the(-men) under hand accomplishing
40 Ἐντεῦθεν ἄρας ὁ βασιλεὺς μετὰ παντὸς στρατοῦ τὴν
from-there having-set-out the emperor with all army the
ὡς ἐπὶ Μελιτηνὴν ἀπάγουσαν διῄει ὁδόν. πρὸς δὲ ταῖς
as to Melitene leading went-through road to but the
ὄχθαις τοῦ Εὐφράτου γενόμενος, ὡς εἶδεν αὐτὸν ὥρᾳ
banks of-the Euphrates having-come when he-saw it in-season
θέρους πλημμυροῦντα καὶ πελαγίζοντα, τὸ δὲ προσκαθῆσθαι
of-summer flooding and becoming-a-sea the but to-sit-down-before
τῇ διαβάσει καὶ ταπεινὸν προσμένειν γενέσθαι τὸν ποταμὸν
the crossing and low to-wait-for to-become the river
ἀγεννὲς ἐνόμισε καὶ ἀνάξιον τῆς περὶ αὐτὸν δυνάμεως,
ignoble he-thought and unworthy of-the about him power

γεφύρᾳ τοῦτον ἔγνω διαλαβεῖν, καὶ πάντα πρὸς τὸ ἔργον
with-bridge it he-resolved to-span and all-things for the work
σπουδῇ ηὐτρεπίζετο. θέλων δὲ τὸν κόπον παραμυθεῖσθαι
with-zeal were-made-ready wishing but the weariness to-console
τῶν οἰκείων στρατιωτῶν καὶ τοὺς πόνους ῥᾳδίως
of-the own soldiers and the toils easily
ὑποφέρειν πεῖσαι, ἅμα δὲ καὶ ἑαυτὸν ἐν τοῖς ἑκουσίοις
to-bear to-persuade at-once but also himself in the voluntary
ἀποτρύχειν πόνοις, ἵνα εἰ καὶ ἀκούσιος πολλάκις συμβῇ,
to-wear-out toils that if also involuntary often may-happen
μὴ ξενοπαθῇ μηδὲ ἀήθης εὑρίσκοιτο, συνεφήπτετο
not he-may-suffer-strangely nor unaccustomed may-be-found took-part-in
τοῦ ἔργου τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ μάλα προθύμως, καὶ τὰ
the work with-the soldiers and very eagerly and the
μείζονα βάρη τοῖς οἰκείοις αἴρων ὤμοις πρὸς τὴν γέφυραν
greater burdens on-the own lifting shoulders to the bridge
διεκόμιζεν. εἶδεν ἄν τις τότε ἰσομέγεθες βάρος οὗπερ
carried would-have-seen — anyone then equal-in-size burden to-what
ὁ βασιλεὺς ῥᾳδίως ἐβάσταζε, τρεῖς τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὁμοῦ
the emperor easily carried three of-the soldiers together
μόλις διακομίζοντας. οὕτω δὲ τὸν Εὐφράτην περαιωθεὶς
scarcely carrying so but the Euphrates having-crossed
τὸ φρούριον εὐθὺς ὃ Ῥαψάκιον λέγεται ἐξεπόρθησεν.
the fort straightway which Rhapsakion is-called he-sacked
ἰδίᾳ δὲ τοὺς Χάλδους καὶ Κολωνιάτας τὴν μεταξὺ
separately but the Chaldoi and Koloneians the between
χώραν Εὐφράτου καὶ Ἀρσίνου κελεύσας καταδραμεῖν, λείας
land of-Euphrates and Arsinos having-ordered to-overrun of-booty
πολλῆς καὶ ἀνδραπόδων δι᾽ αὐτῶν ἐκυρίευσεν καὶ τὰ
much and captives through them became-master and the
φρούρια τό τε Κουρτικίου καὶ τὸ Χαχὸν καὶ τὸ Ἄμερ
forts the(-fort) both of-Kourtikios and — Chachon and — Amer

καὶ τὸ Μουρνὶξ καλούμενον καὶ τὸ Ἄβδελα ἐξεπόρθησεν.
and — Mournix called and — Abdela sacked
αὐτὸς δὲ τῇ Μελιτηνῇ προσβαλών, εὐανδρούσῃ τότε καὶ
he but — Melitene having-attacked well-manned then and
πλῆθος ἐχούσῃ βαρβάρων συχνόν, οἳ πρὸ τῆς πόλεως
multitude having of-barbarians great who before the city
μετὰ βαρβαρικῶν ἀλαλαγμῶν καὶ φρυαγμάτων ἀπήντων
with barbarian war-cries and snortings met
αὐτῷ, τὴν οἰκείαν ἀρετὴν ἐπεδείξατο, ὡς μὴ μόνον
him the own valor showed so-that not only
τοὺς ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους περιφανῶς
the(-men) under him but also the enemies conspicuously
ἐκπλαγῆναι τὴν ἀνδρίαν αὐτοῦ καὶ εὐχέρειαν. ἐμφρόνως
to-be-astonished-at the courage his and dexterity sensibly
γὰρ ἅμα καὶ νεανικῶς προσμίξας τοῖς πολεμίοις, καὶ
for at-once and youthfully having-engaged the enemies and
κατὰ χεῖρα γενναῖος φανεὶς καὶ τόλμῃ διαφέρων, καὶ
at hand noble having-appeared and in-daring excelling and
παρὰ δεινὰ ὁρώμενος εὐθαρσής τε καὶ ἀκατάπληκτος,
amid dangers seen bold both and undaunted
πρῶτος τοὺς ἀντιτεταγμένους ἐτρέψατο φόνῳ πολλῷ·
first the(-men) drawn-up-against routed with-slaughter much
εἶθ᾽ οὕτως οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ τοὺς κατ᾽ αὐτοὺς ἕκαστοι
then so the(-men) with him the(-men) against them each
καὶ μέχρι τοῦ ἄστεος ἀναιροῦντες ἐδίωκον, ὡς πολλοῖς
also as-far-as the town killing pursued so-that with-many
νεκροῖς τὸ πρὸ τῆς πόλεως πεδίον καταστρωθῆναι καὶ τὸ
corpses the before the city plain to-be-strewn and the
πρὸ τοῦ τείχους ὕδωρ αἵματι κερασθῆναι, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ
before the wall water with-blood to-be-mixed many but also
ζῶντας ἁλῶναι, καὶ ἄλλους τῷ δέει ἑκόντας αὐτομολῆσαι,
alive to-be-taken and others by-the fear willing to-desert

τοὺς δὲ περιλιπεῖς εἰς τὸ ἄστυ συγκλεισθῆναι καὶ τοῦ
the but remaining into the town to-be-shut-up and for-the
λοιποῦ ἐξόδου παντάπασιν εἴργεσθαι.
future going-out altogether to-be-barred
ἔνθα διενοεῖτο μὲν ὁ βασιλεὺς μηχανάς τε πήγνυσθαι
there intended indeed the emperor engines both to-be-fixed
καὶ ἅπαν ὄργανον πολιορκητικὸν μεταπέμπεσθαι καὶ ἔργα
and every engine siege to-send-for and deeds
τόλμης καὶ γενναιότητος περὶ τὴν τειχομαχίαν ἐνδείξασθαι·
of-daring and nobility in the wall-fighting to-display
ὡς δὲ ἑώρα τὴν πόλιν τειχῶν τε περιβολῇ καρτερὰν
when but he-saw the city of-walls both by-circuit strong
καὶ πλήθει τῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους ἀμυνομένων
and by-multitude of-the(-men) from the wall defending
δυσάλωτον, ἐπύθετο δὲ παρὰ τῶν αὐτομόλων καὶ
hard-to-take learned but from the deserters also
ἐπιτηδείων ἔχειν ἀφθονίαν πολλὴν καὶ μὴ δεδιέναι χρονίαν
of-necessities to-have abundance much and not to-fear long
πολιορκίαν, ἄρας ἐντεῦθεν τῇ Μανιχαίων προσέβαλε
siege having-set-out from-there the of-Manichaeans attacked
γῇ. δενδροτομήσας δὲ ταύτην καὶ τὰς οἰκίας πυρὶ
land having-cut-down-the-trees but it and the houses to-fire
δοὺς καὶ πᾶν διαφθείρων τὸ ἐν ποσί, τὸ Ἀργαοὺθ
having-given and every destroying the(-thing) at feet the Argaouth
λεγόμενον αὐτῶν φρούριον καὶ τὸ Κουτακίου καὶ
called their fort and the(-fort) of-Koutakios and
Στεφάνου καὶ Ῥαχὰτ ἐμπρήσας κατέσκαψεν. εἶτα τὸν
of-Stephen and Rhachat having-burned razed then the
ὑπὸ χεῖρα πάντα λαὸν πλουσίως φιλοφρονησάμενος, καὶ
under hand all people richly having-entertained and
τῶν ἀριστευσάντων ἕκαστον ἀριστείοις τιμήσας, μετὰ
of-the(-men) having-been-bravest each with-prizes having-honored with

πολλῶν λαφύρων καὶ νικητικῶν στεφάνων ὑπέστρεψε πρὸς
many spoils and victorious crowns returned to
τὴν βασιλεύουσαν· καὶ διὰ τῶν Χρυσῶν πυλῶν εἰσελθὼν
the reigning-city and through the Golden gates having-entered
ὡς οἱ πάλαι κατὰ τὴν μεγαλόδοξον Ῥώμην τῶν
as the(-ones) of-old in the most-glorious Rome of-the
αὐτοκρατόρων τοὺς θριάμβους κατάγοντες, καὶ τὰς παρὰ
emperors the triumphs leading and the from
τοῦ δήμου νικητικὰς ἐκβοήσεις καὶ εὐφημίας δεξάμενος,
the people victorious acclamations and praises having-received
καὶ πρὸς τὸ μέγα τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ σοφίας ἀνάκτορον, ὡς
and to the great of-the — of-god wisdom shrine so-as
τὰς εὐχὰς καὶ τὴν προσήκουσαν εὐχαριστίαν ἀποδώσων,
the prayers and the fitting thanksgiving going-to-pay
εὐθὺς ὡς εἶχεν ἐξ ὁδοῦ παραγεγονώς, καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ τότε
straightway as he-was from road having-arrived and by the then
πατριαρχοῦντος τῷ τῆς νίκης στεφάνῳ ταινιωθείς,
being-patriarch with-the of-the victory crown having-been-bound
ἀπεκατέστη εἰς τὰ βασίλεια.
was-restored to the palace

41 Καὶ πάλιν αὐτὸν φροντίδες πολιτικαὶ διεδέχοντο, καὶ ταῖς
and again him cares civic succeeded and to-the
ἀπὸ διαφόρων ἐθνῶν πρεσβείαις τὰ πρόσφορα ἐχρημάτιζε·
from various nations embassies the suitable-things he-answered
καὶ πρὸς ὀλίγον τοῖς τέκνοις συνευφρανθεὶς καὶ τῇ
and for little with-the children having-rejoiced and with-the
γυναικί, καὶ τοὺς κατὰ τὸ ἄστυ περιελθὼν ἱεροὺς
wife and the throughout the town having-gone-round holy
καὶ θείους ναοὺς καὶ τὰς εὐχὰς ἀποδούς, συνήθως ἦν
and divine churches and the prayers having-paid as-usual he-was
αὖθις ἐπὶ τῶν πολιτικῶν διοικήσεων καὶ τῶν κρίσεων,
again at the civic administrations and the judgments

τὴν περὶ τὸ ὑπήκοον κηδεμονίαν καὶ ἄγρυπνον πρόνοιαν
the about the subjects care and sleepless forethought
ἐνδεικνύμενος. οὐ διελίμπανε δὲ ὅμως καθ' ἑκάστην εἰς
showing not ceased but nevertheless by each(-day) into
τὸν ἱερὸν καὶ θεῖον ναὸν εἰσιὼν καὶ ἱκετεύων τὸν κύριον,
the holy and divine church entering and beseeching the lord
καὶ μεσίτας πρὸς τοῦτο τόν τε ἀρχιστράτηγον Μιχαὴλ
and mediators for this the both archangel Michael
καὶ Ἠλιοὺ τὸν προφήτην πρὸς θεὸν προβαλλόμενος, τοῦ
and Elijah the prophet with god putting-forward for-the
μὴ πρότερον τοῦ βίου ὑπεξελθεῖν πρὶν ἢ τὸν τοῦ
not sooner from-the life to-depart before than the —
Χρυσόχειρος ὄλεθρον ἐπιδεῖν καὶ τρία βέλη τῇ αὐτοῦ
of-Chrysocheir destruction to-see and three arrows in-the his
καταπῆξαι μιαρᾷ κεφαλῇ. ὃ καὶ γέγονεν ὕστερον. τῷ
to-fix polluted head which also happened later in-the
γὰρ ἐπιόντι χρόνῳ εἰς τὰς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐμβαλόντος
for following time into the of-the Romans having-invaded
χώρας τοῦ προμνημονευθέντος Χρυσόχειρος καὶ ταύτας
lands of-the aforementioned Chrysocheir and them
ληϊζομένου, ἀποστέλλει κατ' αὐτοῦ συνήθως ὁ βασιλεὺς
plundering sends against him as-usual the emperor
τὸν τῶν σχολῶν ἐξηγούμενον. ὃς ἐξελθὼν καὶ
the(-man) of-the scholae leading who having-gone-out and
πάντα τὸν Ῥωμαϊκὸν στρατὸν συμπαραλαβών, ἐπεὶ κατὰ
all the Roman army having-taken-along since to
πρόσωπον ἐμφανῶς ἀντιστῆναι πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀπεδειλία,
face openly to-withstand against him he-was-afraid
τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατεύματα συμπαρείπετο τέως
the of-the Romans armies followed-along meanwhile
αὐτῷ ἀπό τινος διαστήματος, καὶ τὰς μερικὰς ἀνεῖργε
him from some distance and the partial checked

καταδρομάς, καὶ οὐ συνεχώρει κατὰ τῆς χώρας ἀδεῶς
raids and not allowed over the land fearlessly
διασκίδνασθαι. ὡς οὖν τὰ μὲν δρῶν τὰ δὲ
to-be-scattered when then the(-things) indeed doing the(-things) but
ἀπρακτῶν ὁ βάρβαρος, ἤδη καὶ τοῦ καιροῦ καλοῦντος
failing-in the barbarian already also the time calling
αὐτόν, τῆς πρὸς τὰ οἰκεῖα ἐπανόδου ἐμνήσθη καὶ μετὰ
him of-the to the own return remembered and with
λείας συχνῆς πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν ὑπέστρεφεν, ἀφώρισε
booty much to the own land was-returning separated
δύο τῶν στρατηγῶν ὁ τῶν σχολῶν ἐξηγούμενος,
two of-the generals the(-man) of-the scholae leading
τόν τε τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ καὶ τῶν Ἀρμενίων, μετὰ
the(-general) both of-the Charsianon and of-the Armeniacs with
τῆς περὶ αὐτοὺς δυνάμεως ἕκαστον, ὥστε συμπαρομαρτεῖν
the about them power each so-as to-accompany
καὶ ἐφέπεσθαι τῷ Χρυσόχειρι ἄχρι τοῦ Βαθυρρύακος,
and to-follow — Chrysocheir as-far-as the Bathyrrhyax
κἀκεῖθεν εἰ μὲν ἐπαφήσει κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ὁρίων
and-from-there if indeed he-will-let-loose against the Roman borders
στρατόν, δῆλον τοῦτο τῷ δομεστίκῳ ποιήσασθαι, εἰ δὲ
army clear this to-the domestic to-make if but
πρὸς τὸν οἰκεῖον φωλεὸν ἀμεταστρεπτὶ βαδίζων εἰσδύνειεν,
to the own den without-turning walking he-should-enter
ἐάσαντας τοῦτον αὖθις ἐπανελθεῖν πρὸς αὐτόν.
having-let-be him again to-return to him
42 ἤδη οὖν τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατεύματος γεγονότος ἐν
already then the barbarian army having-been at
ἑσπέρας καιρῷ κατὰ τὸν καλούμενον Βαθυρρύακα καὶ
evening time at the so-called Bathyrrhyax and
αὐλισμένου κάτω πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ὄρους ὑπώρειαν, τῶν
encamped below toward the of-the mountain foothill of-the

δὲ Ῥωμαϊκῶν στρατηγῶν καταλαβόντων τὰ τούτου
but Roman generals having-seized the of-it
μετεωρότερα καὶ τὸ μέλλον ἀποσκοπούντων, ἐμπίπτει
higher-parts and the future watching falls-upon
τις ἔρις περὶ τῶν πρωτείων καὶ ἅμιλλα τοῖς τῶν δύο
some strife about the first-place and rivalry the of-the two
θεμάτων στρατιώταις καὶ ταξιάρχαις καὶ λοχαγωγοῖς,
themes soldiers and taxiarchs and captains
τῶν μὲν τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ ἑαυτοῖς ἐπιγραφόντων τὸ
the(-men) indeed of-the Charsianon to-themselves ascribing the
πρεσβεῖον τῆς κατ᾽ ἀλκὴν ἀρετῆς, ἔμπαλιν δὲ τῶν
primacy of-the in strength valor conversely but the
Ἀρμενιακῶν μὴ μεθιεμένων τῆς ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις ἀνδρίας
Armeniacs not yielding of-the in the wars courage
τὸ πρωτεῖον ἐκείνους λαβεῖν. ὡς οὖν ἐπὶ πλέον τὰ
the primacy those to-take when then for more the
τῆς φιλονεικίας αὐτοῖς ἐχώρει καὶ τὰ φρονήματα
of-the rivalry for-them went and the spirits
διηρέθιστο, λεχθῆναί φασι παρὰ τῶν πρωτευόντων τοῦ
were-provoked to-be-said they-say by the leading-men of-the
τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν συστήματος ὡς ἵνα τί μάτην ἐν λόγοις
of-the Armeniacs body that for what vainly in words
ἕκαστοι θρασυνόμεθα καὶ αὐχοῦμεν διακενῆς, ἐξὸν
each we-are-bold and we-boast emptily it-being-possible
τοῖς ἔργοις τὴν ἀμφισβήτητον ἀρετὴν ἐπιδείξασθαι; τῶν
by-the deeds the disputed valor to-show of-the
γὰρ πολεμίων οὐ μακρὰν ἀπεχόντων, ἔξεστιν ἐπὶ τῶν
for enemies not far being-distant it-is-possible in the
ἔργων φανῆναι τοὺς ἀριστεῖς καὶ ἐκ τῆς κατὰ χεῖρα
deeds to-appear the bravest and from the at hand
γενναιότητος κριθῆναι τοὺς ὑπερέχοντας. τοὺς τοιούτους
nobility to-be-judged the(-ones) excelling the such

τοίνυν λόγους διακηκοότες οἱ στρατηγοί, καὶ τὴν πρὸς
therefore words having-heard the generals and the toward
ἀνδρίαν ὁρμὴν καὶ προθυμίαν κατανοήσαντες τοῦ λαοῦ,
courage impulse and eagerness having-perceived of-the people
συννοήσαντες δὲ καὶ τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ τόπου βοήθειαν,
having-considered but also the from the place help
ὅτι ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων τοῖς ἐν ἐπιπέδῳ κατηυλισμένοις
that from above the(-men) on plain encamped
μέλλουσιν ἐπιτίθεσθαι, διχῇ διαιροῦσι τὴν δύναμιν· καὶ
they-are-going to-attack in-two divide the force and
τὸ μὲν ἔκκριτον αὐτῆς ἄχρις ἕκτης ἑκατοντάδος μετὰ
the indeed picked of-it as-far-as sixth hundred with
τῶν γε τῶν στρατηγῶν προσβαλεῖν ἐκρίθη τῷ
the(-men) indeed of-the generals to-attack it-was-decided the
τῶν βαρβάρων στρατῷ, τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν τῆς εὐαριθμήτου
of-the barbarians army the but rest of-the easily-counted
Ῥωμαϊκῆς στρατιᾶς ἐς δόκησιν πλήθους αὐτοῦ που
Roman army for appearance of-multitude there somewhere
πρὸς τὰ μετέωρα συσκευάσαντες, καὶ σύνθημα δόντες
on the heights having-gathered and signal having-given
καιροῦ, ἵν' ὅταν οὗτοι προσβάλωσι τοῖς ἐχθροῖς, κἀκεῖνοι
of-time that when these attack the enemies also-those
σὺν ἀλαλαγμῷ μεγίστῳ καὶ σάλπιγξι, συνεπηχούντων καὶ
with war-cry greatest and with-trumpets echoing-together also
τῶν ὀρέων αὐτῶν, ἐκπληκτικὴν βοὴν ἀναρρήξωσιν, αὐτοὶ
the mountains themselves astounding shout may-burst-forth they
τὰς πανοπλίας ἐνδύονται, καὶ ἀφανῶς διὰ νυκτὸς τῇ
the panoplies put-on and unseen through night the
στρατοπεδείᾳ τῶν δυσμενῶν πλησιάζουσι. πρὸ τῆς ἕω
camp of-the hostile approach before the dawn
δέ, οὔπω τοῦ ἡλίου τὸ ὑπὸ γῆν τελείως παραλλάξαντος
but not-yet of-the sun the under earth fully having-passed

ἡμισφαίριον, βοῇ στιβαρᾷ παιανίσαντες καὶ τὸ
hemisphere with-shout stout having-raised-the-paean and the
"σταυρὸς νενίκηκε" συμβοήσαντες ἐπιτίθενται τοῖς ἐχθροῖς,
cross has-conquered having-shouted-together attack the enemies
συνεπαλαλαξάντων ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν.
having-raised-the-cry-together from the mountain also the rest
εὐθὺς οὖν τῷ ἀνελπίστῳ καταπλαγέντες οἱ βάρβαροι,
straightway then by-the unexpected stunned the barbarians
καὶ μήτε συστῆναι μήτε τὸ ἐπιὸν πλῆθος ὅσον ἐστὶ
and neither to-stand-together nor the oncoming multitude how-great it-is
λαβόντες καιρὸν κατιδεῖν, μήτ' ἄλλο τι σωτήριον
having-taken time to-see nor other anything saving
ἑαυτοῖς ἐκ τοῦ παραχρῆμα ἰσχύσαντες συνιδεῖν, ὥρμησαν
for-themselves from the instant having-been-able to-perceive rushed
πρὸς φυγήν, τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως τούτους πάντως ἐπιμόνου
to flight the of-the emperor them surely persistent
ἐκδειματούσης εὐχῆς καὶ συνελαυνούσης πρὸς ὄλεθρον. τῶν
frightening prayer and driving to destruction of-the
οὖν διωκόντων Ῥωμαίων καὶ τοὺς μὴ συνόντας συνεχῶς
then pursuing Romans and the not being-with continually
ἐπιβοωμένων στρατηγοὺς καὶ τὰ τάγματα καὶ τὸν τῶν
calling-on generals and the regiments and the(-man) of-the
σχολῶν ἀφηγούμενον, καθάπερ αὐτοῖς συντέτακτο, καὶ τῶν
scholae leading as for-them had-been-arranged and of-the
φευγόντων εἰς πλείονα φόβον συνελαυνομένων καὶ ταραχήν,
fleeing into more fear being-driven and confusion
συνέβη μέχρι μιλίων τριάκοντα γενέσθαι τὴν δίωξιν καὶ
it-happened as-far-as miles thirty to-be the pursuit and
τὸν μεταξὺ χῶρον ἀπείροις καταστρωθῆναι νεκροῖς.
the between space with-countless to-be-strewn corpses

Pouladès, once Chrysocheir's captive, spears him in the flight; the head is sent to Basil, who shoots three arrows into it. On Ignatius's death Basil installs Photius, whom he had already made tutor to his sons. Kourkouas's conspiracy is punished mercifully. Loulon is recovered and Melouos submits. Taking Constantine with him, Basil marches into Syria, burns the country around Germanikeia, and besieges Adata, whose people trust a prophecy that a Constantine will take it; Basil withdraws before winter. Abdelomel submits, the Kourtoi are slaughtered, and Basil returns to be crowned in victory.

43 ὅτε καὶ τὸν ἀναιδῆ καὶ θρασὺν ἐκεῖνον Χρυσόχειρα λέγεται,
when also the shameless and bold that Chrysocheir it-is-said
σὺν ὀλίγοις φεύγοντα τῶν περὶ αὐτόν, ἐπικαταδιώκειν
with few fleeing of-the(-men) about him to-pursue
Ῥωμαίων τινά, τὸ Πουλάδην παρωνύμιον φέροντα, ὃν
of-Romans one the Pouladès nickname bearing whom
συνέβη ποτὲ κατὰ Τεφρικὴν γεγονότα αἰχμάλωτον διὰ
it-happened once at Tephrike having-become captive because-of
τὸ ἀστεϊσμοῦ μετέχειν καὶ χάριτος συνήθη καὶ γνώριμον
the in-wit to-share and grace familiar and known
χρηματίσαι Χρυσόχειρι. ὃν ἰδὼν ὁ βάρβαρος τότε μετ'
to-become to-Chrysocheir whom having-seen the barbarian then with
ἐνθουσιασμοῦ καὶ προθυμίας διώκοντα, ἐπιστραφεὶς "τί
frenzy and eagerness pursuing having-turned what
σοί" φησι "κακόν, ὦ ἄθλιε, διεπραξάμην, Πουλάδη, ὅτι με
to-you he-says evil O wretch did-I Pouladès that me
οὕτω καταδιώκεις μανιωδῶς, ἐπιθυμῶν ἀνελεῖν με;" ὁ
so you-pursue madly desiring to-kill me the(-one)
δὲ συντόμως ἀντέφησεν ὅτι τῶν εὐεργεσιῶν σου, πάτρων,
but briefly answered that of-the benefactions your patron
τὴν ἀμοιβὴν ἀποδοῦναί σοι κατὰ τὴν παροῦσαν ἡμέραν
the return to-pay to-you on the present day

πεποιθώς εἰμι ἐν θεῷ, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο καταδιώκω ὀπίσω
confident I-am in god and because-of this I-pursue after
σου. ὡς οὖν ὁ μὲν προῄει οἷα βεβλαμμένος τὰς
you when then the(-one) indeed went-on as damaged the
φρένας ὑπὸ θεοῦ, ἀπεγνωσμένος τε καὶ δειλός, ὁ δὲ
wits by god despairing both and cowardly the(-other) but
ἐφείπετο μετ᾽ εὐτολμίας καὶ θάρσους νεανικοῦ, ἐντυγχάνει
followed with boldness and daring youthful meets
τάφρῳ βαθείᾳ ὁ διωκόμενος, ἣν ὑπερπηδῆσαι ὁ
ditch deep the(-one) pursued which to-leap-over the
ἵππος ἐπεδειλία τε καὶ διώκλαζεν. καὶ ἕως περὶ ταύτην
horse feared both and buckled and while about it
ὁ Χρυσόχειρ εἶχε τὸν νοῦν, βάλλει τοῦτον ὁ Πουλάδης
— Chrysocheir had the mind strikes him — Pouladès
κοντῷ κατὰ τῆς πλευρᾶς, καὶ εὐθέως περιδινηθεὶς
with-lance in the side and straightway having-whirled-round
τῷ ἀλγήματι κατερρύη τοῦ ἵππου. καὶ τῶν σὺν
with-the pain slid-down from-the horse and of-the(-men) with
αὐτῷ τις, ᾧ Διακονίτζης ἦν τὸ ἐπώνυμον, ἀπὸ τοῦ
him one whose Diakonitzès was the surname from the
οἰκείου ἵππου ῥίψας ἑαυτὸν ἐπιμελείας ἠξίου τὸν
own horse having-thrown himself of-care deemed-worthy the
πεσόντα δεσπότην, καὶ τοῖς οἰκείοις γόνασι τὴν ἐκείνου
fallen master and on-the own knees the his
κεφαλὴν ἐπιθεὶς τὸ συμβὰν ἀπωδύρετο. ἐν τοσούτῳ δὲ
head having-placed the happening lamented in so-much but
προσγίνονται τῷ Πουλάδῃ καὶ ἕτεροι, καὶ καθαλλόμενοι
come-up — to-Pouladès also others and leaping-down
τῶν ἵππων τὴν τοῦ Χρυσόχειρος ἀποτέμνουσι κεφαλὴν
from-the horses the — of-Chrysocheir cut-off head
λειποψυχοῦντος ἤδη καὶ ἐκλιμπάνοντος, συγκαταλέγουσι
fainting already and failing they-enroll

δὲ καὶ τὸν Διακονίτζην ἐκεῖνον τῷ τῶν λοιπῶν δεσμίων
but also — Diakonitzès that in-the of-the other prisoners
ἀριθμῷ. οὕτω δὲ παραδόξως καταπολεμηθέντων τῶν
number so but marvelously having-been-defeated the
δυσμενῶν καὶ τοῦ Χριστιανικοῦ ὑψωθέντος καυχήματος,
hostile and the Christian having-been-exalted boast
συντόμως μετὰ τῶν τῆς χαρᾶς ἀγγέλων προσαποστέλλεται
quickly with the of-the joy messengers is-sent-on
βασιλεῖ ἡ τοῦ Χρυσόχειρος κεφαλή. ἐτύγχανε δὲ
to-the-emperor the — of-Chrysocheir head be-happened but
τηνικαῦτα διάγων κατὰ τὸ Πετρίον λεγόμενον, ἔνθα
at-that-time staying at the Petrion called where
τὸ σεμνεῖον τῆς τῶν οἰκείων θυγατέρων διατριβῆς
the convent of-the of-the own daughters residence
ἐχρημάτιζεν. καὶ τῆς κεφαλῆς προσενεχθείσης τῶν οἰκείων
served and the head having-been-brought the own
ἀναμνησθεὶς προσευχῶν, καὶ πρὸς τὸν ποιοῦντα τὸ
having-remembered prayers and to the(-one) doing the
θέλημα τῶν ἐπικαλουμένων αὐτὸν μετὰ δακρύων τὸν
will of-the(-ones) calling-upon him with tears the
τῆς διανοίας ἐκτείνας ὀφθαλμόν, τόξον ἐνεχθῆναι καὶ
of-the mind having-stretched eye bow to-be-brought and
βέλη προσέταξε, καὶ θᾶττον τὴν νευρὰν ἐντείνας τρία
arrows he-ordered and quickly the string having-drawn three
κατὰ τῆς παλαμναίας κεφαλῆς ὀπισθοφανῶς ἀφῆκε βέλη,
at the guilty head backward let-fly arrows
καὶ εἰς οὐδὲ ἓν ὅλως διήμαρτεν, ἐναγιασμόν τινα τοῦτον
and in not-even one at-all missed offering some this
ἄξιον τοῦ δυσσεβοῦς προσαγαγεῖν αὐτῷ οἰηθεὶς ἀντὶ
worthy of-the impious to-bring to-him having-thought instead-of
τῶν πολλῶν μυριάδων, ἃς ἐν πολλοῖς τῆς ἐπικρατείας
the many myriads which in many of-the dominion

αὐτοῦ κατηνάλωσεν ἔτεσι. καὶ τὰ μὲν κατὰ τὸν
his he-had-destroyed years and the(-things) indeed concerning —
Χρυσόχειρα καὶ τὴν ἀνθοῦσαν τότε δύναμιν τῆς Τεφρικῆς
Chrysocheir and the flourishing then power — of-Tephrike
τοιοῦτον τὸ τέλος ἐδέξατο συνεργείᾳ θεοῦ, ταῖς πολλαῖς
such the end received with-cooperation of-god by-the many
ἱκεσίαις καμφθέντος Βασιλείου τοῦ εὐσεβῶς βασιλεύοντος.
supplications having-been-bent of-Basil the(-one) piously reigning
Ἄρτι δὲ τοῦ ἀοιδίμου πατριάρχου Ἰγνατίου ὁσίως καὶ 44
just-now but the celebrated patriarch Ignatius holily and
θεαρέστως τὸν βίον ἀνύσαντος, καὶ ὑπὸ πλουσίᾳ τῇ πολιᾷ
god-pleasingly the life having-completed and under rich the gray-hair
καὶ τῇ κύκλῳ δορυφορίᾳ τῶν ἀρετῶν καὶ τῷ παρὰ πάντων
and the around bodyguard of-the virtues and the from all
μακαρισμῷ τὴν παροῦσαν ἀλλαξαμένου ζωὴν καὶ διαβάντος
blessing the present having-exchanged life and having-crossed
πρὸς τὴν ἀμείνονα, ἀπέδωκεν αὖθις τὴν ἐκκλησίαν καλῶς
to the better gave-back again the church well
τῷ μὴ καλῶς ἀντιποιεῖσθαι τὸ πρότερον δόξαντι, καὶ
to-the(-one) not well to-claim the before having-seemed and
κατέστησεν ἐννόμως τότε καὶ κανονικῶς τὸν σοφώτατον
installed lawfully then and canonically the most-wise
Φώτιον ἐπὶ τὴν σχολάζουσαν καθέδραν τῆς βασιλίδος τῶν
Photius on the vacant see of-the queen of-the
πόλεων. οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ πρὸ τούτου διέλειπε φιλοφρονούμενος
cities not indeed even before this he-ceased treating-kindly
αὐτὸν καὶ τιμῶν διὰ τὴν ἐν αὐτῷ παντοδαπῆ σοφίαν τε
him and honoring because-of the in him manifold wisdom both
καὶ ἀρετήν, ἀλλὰ κἂν εἰ τῆς καθέδρας μετέστησεν, οὐδὲν
and virtue but even if from-the see he-had-removed nothing
τοῦ δικαίου θέλων ἄγειν ἐπίπροσθεν, ὅμως τῶν εἰς
of-the just wishing to-put before nevertheless of-the(-things) for

παραμυθίαν οὐδὲν ἐνέλειπε παρεχόμενος. ὅθεν κἂν τοῖς
consolation nothing he-left-out providing whence even in-the
βασιλείοις διατριβὴν αὐτῷ δοὺς τῶν οἰκείων παίδων
palace residence to-him having-given of-the own children
ἀπέδειξε παιδευτὴν καὶ διδάσκαλον. οὕτως οὐδένα, καθ'
he-appointed tutor and teacher so no-one by
ὅσον οἷός τε ἦν, περιεώρα λυπούμενον, ἀλλὰ πᾶσιν
as-much-as able — he-was he-overlooked being-grieved but to-all
εὐμενῶς τε καὶ προσηνῶς προσεφέρετο καὶ τὸν δυνατὸν
kindly both and gently behaved and the possible
τρόπον οὐκ ἠμέλει παραμυθούμενος.
way not neglected consoling
45 Ἀλλὰ καίπερ οὕτω πατρικῶς τε καὶ κηδεμονικῶς
but although so paternally both and solicitously
πρὸς τοὺς ὑπὸ χεῖρα διατιθέμενος, εἶχεν ὅμως τοὺς
toward the(-men) under hand disposed had nevertheless the(-men)
μισοῦντας, μᾶλλον δὲ φθονοῦντας καὶ ἐπιβουλεύοντας αὐτοῦ
hating rather but envying and plotting-against his
τῇ ζωῇ. ὁ γὰρ οὕτω λεγόμενος Κουρκούας ὑπὸ πλούτου
the life the for so called Kourkouas by wealth
καὶ τρυφῆς ἐξυβρίσας, ὡς ἔοικε, τυραννίδος ἐρᾷ, καὶ
and luxury having-become-insolent as it-seems tyranny loves and
ὁμοφρόνων πληθὺν συνωμότας λαβὼν καιρὸν ἐζήτει τῆς
of-like-minded multitude conspirators having-taken occasion sought of-the
ἐπιθέσεως. ὡς δὲ πρὸ τούτου τὰ τῆς συσκευῆς ἐξ ἑνὸς
attack when but before this the(-things) of-the plot from one
τῶν συνωμοτῶν ἐμηνύθη τῷ βασιλεῖ, παραδίδονται τοῖς
of-the conspirators were-revealed to-the emperor are-handed-over to-the
νόμοις οἱ πονηροί. ἀλλὰ πάλιν ἡ τοῦ γενναίου βασιλέως
laws the wicked but again the of-the noble emperor
φιλανθρωπία τὴν τῶν νόμων αὐστηρίαν παρέθραυεν καὶ τὰς
humanity the of-the laws severity broke and the

ποινὰς ἐμετρίαζε· διὸ τοῦ προεξάρχοντος ἐκκοπέντος
penalties moderated wherefore the ringleader having-been-gouged
τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, οἱ λοιποὶ διὰ τῶν εἰς τὸ σῶμα
the eyes the rest through the on the body
πληγῶν καὶ τῆς ἀφαιρέσεως τῶν τριχῶν φιλανθρώπως
blows and the removal of-the hairs humanely
ἐσωφρονίζοντο. καὶ οὗτοι μὲν οὕτως πατρικῶς μᾶλλον
were-chastened and these indeed so paternally rather
ἢ δεσποτικῶς πρὸς τὸ καθεστηκὸς ἐπανήγοντο.
than despotically to the established were-brought-back
Αὐτὸν δὲ οὐκ εἴα καθεύδειν ἡ ὑπὲρ τῶν ὅλων φροντὶς 46
him but not allowed to-sleep the for the whole care
καὶ τὰ ἔτι περιλιπῆ τρόπαια. ἀλλὰ πρῶτον μὲν τὸ
and the still remaining trophies but first indeed the
πλεῖστα τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἐπικράτειαν ὠφελοῦν ὀχυρώτατον
most the Roman dominion benefiting strongest
κάστρον, τὸ Λοῦλον λεγόμενον, τῇ φθασάσῃ περιττῇ
fortress — Loulon called by-the former excessive
ῥᾳθυμίᾳ καὶ τῇ τῶν λυσιτελῶν ὀλιγωρίᾳ αὔτανδρον
indolence and by-the of-the profitable-things neglect with-its-men
παρὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ληφθὲν καὶ διὰ τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ
by the Hagarenes taken and because-of the from the
τόπου ἀσφάλειαν ὀχυρωθὲν καὶ κρατούμενον, τῇ οἰκείᾳ
place safety fortified and held by-the own
συνέσει καὶ ἐπιμελείᾳ ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ τῷ ἀφθόνῳ τῶν
intelligence and care the emperor and by-the abundance of-the
δωρεῶν, πειθῶ καὶ βίαν προσαγαγών, τῆς βαρβαρικῆς
gifts persuasion and force having-applied from-the barbarian
ἐπικρατείας μετέστησε καὶ πρὸς τὴν προτέραν ἐξουσίαν
dominion removed and to the former authority
τῶν Ῥωμαίων μετήγαγεν· ἀφ' οὗ καὶ τὸ Μελοῦος κάστρον
of-the Romans transferred from when also the of-Melouos fortress

πρὸς αὐτὸν ἑκουσίως μετέθετο καὶ δεσπότην ἑαυτοῦ τὸν
to him willingly went-over and master of-itself the
αὐτοκράτορα ἀνηγόρευσεν. τὴν δὲ τῶν Μανιχαίων πόλιν
emperor proclaimed the but of-the Manichaeans city
τὴν Καταβάταλα καλουμένην κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκεῖνον διὰ
— Katabatala called at the time that through
τῶν οἰκείων στρατηγῶν ἐξεπόρθησεν. ἀλλ᾽ οὐ τοσοῦτον
the own generals he-sacked but not so-much
αὐτὸν ἡ δι᾽ ἑτέρων πρόθεσις εὔφραινεν, ὅσον ἠνία τὸ
him the through others purpose gladdened as-much-as grieved the
μὴ τοῖς αὐτοῦ πόνοις καὶ κινδύνοις τὰ τρόπαια ἵστασθαι.
not by-the his toils and dangers the trophies to-be-set-up
διὰ τοῦτο αὖθις καὶ Κωνσταντῖνον τὸν πρῶτον τῶν
because-of this again also Constantine the first of-the
υἱῶν προσλαβόμενος, ὡς ἂν αὐτὸν οἷα γενναῖον σκύλακα
sons having-taken-along so-that — him as noble puppy
πολεμίων γεύσῃ φόνου καὶ αὐτὸς αὐτῷ διδάσκαλος
of-enemies he-may-give-a-taste of-slaughter and he-himself to-him teacher
τῶν τακτικῶν καὶ τοῦ πρὸς τοὺς κινδύνους εὐθαρσοῦς
of-the tactics and of-the toward the dangers bold
παραστήματος γένηται, σὺν αὐτῷ κατὰ Συρίας ἐξώρμησε,
presence-of-mind may-become with him against Syria set-out
καὶ τὴν πρὸς τῷ Ἀργέᾳ Καισάρειαν τὴν πρώτην τῶν
and the at the Argaeus Caesarea the first of-the
Καππαδόκων πόλιν καταλαβών, καὶ τακτικῶς τὸν ὑπ᾽
Cappadocians city having-reached and tactically the under
αὐτὸν ἐξοπλίσας λαὸν λογάδων, ἐκ τούτων μοῖραν
him having-armed people of-picked-men from these portion
ἀπέτεμε καὶ ὡς προδιερευνητὰς καὶ προδιόπτας ἔμπροσθεν
he-cut-off and as scouts and lookouts in-front
ἐξαπέστειλε, καὶ κατόπιν αὐτὸς μετὰ τῆς βαρείας δυνάμεως
sent-out and behind he-himself with the heavy force

εἵπετο, ἵνα ἐνεργοῦ μαχαίρας ἡγῆται τὸ ἀκμαιότατον, τὸ
followed that of-active sword may-lead the most-vigorous the
δὲ ἔτι στιβαρώτερον ἀπελαύνηται. οἳ τὰς ἐρήμους ὀξέως
but still sturdier may-be-driven-on who the deserts swiftly
διαδραμόντες τὰ φρούρια, τό τε Ψιλοκάστελλον καὶ τὸ
having-run-through the forts — both Psilokastellon and —
Παραμοκάστελλον, ἐξεπόρθησαν, καὶ τοὺς ἐν αὐτοῖς
Paramokastellon sacked and the(-men) in them
καταληφθέντας ἠνδραποδίσαντο. καταπλαγέντες δὲ τῷ δέει
caught enslaved having-been-stunned but by-the fear
τῆς ἐπιούσης δυνάμεως οἱ τὸ τοῦ Φαλακροῦ λεγόμενον
of-the oncoming force the(-men) the of-the Phalakros called
κάστρον οἰκοῦντες ἑκουσίως τῷ βασιλεῖ προσεχώρησαν. ὁ
fortress inhabiting willingly to-the emperor went-over the
δὲ τοῦ Ἄμβρου υἱὸς Ἀπάβδελε Ἀναζάρβης ἀμέρας, ἕως μὲν
but — of-Ambros son Apabdele of-Anazarbos emir while indeed
μακρὰν ἀπεῖχεν ὁ βασιλεύς, βαρβαρικῶς ἐθρασύνετο, τότε
far was-distant the emperor barbarously was-bold then
δὲ μετὰ τοῦ τῶν Μελιτηνῶν στίφους φυγῇ τὴν σωτηρίαν
but with the of-the Melitenians band by-flight the safety
ἐπορίζετο, μόνην ἀσφάλειαν ἡγούμενος ἱκανὴν τὸ λαθεῖν
procured only safety thinking sufficient the to-escape-notice
ὅποι γῆς καταδέδυκεν. τῇ δὲ τῆς τοιαύτης ἐφόδου φθορᾷ
where of-earth he-has-sunk by-the but of-the such attack destruction
καὶ τῆς Καϊσοῦ ἤτοι τῆς Κατασάμας καὶ τῆς Ῥοβὰμ ἤτοι
also — of-Kaisos that-is — of-Katasama and — of-Robam that-is
τῆς Ἐνδελεχόνης ἡ πόρθησις γέγονεν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ ἡ
— of-Endelechone the sacking happened at-once but also the
τῆς Ἀνδάλου καὶ ἡ τῆς οὕτω λεγομένης Ἐρημοσυκαίας,
— of-Andalos and the of-the so called Eremosykaia
ὅτε καὶ Σήμας ἐκεῖνος ὁ τοῦ Ταήλ, τὰς δυσχωρίας
when also Semas that the(-son) — of-Tael the rough-places

κατέχων τοῦ Ταύρου καὶ ἐξ ἐφόδου τὰς τῶν Ῥωμαίων
holding of-the Taurus and by assault the of-the Romans
λυμαινόμενος ἐσχατιάς, πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα κατέφυγεν.
ravaging borders to the emperor fled

47 Εἰ δὲ συντόμως καὶ ψιλῶς τὰ οὕτω μεγάλα οἱονεὶ κατ'
if but briefly and barely the(-things) so great as-it-were in
ἐπιδρομὴν ἀπαγγέλλομεν, μηδεὶς θαυμαζέτω, ἀλλὰ μηδὲ
passing we-report let-no-one wonder but nor
ἐγκαλείτω. ἅμα γὰρ τὴν ταχύτητα τῶν πράξεων ἐκείνων
let-him-accuse at-once for the speed of-the deeds those
μιμεῖσθαι ἡ διήγησις ἔοικεν, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὕτως ἐστὶν
to-imitate the narrative seems and because-of this so it-is
ἁπλῆ τε καὶ ἐπιτρέχουσα· θᾶττον γὰρ ἡρέθη τότε
simple both and running-over more-quickly for were-taken then
ἐκεῖνα καὶ τῶν πράξεων ἔλαβε τὴν συντέλειαν ἢ νῦν
those-things and of-the deeds received the completion than now
ἀπήγγελται. ἄλλως τε καὶ ἐπεὶ ὁ χρόνος ἤδη ῥεύσας
has-been-reported especially — also since the time already having-flowed
διὰ μέσου πολὺς τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα τῶν ἔργων διὰ
through middle much the(-details) in each of-the deeds through
τῆς μεταξὺ σιγῆς οἷον ἠμαύρωσε, καὶ οὔτε παρατάξεων
the intervening silence as-it-were dimmed and neither of-battle-lines
τρόπους οὔτε προσβολῶν ἐφόδους οὔτε φαλάγγων ἐκτάσεις
ways nor of-attacks onsets nor of-phalanxes extensions
καὶ συστολὰς οὔτε στρατηγημάτων ἐπικαίρους χρήσεις
and contractions nor of-stratagems timely uses
εἰδέναι καὶ ἀπαγγέλλειν ἔχομεν, οὐκ ἔστι περὶ τὰ
to-know and to-report we-are-able not it-is-possible about the(-things)
κατὰ μέρος ἐγχρονίζειν καὶ οἷον ἐμφιλοχωρεῖν, ἐξ ὧν
in part to-linger and as-it-were to-dwell-fondly from which
πλατύνεται τὸ διήγημα. τὰ δὲ ἀμάρτυρον ἔχοντα τὴν
is-widened the narrative the(-things) but unwitnessed having the

πίστιν, εἰ καὶ λέγεται πολλάκις, ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἀβασανίστως
credibility if even it-is-said often but we without-testing
προσδέχεσθαι οὐ βουλόμεθα διὰ τὸ μὴ δόξαι πεπλασμένην
to-accept not wish because-of the not to-seem fabricated
μὴ γεγονότων πραγμάτων διήγησιν ἀνατιθέναι τῷ
not of-having-happened things narrative to-dedicate to-the
βασιλεῖ, μάλιστα ὅτι οὐδὲ ἐκεῖνος ἔτι ζῶν τὰ πρὸς χάριν
emperor especially since not-even that-one still living the for favor
θωπευτικῶς ὑποτρέχοντα ῥήματα ἐφαίνετο προσιέμενος. οἱ
flatteringly creeping-in words appeared admitting we
δὲ μηδὲ τὰ παρὰ πάντων ὁμολογούμενα δυνάμενοι
but not-even the(-things) by all agreed being-able
ἢ σχολάζοντες παραδοῦναι γραφῇ σχολῇ γε ἂν περὶ τὰ
or having-leisure to-hand-down to-writing hardly indeed — about the
ἀμφίβολα τὸν λόγον ἀπομηκύνοιμεν. ἀλλ' ἀνακρουέσθω καὶ
doubtful-things the discourse we-would-lengthen but let-it-be-checked and
καθ' ὁδὸν τῆς ἐξ ἀρχῆς διηγήσεως ὁ λόγος ἀνατρεχέτω.
on road of-the from beginning narrative the discourse let-run-back
Μετὰ ταῦτα τοίνυν τὸν Ὀνοπνίκτην λεγόμενον ποταμὸν 48
after these-things therefore the Onopniktes called river
καὶ τὸν Σαρὸν διαπεράσας ὁ βασιλεὺς μετὰ τοῦ
and the Saros having-crossed the emperor with the
στρατεύματος ἦλθε πρὸς Κουκουσόν, καὶ τὰς ἐκεῖσε
army came to Koukousos and the there
λόχμας ἐμπρήσας καὶ τὴν ἄβατον τῇ τῶν δένδρων
thickets having-burned and the pathless by-the of-the trees
ἐκτομῇ βατὴν πεποιηκὼς τῶν ἐν ταύταις λόχων ἐκράτησε.
cutting passable having-made of-the in them ambushes became-master
πρὸς δὲ τὴν Καλλίπολιν καὶ Παδασίαν φθάσας, εἶτα
to but — Kallipolis and Padasia having-arrived then
διὰ δυσβάτων ὁδεύων ὁδῶν, τοῦ ἵππου ἀποβὰς
through hard-to-pass traveling roads from-the horse having-dismounted

πεζὸς διεξῄει τὰ στενὰ τῆς ὁδοῦ, διὰ τοῦ οἰκείου κόπου
on-foot went-through the narrows of-the road through the own toil
τὸ ἀσθενὲς τῶν ὑπὸ χεῖρα παραμυθούμενος. τηνικαῦτα
the weakness of-the(-men) under hand consoling at-that-time
δὲ τῇ Γερμανικείᾳ προσβαλών, ἐπεὶ τὸ ἀνθιστάμενον ἅπαν
but — Germanikeia having-attacked since the opposing all
ἐκ ποδὸς ἐχώρει καὶ τοῖς τείχεσι συνεκλείετο καὶ οὐδεὶς
from foot retreated and in-the walls was-shut-up and no-one
τῶν πολεμίων ἐτόλμα εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν, τὰ περὶ αὐτὴν
of-the enemies dared to hands to-come the(-things) about it
πάντα πυρὶ παραδοὺς καὶ τὰ πρὸ τῆς πόλεως κάλλη
all to-fire having-given and the before the city beauties
ὡς πεδίον δείξας ἀφανισμοῦ πρὸς Ἄδατα παρεγένετο.
as plain having-shown of-destruction to Adata arrived
τῶν δὲ τῆς τοιαύτης πόλεως μὴ τολμώντων ἐν
of-the(-men) but of-the such city not daring in
τοῖς ὑπαίθροις διαγωνίζεσθαι, ἀλλ᾽ ἐντὸς τῶν τειχῶν
the open-places to-fight but inside the walls
συνελαθέντων καὶ διεγνωκότων τὴν πολιορκίαν ὑφίστασθαι,
driven-together and having-decided the siege to-undergo
αὐτὸς τὰ πρὸ τῆς πόλεως καταληϊσάμενος, καὶ τὸ
he the(-things) before the city having-plundered and the
παρακείμενον πολίχνιον, ὅπερ ἐκάλουν Γέροντα, ἐκπορθήσας
adjacent small-town which they-called Geron having-sacked
καὶ διαρπαγῆναι ἐφείς, καὶ προθυμοτέρους ἀπὸ τῶν
and to-be-plundered having-let and more-eager from the
ὠφελειῶν πρὸς τὸ πονεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας πεποιηκώς,
gains for the to-toil the soldiers having-made
αὐτοῖς προσβάλλει τοῖς τείχεσι, καὶ ταῖς πρὸς πολιορκίαν
very attacks the walls and the for siege
ἐκέχρητο μηχαναῖς, καὶ ἐπ᾽ ἐλπίδος ἦν οὐ μικρᾶς διὰ τὸ
used engines and in hope was not small because-of the

βάρος τῆς περὶ αὐτὸν δυνάμεως κατὰ κράτος τὴν πόλιν
weight of-the about him power by force the city
ἑλεῖν. ὁρῶν δὲ τοὺς ἔνδον ἀδεῶς τὰ προσπίπτοντα
to-take seeing but the(-men) inside fearlessly the(-things) befalling
φέρεσθαι, καὶ οὐ ταραττομένους ἐπὶ προδήλῳ σχεδὸν
bearing and not troubled at evident almost
ὀλέθρῳ τῆς πατρίδος αὐτῶν, ἐφ' ὅτῳ πεποιθότες ὀλίγου
destruction of-the fatherland their on what relying little
αὐτοῦ λόγον τῷ δοκεῖν ποιούμενοι φαίνονται ἐπυνθάνετο.
of-him account in-the to-seem making they-appear he-inquired
καὶ δὴ παρ' ἑνὸς ἀκούσας τῶν ἐγχωρίων ὡς ὑπό
and indeed from one having-heard of-the natives that by
τινος τῶν παρ' αὐτοῖς εὐλαβῶν, εἴτε ἀπό τινος θειοτέρας
some of-the among them devout either from some more-divine
γνώσεως εἴτε ἀπὸ ἐπιστημονικῆς μεθόδου γινώσκοντος,
knowledge or from scientific method knowing
πληροφορίαν δεδεγμένοι τυγχάνουσιν οὐχ ὑπὸ σοῦ τοῦ
assurance having-received they-happen not by you the(-one)
νῦν πολιορκοῦντος αὐτούς, ἀλλ' ὑφ' ἑτέρου τινὸς τῶν
now besieging them but by other some of-the(-men)
κατὰ γένος σοι προσηκόντων, Κωνσταντίνου καλουμένου,
by race to-you belonging Constantine called
πεπρωμένον εἶναι τὴν τοιαύτην ἁλῶναι πόλιν· καὶ διὰ
destined to-be the such to-be-taken city and because-of
τοῦτο τοῖς προσπίπτουσι μὴ ἐκπλήττεσθαι. τοῦ
this at-the(-things) befalling not to-be-astonished of-the(-man)
δὲ τὸν υἱὸν ἐπιδείξαντος καὶ ὡς οὕτω καλεῖται διδάξαντος,
but the son having-shown and that so he-is-called having-informed
καὶ μηδὲ τὸ παρ' αὐτοῖς εἰπόντος διαπίπτειν πάντως
and not-even the among them having-said to-fail wholly
πυθόχρηστον ἐν τῷ νῦν τὴν πόλιν ἁλίσκεσθαι, οὐ τοσοῦτον
oracle in the now the city to-be-taken not so-much

ὁ ἐξηγούμενος ἔλεγε τὸν Κωνσταντῖνον ἐκεῖνον εἶναι ὃς
the interpreter said — Constantine that to-be who
αὐτῶν μέλλει τὴν πόλιν ποιεῖσθαι ἀνάστατον, ἄλλον δέ
their is-going the city to-make devastated other but
τινα μετὰ χρόνον συχνὸν τῶν ἀπογόνων τῶν σῶν.
some after time long of-the descendants the yours
ἐφ᾽ οἷς ἐκεῖνος οἷον διοργισθείς, καὶ βουληθεὶς
at which-things he as-it-were having-been-angered and having-wished
ἐξελέγξαι δι᾽ ἔργου λόγον ἄλλως κενὸν τὸ
to-refute through deed word in-vain empty the(-thing)
λαλούμενον, συντονώτερον τῆς πολιορκίας ἀνθήψατο
spoken more-intensely the siege took-hold-of
καὶ ἐνεργέστερον ἐχρήσατο ταῖς παρασκευαῖς. ὡς δὲ
and more-vigorously used the preparations when but
πάντα πονοῦντος αὐτοῦ ἑώρα μὴ προβαίνουσαν τὴν
all-things toiling he he-saw not advancing the
σπουδήν, μηδὲ ἐπί τινος ἀσφαλοῦς ἐλπίδος ἑδρασθῆναι
zeal nor on some secure hope to-be-settled
ἠδύνατο, ἐνενόει δὲ καὶ τὴν ἐν ὑπαίθρῳ τοῦ πλήθους
he-could he-considered but also the in open of-the multitude
ἐν τόποις κρυμώδεσι κάκωσιν, τοῦ τοὺς πολεμίους ἑλεῖν
in places frosty distress than-the the enemies to-take
κρεῖττον τὸ τοὺς οἰκείους περισώσασθαι λογισάμενος πρὸ
better the the own to-save having-reckoned before
χειμῶνος ἀναχωρῆσαι λυσιτελὲς ἐδοκίμασεν. καὶ οὕτω
winter to-withdraw profitable he-judged and so
μὲν ταῦτα, ἡμῖν δὲ θαυμάζειν ἐπέρχεται τοῖς μετὰ
indeed these-things to-us but to-wonder comes the(-ones) after
τοσοῦτον χρόνον τῆς προρρήσεως ἐκείνης ἰδοῦσι τὴν
so-much time of-the prediction that having-seen the
ἔκβασιν, τίς ἡ ἐν τοῖς βαρβάροις ἐκείνοις καὶ οὐδὲ
outcome what the among the barbarians those and not-even

πάντῃ τὰ περὶ τὸν βίον ἢ τὸ σέβας χρηστοῖς
wholly in-the(-things) about the life or the worship good
ἀκριβὴς οὕτω γνῶσις καὶ τῆς ἀληθείας κατάληψις.
exact so knowledge and of-the truth grasp
καὶ γὰρ ἐκείνου μὴ δυνηθέντος τότε τὴν πόλιν ἑλεῖν,
and for that-one not having-been-able then the city to-take
νῦν ἐπὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων χρόνων Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ τῆς
now in the our times Constantine the of-the
πορφύρας βλαστός, ὁ Λέοντος μὲν τοῦ σοφωτάτου υἱὸς
purple shoot the of-Leo indeed the most-wise son
ἐκείνου δὲ υἱωνός, τὸ τοιοῦτον προτέρημα ἀπηνέγκατο
of-that-one but grandson the such advantage carried-off
καὶ ἐπεγράφη τῷ κατορθώματι τῆς παντελοῦς ἀπωλείας
and was-inscribed in-the achievement of-the complete destruction
τῶν οἰκούντων τὴν Ἄδατα, ὡς ἦν ἄρα, καθ᾽
of-the(-men) inhabiting — Adata as it-was then after
Ὅμηρον, ἀγαθὸν καὶ παῖδα καταφθιμένοιο λιπέσθαι, ἵνα
Homer good also son of-one-who-has-perished to-be-left that
τιμωρὸς ὁ παῖς τῶν εἰς τὸ παππῷον κράτος
avenger the son of-the(-ones) against the grandfather's power
ἀποθρασυνθῆναι τολμησάντων περιφανῶς διασώζηται. ἀλλ᾽
to-be-insolent having-dared conspicuously may-be-preserved but
εἰς ἴχνος αὖθις ὁ λόγος παλινδρομείτω καὶ δηλούτω
into track again the discourse let-run-back and let-it-show
τὰ ἐφεξῆς.
the(-things) next
Τότε τοίνυν ὁ βασιλεὺς πολλῆς αἰχμαλωσίας καὶ λαφύρων 49
then therefore the emperor with-much captives and spoils
ἐμπλήσας τὸ στράτευμα, εἶτα τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους διὰ
having-filled the army then the captives because-of
τὸ δύσβατον καὶ πολὺ τῆς ὁδοῦ τῷ ξίφει κελεύσας
the difficulty and length of-the road by-the sword having-ordered

ἀποφορτίσασθαι, ἐπανόδου ἐμνήσθη, πολὺ δέος αὐτοῦ τοῖς
to-unload of-return remembered much fear of-him to-the
τῆς Ἄγαρ ἐκγόνοις ἀπολιπών. προσδοκήσας δὲ ὅμως
— of-Hagar descendants having-left having-expected but nevertheless
ἐπίθεσίν τινα κατὰ τοὺς στενοὺς τῶν τόπων (ᾔδει γὰρ
attack some at the narrow of-the places he-knew for
κακὴν εἶναι φωνὴν στρατηγοῦ τὸ οὐκ ἂν προσεδόκησα)
bad to-be utterance of-general the not — I-would-have-expected
καὶ λόχους ἐν τοῖς ἐπικαίροις ὑφεὶς πολλοὺς τῶν
and ambushes in the strategic-points having-set many of-the(-men)
ἄλλους ἑλεῖν οἰομένων ἐζώγρησεν. ἅπερ ὁ Ἀβδελομὲλ
others to-take thinking he-took-alive which-things — Abdelomel
ἐκεῖνος ἰδών, ὃς τῶν ἐκεῖσε τόπων ἐκυρίευε, πρέσβεις
that having-seen who of-the there places was-master envoys
πέμψας ἀδείας καὶ εἰρήνης ἐδεῖτο τυχεῖν, εὐγνώμονα
having-sent of-immunity and peace begged to-obtain grateful
δοῦλον ἑαυτὸν γενέσθαι καθυπισχνούμενος καὶ τῶν ὑπ᾽
slave himself to-become promising and of-the by
αὐτοῦ κρατουμένων φρουρίων καὶ τόπων ποιούμενος τὴν
him held forts and places making the
ὑπόστασιν καὶ ἐγχείρισιν. οὗ τὴν δέησιν ὁ βασιλεὺς
submission and handing-over whose the petition the emperor
δεξάμενος τὰ αἰτούμενα δέδωκε, καὶ σύμμαχον αὐτὸν
having-received the(-things) asked gave and ally him
τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε κατὰ τῶν ὁμοφύλων εἶχεν ἐθελοντήν.
the(-time) from now against the fellow-tribesmen had volunteer
ἐκεῖθεν δὲ πάλιν τὸ τοῦ Ἀργέου διελθὼν ὄρος καὶ
from-there but again the of-the Argaeus having-crossed mountain and
πρὸς Καισάρειαν γενόμενος ἔκ τε Κολωνείας καὶ
at Caesarea having-come from both Koloneia and
Λούλου ἐπινικίων ἀγγελίας ἐδέξατο. ἠκολούθει δὲ καὶ
Loulon of-victories news received followed but also

τὰ σύμβολα, λαφύρων καὶ αἰχμαλώτων πλῆθος, ἅπερ
the tokens of-spoils and of-captives multitude which-things
ἀπό τε φρουρίων τῆς Ταρσοῦ καὶ ἀπὸ Μανιχαϊκῶν
from both forts — of-Tarsus and from Manichaean
ἐτύγχανε πόλεων. ἔνθα καὶ πλεῖστον ὄχλον τῶν Κούρτων
were cities there also very-great crowd of-the Kourtoi
προσενεχθέντα ἀποσφαγῆναι προσέταξεν· εἰς οὐδὲν γὰρ
brought to-be-slaughtered he-ordered for nothing for
σχεδὸν ἐτύγχανον χρήσιμοι, καὶ προκαταπεπλησμένον
almost they-were useful and already-filled
ὕπαρχον τὸ στράτευμα οὐκ ἐβούλετο καὶ τούτους
being the army not wished also these
ἔχειν δύσχρηστον παρενόχλημα. ἐν Μηδαίῳ δὲ γεγονὼς
to-have troublesome encumbrance in Medaion but having-come
ὑποστρέφων ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ τιμὰς διανείμας τοῖς
returning the emperor and honors having-distributed to-the(-men)
ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν καὶ ἀναλόγως τῆς οἰκείας ἕκαστον ἀρετῆς
under him and in-proportion to-the own each valor
προβιβάσας καὶ φιλοφρονησάμενος, καὶ πρὸς παραχειμασίαν
having-promoted and having-entertained and for wintering
ἀφεὶς εἶχετο τῆς ὁδοῦ· καὶ τὴν βασιλεύουσαν φθάσας
having-dismissed kept to-the road and the reigning-city having-reached
κατὰ τὸ πρότερον ἔθος διὰ τοῦ πατριάρχου τὸν
according-to the former custom through the patriarch the
τῆς νίκης ἐδέξατο στέφανον καὶ παρὰ τοῦ δήμου τὰς
of-the victory received crown and from the people the
ἐπινικίους φωνάς.
victorious acclamations

Andrew the Scythian, now domestic, lays the emir of Tarsus's blasphemous letter before the Virgin's icon and routs him at Podandos, but envious peers say he let Tarsus slip, and Basil removes him. Kestas Styppiotes, promising Tarsus, is surprised by night and destroyed. In the West, African Saracens besiege Ragusa; at its appeal Basil sends Nicetas Ooryphas's fleet, and the besiegers withdraw to Italy and seize Bari. The Croats, Serbs, and others return to baptism and Roman rule under their own princes. Bari is retaken with Louis of Francia, who holds Soldanos at Capua, where the emir laughs at a wagon's wheel as fortune's image.

50 Ἤδη δὲ τοῖς οἰχομένοις χρόνοις ἀπανθησάσης καὶ
already but in-the past times having-faded and
παντάπασιν ἀπεσβηκυίας τῆς Τεφρικῆς, ἡ τῶν
altogether having-been-extinguished — Tephrike the of-the
Ταρσιτῶν ἰσχὺς ἀναθάλλειν καὶ αὐξάνεσθαι ἤρχετο, καὶ
Tarsians strength to-flourish-again and to-grow began and
πάλιν ὑπὸ τούτων αἱ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ὁρίων ἐσχατιαὶ
again by them the of-the Roman borders frontiers
συνεχῶς ἐπιέζοντο. τὸ τηνικαῦτα Ἀνδρέας ἐκεῖνος ὁ
continually were-pressed — at-that-time Andrew that the(-man)
ἐκ Σκυθῶν πολλάκις ἠνδρίσατο κατ' αὐτῶν, καὶ τῆς περὶ
from Scythians often acted-bravely against them and of-the about
αὐτὸν ἀναλόγως δυνάμεως πολλοὺς τῶν εἰς προνομὴν
him in-proportion power many of-the(-men) for foraging
ἐκτρεχόντων καὶ τοῦ ὅλου ἀπορρηγνυμένους στρατεύματος
running-out and from-the whole breaking-off army
ἀνῄρει καὶ αἰχμαλώτους ἐλάμβανε. καὶ ὡς ἱκανὰ τεκμήρια
killed and captives took and as sufficient proofs
ἀνδρίας τε καὶ συνέσεως καθ' ἑκάστην ἐξέφερεν, εἰς τὸ
of-courage both and of-intelligence by each(-day) he-brought-forth to the
τῶν πατρικίων προῆλθεν ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀξίωμα καὶ εἰς
of-the patricians he-advanced by the emperor dignity and to

τὴν τῶν σχολῶν ἀρχήν. καὶ τότε δὴ μᾶλλον ἀπὸ μείζονος
the of-the scholae command and then indeed more from greater
ἐξουσίας τε καὶ δυνάμεως πολλάκις ἐμφανέσι μάχαις
authority both and power often in-open battles
πρός τε τοὺς ἀπὸ Μελιτηνῆς καὶ τοὺς ἀπὸ Ταρσοῦ
against both the(-men) from Melitene and the(-men) from Tarsus
παρετάξατο καὶ νενίκηκε. γράψαντος δέ ποτε πρὸς αὐτὸν
drew-up and conquered having-written but once to him
τοῦ ἀμηρεύοντος τῆς Ταρσοῦ λόγους βλασφημίας καὶ
the(-man) being-emir — of-Tarsus words of-blasphemy and
ἀπονοίας μεστοὺς κατὰ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ
madness full against the lord our Jesus Christ
καὶ θεοῦ καὶ τῆς ὑπεραγίας αὐτοῦ μητρός, ὅτι ἴδω
and god and the most-holy his mother that let-me-see
τί σοι ὁ τῆς Μαρίας ὠφελήσει υἱὸς καὶ αὕτη ἡ
what you the — of-Mary will-help son and she the(-one)
τοῦτον γεννήσασα ἐν τῷ μετὰ δυνάμεως ἁδρᾶς ἀπιέναι με
him having-borne in the with power stout to-go-away me
κατὰ σοῦ, λαβὼν ἐκεῖνος τὸ λοίδορον γραμματεῖον μετὰ
against you having-taken he the abusive letter with
δακρύων πολλῶν τῇ εἰκόνι τῆς θεομήτορος, ἠγκαλισμένον
tears many to-the icon of-the mother-of-god embraced
φερούσης καὶ τὸν υἱόν, προσανέθετο, ἐπειπὼν "ἴδε, ὦ
carrying also the son dedicated having-added see O
μῆτερ τοῦ λόγου τε καὶ θεοῦ, καὶ σὺ ὁ προαιώνιος
mother of-the word both and god and you the(-one) before-the-ages
ἐκ πατρὸς καὶ ὑπὸ χρόνον ἐκ τῆς μητρός, οἷα
from father and under time from the mother what-things
ὠνείδισε καὶ ἐφρυάξατο κατὰ τοῦ σοῦ περιουσίου λαοῦ
reproached and snorted against the your peculiar people
ὁ βάρβαρος οὗτος καὶ ἀλαζὼν ὁ νέος Σεναχηρίμ, καὶ
the barbarian this and boaster the new Sennacherib and

γενοῦ βοηθὸς καὶ ὑπερασπιστὴς τῶν δούλων σου, καὶ
become helper and defender of-the slaves your and
γνώτω πάντα τὰ ἔθνη τὸ κράτος τῆς δυναστείας σου."
let-know all the nations the might of-the dominion your
ταῦτα πρὸς θεὸν μετὰ συντριβῆς καρδίας καὶ δακρύων
these-things to god with contrition of-heart and tears
πολλῶν προσευξάμενος καὶ εἰπών, ἄρας τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς
many having-prayed and having-said having-raised the Roman
δυνάμεις ἀπῆει κατὰ Ταρσοῦ. καὶ δὴ κατὰ τὸν τόπον
forces went-off against Tarsus and indeed at the place
γενόμενος ὃς λέγεται Ποδανδός, ἔνθα καὶ ὁ ὁμώνυμος
having-come which is-called Podandos where also the same-named
ῥεῖ ποταμός, τὸ βαρβαρικὸν εὗρεν ἀντιπαρατεταγμένον
flows river the barbarian found drawn-up-opposite
στράτευμα. προσβαλὼν δὲ μετὰ τῆς εἰς θεὸν πεποιθήσεως
army having-attacked but with the in god confidence
ὁ γενναῖος οὗτος μετὰ τῆς περὶ αὐτὸν ἁπάσης δυνάμεως,
the noble this-one with the about him all power
ἣν τοῖς παρακλητικοῖς τῶν λόγων πρότερον πρὸς τὸν
which by-the exhortatory of-the words before for the
ἀγῶνα ἐπέρρωσε, καὶ πολλὰ καὶ συνέσεως καὶ ἀνδρίας
contest he-had-strengthened and many both of-intelligence and of-courage
ἔργα ἐπιδειξάμενος, καὶ τῶν ὑπ' αὐτὸν δὲ ὑποστρατήγων
deeds having-displayed and of-the under him too subordinate-generals
ταξιαρχῶν τε καὶ λοχαγῶν καὶ σύμπαντος τοῦ πλήθους
taxiarchs both and captains and all the multitude
ἀνδρικῶς ἀγωνισαμένων, τρέπεται φόνῳ πολλῷ τὸ
manfully having-fought routs with-slaughter much the
τῶν βαρβάρων πλῆθος, πρότερον αὐτοῦ πεσόντος τοῦ
of-the barbarians multitude first there having-fallen the
ἀμηρᾶ καὶ τῆς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀνθούσης πάσης δυνάμεως.
emir and of-the about him flourishing all power

ὀλίγοι δέ τινες τῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ χάρακος καὶ τῶν ἐν
few but some of-the(-men) at the palisade and of-the(-men) in
ἐσχάτοις που τεταγμένων, διαφυγόντες μόλις τὸν κίνδυνον,
last-places somewhere posted having-escaped scarcely the danger
πρὸς Ταρσὸν ἀποσώζονται. θάψας οὖν τοὺς οἰκείους,
to Tarsus get-safe-away having-buried then the own
τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους εἰς ἕνα χῶρον συναγαγὼν καὶ μέγαν ἀπὸ
the but enemies into one place having-gathered and great from
τούτων ποιησάμενος κολωνόν, ὡς ἀντὶ στήλης εἴη
them having-made mound so-that instead-of monument it-might-be
καὶ τοῖς μετέπειτα, εἰς τὰ οἰκεῖα ὑπέστρεψε μετὰ λείας
also for-the(-men) afterward to the own he-returned with booty
καὶ λαφύρων καὶ αἰχμαλώτων πολλῶν, σωφρόνως περὶ
and spoils and captives many soberly about
τὴν νίκην διατεθεὶς καὶ μόνου θεοῦ τὸ ἔργον ποιούμενος
the victory disposed and of-only god the work making
καὶ ἐκείνῳ ἐπιγράφων τὴν στρατηγίαν καὶ τὸ μέγα τοῦτο
and to-him ascribing the generalship and the great this
ἐκνίκημα. διὸ καὶ δείσας μὴ ἀπληστίᾳ νίκης καὶ τῇ
victory wherefore also having-feared lest by-insatiability of-victory and by-the
ἐφέσει τοῦ πλείονος καὶ τὰ προϋπηργμένα, οἷα συμβαίνει
desire of-the more also the(-things) achieved-before as happens
πολλάκις, τὸ τῆς Νεμέσεως λυμήνηται φθονερόν, ἀπέσχετο
often the — of-Nemesis may-spoil envious he-refrained
τοῦ πρόσω χωρεῖν. δῆλα δὲ τὰ καταπραχθέντα
from-the forward to-go clear but the(-things) accomplished
τῷ αὐτοκράτορι ποιησάμενος ἐκωλύθη διὰ τὸν τῶν
to-the emperor having-made he-was-prevented because-of the of-the
ὁμοτίμων φθόνον ἄξια τῶν ἔργων τὰ βραβεῖα λαβεῖν, οἳ
equals envy worthy of-the deeds the prizes to-receive who
συνεχῶς διεθρύλουν προκαταλαμβάνοντες τὰς βασιλικὰς
continually spread-about seizing-first the imperial

ἀκοὰς καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα διαβάλλοντες ὡς ἐθελοκακήσαντα καὶ
ears and the man slandering as having-been-willfully-remiss and
ἀποστερήσαντα Ῥωμαίους τὴν ἅλωσιν τῆς Ταρσοῦ· "ὅτε"
having-deprived Romans of-the capture — of-Tarsus when
γάρ φασιν "εἰς χεῖρας ἡμῶν ταύτην δέδωκεν ὁ θεός, εἰ
for they-say into hands our it has-given — god if
ἐπεξῆλθε τῇ νίκῃ, τεθαρρηκότος τοῦ πλήθους οἷς
he-had-followed-up the victory having-taken-courage the multitude at-what-things
κατειργάσαντο, ἀπωλέσαμεν ταύτην τῇ ῥᾳθυμίᾳ τοῦ
they-accomplished we-lost it by-the indolence of-the
στρατηγοῦ." ὑφ' ὧν πολλάκις λεγομένων ὁ βασιλεὺς
general by which-things often said the emperor
παραπείθεται (ἀπατῶνται γὰρ πολλάκις καὶ φρόνιμοι
is-persuaded are-deceived for often also prudent-men
λεγομένων αὐτοῖς τῶν καθ' ἡδονήν) καὶ παραλύει τῆς
being-said to-them the(-things) for pleasure and removes from-the
ἀρχῆς τὸν Ἀνδρέαν ὡς μὴ τελείως ἐπεξελθόντα τοῖς κατὰ
command — Andrew as not fully having-followed-up the against
τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἀριστεύμασιν, καὶ ἀντ' ἐκείνου προβάλλεται
the enemies exploits and instead-of him puts-forward
εἰς τὸ τῶν ταγμάτων ἐξηγεῖσθαι καὶ παντὸς τοῦ στρατοῦ
for the the regiments to-lead and all the army
ἐκεῖνον τὸν Κεστὰ τὸν Στυππιώτην λεγόμενον, τήν τε
that — Kestas the Styppiotes called — both
Ταρσὸν ἐξελεῖν ὑπισχνούμενον καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ καὶ
Tarsus to-take promising and other-things many and
γενναῖα ἀφρόνως οἰόμενον καταπράξεσθαι.
noble senselessly thinking to-accomplish

51 ὃς αὐτίκα πάσας τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς δυνάμεις λαβὼν καὶ
who at-once all the Roman forces having-taken and
ἐξορμήσας κατὰ Ταρσοῦ ἔδειξε τὸν Ἀνδρέαν οὐκ ἐθελόκακον
having-set-out against Tarsus showed — Andrew not willfully-remiss

καὶ δειλὸν ἀλλὰ περιεσκεμμένον καὶ φρόνιμον καὶ ἄριστον
and cowardly but circumspect and prudent and best
στρατηγόν. ἡγησάμενος γὰρ τοὺς βαρβάρους ἑτοίμην
general having-thought for the barbarians ready
λείαν καὶ οὐδὲν τῶν δεόντων προδιασκεψάμενος, οὐδὲ
booty and nothing of-the necessary-things having-considered-beforehand nor
προλοχίσας, οὐδὲ στρατηγικῆς ἐμπειρίας καὶ εὐβουλίας
having-set-ambushes nor of-generalship experience and good-counsel
ἐπάξιόν τι φρονήσας, πλησίον γίνεται τῆς Ταρσοῦ
worthy anything having-thought near comes — of-Tarsus
κατὰ τὸν τόπον ὃς Χρυσόβουλλον λέγεται, μετὰ
at the place which Chrysoboullon is-called with
φρονήματος ἀνοήτου καὶ θράσους ἀπερισκέπτου. οἱ δὲ
spirit senseless and boldness heedless the but
βάρβαροι τὸ ἀπροφύλακτον αὐτοῦ κατασκεψάμενοι ἐκ
barbarians the unguarded his having-observed from
τοῦ μήτε τόπους ὀχυροὺς καταλαβέσθαι μήτε χάρακα καὶ
the neither places strong to-seize nor palisade and
τάφρον προβαλέσθαι τῆς στρατοπεδείας, μήτ᾽ ἄλλο τι
ditch to-throw-before the camp nor other anything
τῶν ἃ τὸ λελογισμένον τῶν στρατηγῶν καὶ ἔμφρον
of-the(-things) which the reasoning of-the generals and sensible
προδιοικονομεῖται καταπραξάμενον, κλέψαι τὴν νίκην
plans-beforehand having-done to-steal the victory
βουλεύονται, καὶ ἀπαρασκεύῳ καὶ ἀμερίμνῳ ἐπιτίθενται
plan and on-unprepared and unconcerned attack
αὐτῷ ἐν νυκτί, στρατηγήματι χρησάμενοι πρὸς τὴν ἀπορίαν
him in night with-stratagem having-used for the helplessness
αὐτῶν καὶ περίστασιν, ὡς ἐφάνη, σοφῷ. ὀλίγοι γάρ τινες
their and plight as it-appeared clever few for some
ὄντες ἀπὸ τῆς προτέρας ἥττης καὶ εὐαρίθμητοι τῇ ἀπορίᾳ
being from the former defeat and easily-counted by-the helplessness

πρὸς πανουργίαν ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἐχώρησαν, καὶ ἵππους
to cunning from necessity went and horses
συναγαγόντες συχνοὺς καὶ βύρσας ξηρὰς ἐξάψαντες ἀπὸ
having-gathered many and hides dry having-tied from
τῶν ἱππείων οὐρῶν ὑφ᾽ ἓν παράγγελμα κατὰ πολλὰ τοῦ
the of-horse tails under one command at many of-the
Ῥωμαϊκοῦ στρατοπέδου ἐπαφιᾶσι μέρη. εἶτα καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀπὸ
Roman camp let-loose parts then also they from
διαφόρων τόπων, τοῖς τυμπάνοις ἐπιδουπήσαντες, ἐν μέσῳ
various places on-the drums having-beaten in middle
τοῦ χάρακος γυμνοῖς τοῖς ξίφεσιν εἰσεπήδησαν. πτοίας οὖν
of-the palisade with-bare the swords leapt-in terror then
καὶ ταραχῆς ἐμπεσούσης τῷ τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατεύματι,
and confusion having-fallen-upon the of-the Romans army
καὶ συνταραχθέντων ἵππων ὁμοῦ καὶ ἀνδρῶν καὶ
and having-been-thrown-into-confusion of-horses together and of-men and
ἀλλήλοις περιπιπτόντων, συνέβη τοὺς βαρβάρους κρατῆσαι
on-one-another falling it-happened the barbarians to-prevail
καὶ φόνον ἄπειρον ἀπεργάσασθαι, τῶν πλείστων δυσκλεῶς
and slaughter boundless to-work of-the most ingloriously
συμπατουμένων καὶ συμπνιγομένων ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτῶν. οὕτω δὲ
being-trampled and being-suffocated by themselves so but
παραδόξως καὶ παρ᾽ ἐλπίδα κρατήσαντες οἱ ἐξ Ἰσμαήλ,
marvelously and beyond hope having-prevailed the(-men) from Ishmael
καὶ τὰ νεῦρα τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἀρχῆς κατακόψαντες, τυμπάνων
and the sinews of-the Roman rule having-cut-through of-drums
βοαῖς καὶ βαρβαρικοῖς ἀλαλαγμοῖς ἐπαιάνιζον. τοιοῦτον τὸ
with-shouts and barbarian war-cries sang-the-paean such the
τέλος τῆς ἀνοήτου στρατηγίας ὁ φθόνος κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
end of-the senseless generalship the envy against the Romans

ἐβράβευσε, καὶ τοιοῦτον ἡ βάσκανος Νέμεσις κατὰ τῶν
awarded and such the malicious Nemesis against the
εὐτυχησάντων πρότερον Ῥωμαίων τὸ τρόπαιον ἔστησεν.
having-prospered before Romans the trophy set-up
Ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον οὕτως εἶχε κατὰ 52
but the(-things) indeed toward rising sun so were in
τοὺς χρόνους τῆς εὐσεβοῦς βασιλείας Βασιλείου, τὰ
the times of-the pious reign of-Basil the(-things)
δὲ πρὸς δυόμενον ἔρχομαι διηγήσασθαι. ἀκολούθως γὰρ
but toward setting I-come to-narrate consistently for
τοῖς λοιποῖς καὶ τῶν κατὰ τὴν ἑσπέραν πραγμάτων ἐπὶ
with-the others also the in the west affairs for
πλέον ἀμεληθέντων ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας τοῦ Μιχαήλ, καὶ
more having-been-neglected in the reign — of-Michael and
πάσης σχεδὸν Ἰταλίας, ὅση τῇ καθ' ἡμᾶς νέᾳ Ῥώμῃ
all almost Italy as-much-as to-the by us new Rome
προαφώριστο, καὶ τῶν πλείστων τῆς Σικελίας ὑπὸ τῆς
had-been-assigned and the most — of-Sicily by the
γειτονούσης τῶν Καρχηδονίων δυνάμεως καταπολεμηθείσης
neighboring of-the Carthaginians power having-been-subdued
καὶ ὑποφόρου τοῖς βαρβάροις γεγενημένης, ἔτι γε μὴν
and tributary to-the barbarians having-become still indeed moreover
καὶ τῶν ἐν Παννονίᾳ καὶ Δαλματίᾳ καὶ τῶν ἐπέκεινα τούτων
also the in Pannonia and Dalmatia and the beyond these
διακειμένων Σκυθῶν, Κρωβάτοι φημὶ καὶ Σέρβλοι καὶ
lying Scythians Croats I-mean and Serbs and
Ζαχλουμοὶ Τερβουνιῶταί τε καὶ Καναλῖται καὶ Διοκλητιανοὶ
Zachloumoi Terbouniotes both and Kanalites and Diokletians
καὶ Ῥεντανοί, τῆς ἀνέκαθεν τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐπικρατείας
and Rentanoi from-the of-old of-the Romans dominion
ἀφηνιάσαντες αὐτόνομοί τε καὶ αὐτοδέσποτοι καθεστήκεισαν,
having-broken-away autonomous both and self-ruling had-become

ὑπὸ ἰδίων ἀρχόντων μόνον ἀρχόμενοι. οἱ πλεῖστοι δὲ
by own rulers only being-ruled the most but
τὴν ἐπὶ πλέον ἀπόστασιν ἐνδεικνύμενοι καὶ τοῦ θείου
the for more apostasy showing also from-the divine
βαπτίσματος ἑαυτοὺς ἠλλοτρίωσαν, ὡς ἂν μηδὲν ἐνέχυρον
baptism themselves estranged so-that — no pledge
τῆς πρὸς Ῥωμαίους φιλίας καὶ δουλώσεως ἔχοιεν.
of-the toward Romans friendship and servitude they-might-have
53 Οὕτως οὖν τῶν κατὰ τὴν ἑσπέραν ἐχόντων καὶ ἐν
so then the(-things) in the west being and in
τοιαύταις ὄντων ἀναρχίαις καὶ ἀταξίαις, συνεπέθεντο
such being anarchies and disorders attacked-together
μετὰ τοῦ καιροῦ καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ Καρχηδόνος Ἀγαρηνοί, καὶ
with the occasion also the from Carthage Hagarenes and
ἄρχοντας ἐπιστήσαντες τόν τε Σολδάνον καὶ Σάμβαν καὶ
rulers having-set-over — both Soldanos and Sambas and
τὸν Καλφούς, οὓς ἐν κακίᾳ καὶ πολεμικῇ ἐμπειρίᾳ κατὰ
— *Kalphous whom in wickedness and military experience by*
πολὺ διαφέρειν τῶν ὁμοφύλων ἐπίστευον, ἓξ καὶ τριάκοντα
much to-excel the fellow-tribesmen they-believed six and thirty
πλοίων πολεμικῶν κατὰ Δαλματίας στόλον ἀπέστειλαν,
of-ships of-war against Dalmatia fleet sent
ὑφ' οὗ διάφοροι πόλεις ἑάλωσαν Δαλματῶν, οἷον ἥ τε
by which various cities were-taken of-Dalmatians such-as — both
Βούτομα καὶ Ῥῶσα καὶ τὰ κάτω Δεκάτορα. προχωρούντων
Boutoma and Rhosa and the lower Dekatera advancing
δὲ κατὰ νοῦν τῶν πραγμάτων τοῖς πολεμίοις, ἦλθον
but according-to mind the affairs for-the enemies they-came
καὶ ἐπὶ τὴν τοῦ ὅλου ἔθνους μητρόπολιν, ἣ Ῥαούσιον
also to the of-the whole nation metropolis which Ragusa
λέγεται, καὶ ταύτην ἐπὶ χρόνον ἐπολιόρκουν ἱκανόν. ἑλεῖν

δὲ ἐξ ἑτοίμου οὐκ ἔσθενον διὰ τὸ ἐκθύμως τοὺς
but from ready not they-were-able because-of the spiritedly the(-men)
ἔνδοθεν ἀγωνίζεσθαι ὡς ὑπὲρ ψυχῆς, τὸ λεγόμενον, θέοντας.
inside to-fight as for life the saying running
ὡς οὖν ἐπὶ χρόνον οἱ ἐν Ῥαουσίῳ ἐταλαιπώρουν καὶ
when then for time the(-men) in Ragusa suffered-hardship and
εἰς ἐσχάτας συνηλαύνοντο ἀπορίας, πέμπουσι πρέσβεις
into extreme were-driven straits they-send envoys
ὡς βασιλέα ὑπὸ τῆς ἀνάγκης στενοχωρούμενοι, καίτοι
to emperor by the necessity hard-pressed although
σχεδὸν οὐκ ἀγνοοῦντες ὡς εἰς ἄλλα μᾶλλον ὁ
almost not being-ignorant that to other-things rather the
κρατῶν ἀπησχόληται, ἐλεῆσαι παρακαλοῦντες καὶ ἐπαμῦναι
ruler is-occupied to-pity begging and to-help
τοῖς ὅσον οὔπω κινδυνεύουσιν ὑποχειρίοις γενέσθαι
the(-ones) as-good-as not-yet in-danger subjects to-become
τῶν ἀρνητῶν τοῦ Χριστοῦ. οὔπω δὲ τῶν πρέσβεων
of-the deniers — of-Christ not-yet but the envoys
καταλαβόντων τὴν βασιλεύουσαν, ἀλλ᾽ ἔτι χρονοτριβούντων
having-reached the reigning-city but still delaying
περὶ τὴν ἄνοδον, ἐξ ἀνθρώπων μὲν ὁ φαῦλος γίνεται
about the journey-up from men indeed the worthless is-gone
βασιλεύς, ἐπὶ δὲ τὸν ἐγρηγορότα καὶ νήφοντα τῶν
emperor to but the wakeful and sober of-the
κοινῶν φροντιστὴν Βασίλειον τὰ τῆς αὐτοκράτορος
common-affairs caretaker Basil the of-the sole
ἐξουσίας περιίσταται πράγματα· ὃς καὶ πρὸ τούτου λίαν
authority pass affairs who also before this very
περὶ τῶν τοιούτων δυσφορῶν καὶ διαπονούμενος, καὶ τότε
about the such-things being-vexed and being-troubled and then
δὲ τῶν πρέσβεων ἐπιμελῶς ἀκροασάμενος καὶ ὡς οἰκεῖα
too the envoys carefully having-listened-to and as own

τραύματα τὰ τῶν ὁμοπίστων παθήματα ἡγησάμενος,
wounds the of-the fellow-believers sufferings having-considered
περὶ τὴν παρασκευὴν ἐγίνετο τῶν εἰς τὴν τῶν
about the preparation was of-the(-things) for the of-the(-ones)
ἱκετευσάντων βοήθειαν μελλόντων ἐξαποστέλλεσθαι· καὶ
having-supplicated help going to-be-sent-out and
στόλον ἐξαρτυσάμενος νεῶν ἑκατὸν καὶ πάντα δεόντως
fleet having-fitted-out of-ships hundred and all-things fittingly
ἑτοιμασάμενος, καὶ ἄνδρα συνέσει καὶ ἐμπειρίᾳ τῶν πολλῶν
having-prepared and man in-intelligence and experience of-the many
διαφέροντα ἐκλεξάμενος, τὸν πατρίκιον Νικήταν φημί, τὸν
excelling having-chosen the patrician Nicetas I-mean the
τοῦ πλωΐμου δρουγγάριον, ὃς κατ' ἐπωνυμίαν Ὡορύφας
of-the fleet droungarios who by surname Ooryphas
ἐλέγετο, ὥσπερ τινὰ πρηστήριον κεραυνὸν κατὰ τῶν
was-called as some fiery thunderbolt against the
πολεμίων ἐκπέμπει. οἱ δὲ ἐξ Ἀφρικῆς Σαρακηνοί, οἱ
enemies sends-out the but from Africa Saracens the(-ones)
τῇ πολιορκίᾳ τῆς πόλεως προσκαθήμενοι, δι' αὐτομόλων
to-the siege of-the city sitting-down-before through deserters
ἀναμαθόντες τοὺς Ῥαουσίους πρέσβεις ἀποστεῖλαι πρὸς
having-learned the Ragusans envoys to-have-sent to
βασιλέα τοὺς αἰτησομένους δύναμιν καὶ στρατὸν κατ'
emperor the(-men) going-to-ask force and army against
αὐτῶν, τοῦτο μὲν τὴν σύντομον ἀπογινώσκοντες ἅλωσιν,
them this indeed the speedy despairing-of capture
τοῦτο δὲ τὴν ἀφικέσθαι προσδοκωμένην ἐκ βασιλέως
this but the to-arrive expected from emperor
δείσαντες βοήθειαν, λύουσι τὴν πολιορκίαν καὶ τῶν
having-feared help break-up the siege and from-the
τόπων ἐκείνων ἀπαναστεύουσι. κατὰ δὲ τὴν Ἰταλίαν, ἣ
places those depart in but — Italy which

νῦν Λαγοβαρδία ὠνόμασται, διαπεράσαντες τὸ κάστρον
now Langobardia has-been-named having-crossed the fortress
Βάρεως ἐξεπόρθησαν, καὶ αὐτόθι κατασκηνώσαντες καὶ
of-Bari sacked and there having-encamped and
τοῖς μᾶλλον ἐγγίζουσι καθ' ἑκάστην ἐπιτιθέμενοι καὶ
the(-ones) more being-near by each(-day) attacking and
τῶν πορρωτέρω κατατολμῶντες καὶ ἀεί τι
the(-ones) farther daring-against and always something
προσλαμβανόμενοι, πᾶσαν τὴν Λαγοβαρδίαν ἄχρι καὶ
taking-in-addition all — Langobardia as-far-as even
αὐτῆς σχεδὸν τῆς ποτὲ μεγαλοδόξου Ῥώμης ἐκράτησαν.
very almost the once most-glorious Rome mastered
καὶ εἶχε μὲν οὕτω ταῦτα.
and were indeed so these-things
Τὸ δὲ περὶ τοὺς ἐν Δαλματίᾳ παρὰ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς 54
the(-thing) but concerning the(-men) in Dalmatia from the Roman
ἐπικουρίας γεγονὸς καὶ τὰ προμνημονευθέντα γένη
aid having-happened also the aforementioned races
θεασάμενοι, οἵ τε Χρωβάτοι καὶ Σέρβλοι καὶ οἱ λοιποί,
having-beheld the both Croats and Serbs and the rest
καὶ τοῦ ἄρτι βασιλεύοντος Ῥωμαίων τὴν ἐπιείκειαν καὶ
and of-the newly reigning(-one) of-Romans the gentleness and
περὶ πάντα δικαιοσύνην καὶ ἀρετὴν πυνθανόμενοι, καὶ
in all justice and virtue learning and
τὸ καλῶς ἄρχεσθαι τοῦ ἐπισφαλῶς ἐκ θρασύτητος
the well to-be-ruled than-the precariously from rashness
ἄρχειν προκρίναντες, σπουδὴν ποιοῦνται πάλιν εἰς τὴν
to-rule having-preferred zeal make again to the
προτέραν δεσποτείαν ἐπανελθεῖν καὶ πρὸς τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν
former lordship to-return and to the Roman
ἐπαναχθῆναι δούλωσιν. καὶ δὴ πρὸς τοῦτο καὶ πρέσβεις
to-be-brought-back servitude and indeed for this also envoys

καὶ αὐτοὶ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα πέμπουσιν, οἵ τε μετὰ
also themselves to the emperor send the(-ones) both with
τῆς αὐτῆς θρησκείας ἀποστατήσαντες καὶ οἱ τέλειον
the same worship having-revolted and the(-ones) completely
τοῦ θείου βαπτίσματος ἀπαυτομολήσαντες, τῆς τε ἐξ
from-the divine baptism having-deserted of-the both from
ἀρχῆς αὐτῶν δουλώσεως καὶ εἰς ὅσα Ῥωμαίοις
beginning their servitude and in how-many-things to-Romans
γεγόνασί ποτε χρήσιμοι εὐκαίρως ὑπομιμνήσκοντες, καὶ
they-had-become once useful timely reminding and
ἀξιοῦντες τῇ φιλανθρώπῳ ζεύγλῃ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἐξουσίας
asking to-the humane yoke of-the Roman authority
καὶ ὑπὸ τῷ ταύτης ἀγελάρχῃ τάττεσθαι καὶ αὐτούς. ὧν
and under the its herdsman to-be-ranked also themselves whose
ὡς εὐλόγου τῆς δεήσεως ἐπακούσας ὁ βασιλεύς, ἐπεὶ καὶ
as reasonable the petition having-heard the emperor since also
πρὸ τούτου ἐδυσφόρει περὶ αὐτῶν καὶ ἤσχαλλεν ὡς οὐ
before this he-was-vexed about them and was-distressed as by-not
μικρῷ μέρει περικεκομμένης καὶ διηρπασμένης τῆς αὐτοῦ
small part having-been-cut-off and having-been-plundered the his
ἀρχῆς, εὐμενῶς, ὡς τὸν ἀφρόνως ἀφηνιάσαντα υἱόν, εἶτα
rule kindly as the senselessly having-broken-away son then
μεταγνόντα καὶ ὑποστρέψαντα ὁ φιλάνθρωπος πατήρ, καὶ
having-repented and having-returned the humane father also
αὐτὸς τούτους προσήκατο καὶ ἀνεδέξατο, καὶ ἱερεῖς εὐθέως
he these admitted and received and priests straightway
μετὰ καὶ βασιλικοῦ ἀνθρώπου σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐξαπέστειλεν, ὡς
with also imperial man with them sent-out so-that
ἂν πρὸ τῶν ἄλλων τοῦ ψυχικοῦ τούτους κινδύνου ἐξέληται
— before the others from-the of-soul them danger he-may-rescue
καὶ πρὸς τὴν προτέραν πίστιν ἐπανασώσηται καὶ τῶν
and to the former faith may-restore and from-the

ἐξ ἀγνοίας ἢ ἀνοίας ἀπαλλάξῃ πλημμεληµάτων αὐτούς.
from ignorance or folly may-free sins them
ἀνυσθέντος δὲ τοῦ τοιούτου θεοφιλοῦς ἔργου, καὶ πάντων
having-been-accomplished but the such god-loving work and all
τοῦ θείου μετασχόντων βαπτίσματος καὶ εἰς τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν
of-the divine having-partaken baptism and to the Roman
ἐπανελθόντων ὑπόπτωσιν, ἐδέξατο κατὰ τοῦτο τὸ μέρος τὴν
having-returned submission received in this the part the
ὁλοκληρίαν ἡ βασιλέως ἀρχή, πάντων φιλανθρώπῳ τοῦ
completeness the of-emperor rule all by-humane of-the
κρατοῦντος προστάγματι ἐκ τῶν οἰκείων καὶ ὁμοφύλων
ruler command from the own and fellow-tribesmen
δεξαμένων ἄρχοντας εἰς ἐπιστασίαν αὐτῶν. οὐ γὰρ ὠνίους
having-received rulers for oversight their not for for-sale
ἐκεῖνος τὰς εἰς τὴν ἐπιστασίαν αὐτῶν εἶχεν ἀρχάς, ἵν᾽
he the for the oversight their held offices that
ἐντεῦθεν τοὺς πλεῖον διδόντας καὶ καλαμωμένους αὐτοῦ
from-here the(-ones) more giving and plundering his
τὸ ὑπήκοον εἰς τὸ τούτων κατεξουσιάζειν προβάλληται·
the subjects for the them to-lord-over he-may-put-forward
καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τοὺς ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐκείνων ἐκλεγομένους
and because-of this the(-men) by them those chosen
καὶ οἱονεὶ χειροτονουμένους, ὡς αἱρετοὺς ἄρχοντας καὶ
and as-it-were elected as chosen rulers and
πατρικὴν πρὸς αὐτοὺς διασώζειν ὀφείλοντας εὔνοιαν,
paternal toward them to-preserve owing goodwill
ἄρχειν αὐτῶν νουνεχῶς διωρίσατο. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ταύτῃ.
to-rule them sensibly he-decreed and these-things indeed thus
Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τῆς ἐκμελοῦς τε καὶ ῥᾳθύμου βασιλείας 55
since but the in the careless both and indolent reign
πρὸς τὴν ἐπικράτειαν τῶν Ῥωμαίων διαπεράσαντες
to the dominion of-the Romans having-crossed

βάρβαροι καὶ τοῦ Ῥαουσίου ἀποκρουσθέντες, καθάπερ
barbarians and — from-Ragusa having-been-repulsed as
ἤδη πρότερον εἴρηται, ἔτι κατὰ τὴν Ἰταλίαν διέτριβον,
already before has-been-said still in — Italy were-spending-time
συνεχῶς αὐτὴν κατατρέχοντες καὶ ἀφειδῶς ληϊζόμενοι,
continually it overrunning and unsparingly plundering
ὡς καὶ μέχρι τῶν πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν κάστρων
so-that even as-far-as the fifty and hundred fortresses
τὰ μὲν ἐκ προδοσίας τὰ δὲ πολιορκίᾳ χειρώσασθαι,
the(-ones) indeed by treachery the(-ones) but by-siege to-subdue
ἀκούων ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς ἠνιᾶτο σφοδρῶς, καὶ ταῖς
hearing these-things the emperor was-grieved vehemently and with-the
περὶ τούτων φροντίσιν ἐπαγρυπνῶν ἐζήτει πῶς ἂν εὐπετῶς
about these cares lying-awake he-sought how — easily
δυνηθείη ἢ τελέως τροπώσασθαι τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἢ κἂν
he-might-be-able either completely to-rout the enemies or at-least
ἐκ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἐπικρατείας ἀπώσασθαι καὶ ἐξελάσαι τὸ
from the Roman dominion to-thrust and to-drive-out the
δυσμενές. καὶ τὰς μὲν ἤδη χάριν τῶν Ῥαουσαίων καὶ
hostile and the indeed already for-the-sake-of the Ragusans and
ὅλου τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Δαλματῶν προαποσταλείσας δυνάμεις,
whole the nation of-the Dalmatians sent-before forces
ὧν ἦρχεν, ὡς φθάσαντες εἴπομεν, ὁ κατὰ τὸν Ὠορύφαν
which led as having-anticipated we-said — by — Ooryphas
Νικήτας πατρίκιος, οὐκ ἀξιομάχους πρὸς τοσαύτην τῶν
Nicetas patrician not a-match for so-great of-the
βαρβάρων πληθὺν ἐδοκίμασε, μάλιστα διὰ τὸ χρείαν
barbarians multitude he-judged especially because-of the need
εἶναι καὶ πρὸς τὴν μεσόγαιον πολλάκις ποιεῖσθαι τὰς
to-be also toward the inland often to-make the
συμπλοκὰς καὶ πολὺ τῆς θαλάττης ἀπαρτᾶσθαι, ὅπερ
engagements and far from-the sea to-be-detached which

ἐδόκει πρὸς νηΐτην στρατὸν ἀσύμφορον καὶ ἀδύνατον·
seemed for naval army disadvantageous and impossible
ἄλλας δὲ πάλιν ἀπ᾽ ἐντεῦθεν ἀποστέλλειν δυνάμεις οὐκ
other but again from here to-send forces not
ἔκρινεν εἶναι λυσιτελὲς διά τε τὸ τῆς ἐκστρατείας
he-judged to-be profitable because-of both the of-the expedition
δαπανηρὸν καὶ τὴν χρείαν τὴν τῶν ἐνταῦθα χωρῶν. καὶ
costliness and the need the of-the here lands and
συνετῶς βουλευσάμενος πρὸς Λοδοΐχον τὸν ῥῆγα Φραγγίας
intelligently having-taken-counsel to Louis the king of-Francia
καὶ τὸν πάπαν Ῥώμης διαπρεσβεύεται συνεπικουρῆσαι ταῖς
and the pope of-Rome sends-embassy to-help-together the
ἐντεῦθεν δυνάμεσι καὶ μετὰ τούτων συμπαρατάξασθαι κατὰ
from-here forces and with these to-draw-up against
τῶν ἐν Βάρει κατοικησάντων Ἀγαρηνῶν, κελεύσας καὶ
the(-men) in Bari having-settled Hagarenes having-ordered also
τὰς ὀλίγῳ πρόσθεν μνημονευθείσας χώρας τῶν Σκλαβηνῶν
the little before mentioned lands of-the Slavs
συνεπιλαβέσθαι τοῦ ἔργου, διὰ τῶν οἰκητόρων Ῥαουσίου
to-take-part-in the work through the inhabitants of-Ragusa
καὶ τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς ἐγχωρίων πλοίων περαιωθέντας τὸ
and the among them native ships having-crossed the
πέλαγος Δαλματῶν. ὧν ὁμοῦ πάντων γεγενημένων καὶ
sea of-Dalmatians of-whom together all having-come and
μεγάλης ἀθροισθείσης δυνάμεως, ἐπεὶ καὶ ὁ Ῥωμαϊκὸς
great having-been-gathered force since also the Roman
ναύαρχος συνέσει καὶ ἀνδρίᾳ πολὺ πάντων διέφερε,
admiral in-intelligence and courage far all excelled
θᾶττον ἡ Βάρις ἁλίσκεται. καὶ τὸ μὲν κάστρον αὐτὸ καὶ
more-quickly — Bari is-taken and the indeed fortress itself and
ἡ χώρα καὶ πᾶν τὸ αἰχμάλωτον εἰς τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἐξουσίαν
the land and every the captive into the Roman authority

ἀναλαμβάνεται, καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους ἡ χώρα ἀπολαμβάνει
is-taken-back and the own the land receives-back
οἰκήτορας, τὸν δὲ Σολδάνον ἐκεῖνον καὶ τὸν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν
inhabitants — but Soldanos that and the under him
λαὸν τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ὁ ῥὴξ Φραγγίας ἀναλαβόμενος ἐν
people of-the Hagarenes the king of-Francia having-taken-up to
Καπύῃ ἀπήγαγεν· ταύτης γὰρ αὐτὸς ἦρχεν ἔτι καὶ προσέτι
Capua led-off it for he ruled still and besides
Βενεβενδοῦ. καὶ ἡ μὲν πρώτη κατὰ τὴν ἑσπέραν στρατεία
Benevento and the indeed first in the west campaign
τῷ βασιλεῖ τοιοῦτον πέρας ἐδέξατο, καὶ τοῖς ἐντεῦθεν
for-the emperor such end received and with-the from-there
λαφύροις καὶ τῇ δόξῃ κατεκοσμήθη ἡ βασιλεύουσα.
spoils and with-the glory was-adorned the reigning-city
56 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ πολλάκις ἡ ἱστορία φιλεῖ καὶ ταῖς κατὰ
since but often the history loves also with-the by
παρέκβασιν διηγήσεσι τὸν λόγον ποικίλλειν καὶ τὰς
digression narratives the discourse to-vary and the
τῶν ἐντυγχανόντων ψυχαγωγεῖν ἀκοάς, ἐπεξηγητέον
of-the(-ones) reading to-delight ears it-must-be-explained
καὶ ὅσα μεταξὺ τοῦ ῥηγὸς Φραγγίας καὶ Σολδάνου τοῦ
also what-things between the king of-Francia and Soldanos the
Ἀφρικῆς ἀμηρᾶ καὶ τῶν οἰκητόρων Καπύης καὶ Βενεβενδοῦ
of-Africa emir and the inhabitants of-Capua and Benevento
συνέβη καταπραχθῆναι. ἐπὶ διετίαν γὰρ ἐν Καπύῃ συνὼν
happened to-be-done for two-years for in Capua being-with
ὁ Σολδάνος τῷ τῆς Φραγγίας ῥηγὶ οὐδέποτε ὤφθη ὑπό
— Soldanos the — of-Francia king never was-seen by
τινος τὸ παράπαν γελῶν. ὁ δὲ ῥὴξ τῷ κατάφωρον
anyone the at-all laughing the but king to-the(-one) caught-in-the-act
αὐτὸν γελῶντα πεποιηκότι χρυσίου δόσιν κατεπηγγείλατο.
him laughing having-made of-gold gift promised

προσήγγειλεν οὖν τίς ποτε τῷ ῥηγὶ γελῶντα τὸν
reported then someone once to-the king laughing the
μέχρι τότε σκυθρωπὸν Σολδάνον θεάσασθαι, καὶ τούτου
until then sullen Soldanos to-have-seen and of-this
παρείχετο μάρτυρας. ὃν καλέσας ὁ ῥὴξ τὴν αἰτίαν
provided witnesses whom having-called the king the cause
τῆς μεταβολῆς καὶ τοῦ γέλωτος ἐπυνθάνετο. ὁ δὲ
of-the change and of-the laughter inquired the(-one) but
"ἅμαξάν" φησι "κατιδὼν καὶ τοὺς ταύτης κατανοήσας
wagon he-says having-seen and the its having-observed
τροχούς, πῶς καὶ τὸ μετέωρον τούτων ταπεινοῦται καὶ τὸ
wheels how both the raised of-them is-lowered and the
ταπεινὸν αὖθις μετεωρίζεται, καὶ ὡς εἰκόνα ταῦτα λαβὼν
lowered again is-raised and as image these-things having-taken
τῆς ἀσταθμήτου καὶ ἀβεβαίου τῶν ἀνθρώπων εὐδαιμονίας,
of-the unstable and insecure of-the men happiness
ἐγέλασα ἅμα μὲν ἐνθυμηθεὶς πῶς ἐφ' οὕτως ἀβεβαίων
I-laughed at-once indeed having-considered how at so insecure
πραγμάτων ἐπαιρόμεθα, ἅμα δὲ καὶ οὐκ ἀδύνατον
things we-are-elated at-once but also not impossible
οἰηθεὶς τὸ καὶ ἐμέ, ὥσπερ ἐκ μετεώρου γέγονα
having-thought the also me as from high I-have-become
ταπεινός, οὕτως καὶ ἐκ τοῦ χαμερποῦς ἐνδέχεσθαι πάλιν
low so also from the groveling to-be-possible again
ἀρθῆναι πρὸς μέγεθος." ἅπερ ἀκούσας ὁ ῥήξ, καὶ ἐν
to-be-raised to greatness which-things having-heard the king and in
νῷ τὰ οἰκεῖα λαβὼν καὶ ἐκεῖνον συνετὸν λογισάμενος,
mind the own having-taken and him intelligent having-reckoned
ἤρξατο παρρησίας καὶ συνδιαιτήσεως μεταδιδόναι αὐτῷ.
began of-frankness and of-living-together to-give-a-share to-him

Soldanos turns Louis and the Capuans against each other and is let go home; he returns against Capua and Benevento, and Basil's messenger, caught, cries out to the walls that help is coming and is cut down, so Soldanos lifts the siege. The emir Esman's fleet is beaten at Euripos; Nicetas Ooryphas burns the Cretans' ships, later drags his fleet across the Corinthian isthmus to surprise them, and tortures the apostates. Against the Africans the admiral Nasar's rowers desert; Basil has thirty condemned men disgraced as their ringleaders and impaled at Methone, Nasar wins at night, oil grows cheap from Sicilian plunder, and the fleet clears Calabria and Langobardia.

57 ὁ δὲ πανοῦργος ὢν καὶ δόλων Φοινικικῶν οὐκ
the(-one) but cunning being and of-tricks Phoenician not
ἀμέτοχος ἐκ τῆς ἑκατέρων ἔγνω διαβολῆς σωτηρίαν
without-share from the of-both he-resolved slander safety
ἑαυτῷ πραγματεύεσθαι. πολλάκις γὰρ πρὸς αὐτόν, καὶ ὡς
for-himself to-work-out often for to him also as
ἐκ γεροντικῆς ἐμπειρίας συνετὸν καὶ σοφὸν καὶ ὡς ἐξ
from of-old-age experience intelligent and wise and as from
εὐτυχοῦς δυστυχῆ, οἱ τῶν κάστρων Καπύης καὶ Βενεβενδοῦ
fortunate unfortunate the of-the fortresses of-Capua and Benevento
παρεγίνοντο ἄρχοντες. ὁ δὲ τὴν πρὸς αὐτοὺς φιλίαν
came rulers he but the toward them friendship
πλαττόμενος ἐξενεγκεῖν τι πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἀπόρρητον
feigning to-bring-out something to them secret
βούλευμα τοῦ ῥηγὸς ἔλεγεν βούλεσθαι, δεδοικέναι δὲ τὸν
plan of-the king he-said to-wish to-fear but the
ἐκ μηνύσεως κίνδυνον. τῶν δὲ διομοσαμένων ἀνέκφορον
from informing danger of-them but having-sworn unspoken
ποιήσασθαι τὸ λαλούμενον, ἔφη βούλεσθαι τὸν ῥῆγα
to-make the(-thing) spoken he-said to-wish the king

πάντας ὑμᾶς πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώραν τῆς Φραγγίας
all you to the his-own land — of-Francia
σιδηροδεσμίους ἐκπέμψαι ὡς οὐκ ἄλλως οὔσης αὐτῷ
in-iron-chains to-send-off as not otherwise being for-him
ἀσφαλοῦς τῆς τῶν ὑμετέρων διακρατήσεως πόλεων.
safe the of-the your holding cities
τῶν δὲ μὴ πάνυ πιστὸν τέως ἡγησαμένων τὸ
of-them but not altogether trustworthy meanwhile having-thought the(-thing)
μηνυόμενον, ζητούντων δὲ σαφεστέραν ἔτι κατάληψιν, πάλιν
informed seeking but clearer still grasp again
πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα ὁ Σολδάνος τοιαῦτα φησίν, ὡς οὐκ ἔστι
to the king — Soldanos such-things says that not is
σοι ἀσφαλὴς ἡ τῶν κάστρων τούτων κατάσχεσις, ἕως
for-you safe the of-the fortresses these possession while
οἱ τούτων ἄρχοντες ἐνταῦθα ἐπιχωριάζουσιν· ἀλλ᾽ εἰ βούλει
the of-them rulers here stay but if you-wish
βεβαίως δεσπόζειν αὐτῶν, τούτους θᾶττον πρὸς Φραγγίαν
securely to-be-master-of them them more-quickly to Francia
δεσμίους ἀπόστειλον. πεισθεὶς οὖν τοῖς τοιούτοις
bound send having-been-persuaded then by-the such
λόγοις ὁ ῥὴξ ἁλύσεις διωρίσατο συντόμως χαλκευθῆναι ὡς
words the king chains decreed quickly to-be-forged as
ἐπὶ χρείᾳ κατεπειγούσῃ τινί. ἰδὼν οὖν αὖθις ὁ Σολδάνος
for need pressing some having-seen then again — Soldanos
τοὺς ἄρχοντας, "οὐδ᾽ ἔτι μοι" φησὶ "πιστεύετε περὶ ὧν
the rulers not-even still me he-says do-you-believe about what
ἔλεγον; ἐρευνήσαντες ἴδετε τί οἱ χαλκεῖς πάντες ἐργάζονται
I-said having-searched see what the smiths all are-working
τῇ τοῦ ῥηγὸς προστάξει· καὶ ἐὰν εὕρητε ἁλύσεις τε
by-the of-the king order and if you-find chains both
καὶ δεσμά, μὴ ἀπιστήσητε τῶν πρὸς σωτηρίαν ὑμῶν
and bonds do-not disbelieve the(-things) for safety your

λεγομένων ὑμῖν." γνόντες οὖν ἐν τούτοις τὸν βάρβαρον οἱ
said to-you having-known then in these-things the barbarian the
ἄρχοντες ἀληθεύοντα οὐδὲ πρὸς τἄλλα ἔτι ἠπίστησαν,
rulers telling-the-truth not-even in the-other-things still disbelieved
τρόπον δὲ ἐζήτουν ὅπως τὸν ῥῆγα ἀμύνωνται. καὶ δὴ
way but they-sought how the king they-may-requite and indeed
μετ' ὀλίγον πρὸς κυνηγέσιον ἐξελθόντος αὐτοῦ, ἀποκλείουσι
after little to hunting having-gone-out he they-shut
κατ' αὐτοῦ τὰς πύλας καὶ οὐκέτι τὴν εἴσοδον συγχωροῦσιν
against him the gates and no-longer the entrance allow
αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ μηδὲν ἐκ τούτου παραχρῆμα δυνάμενος
to-him he but nothing from this immediately being-able
πράξασθαι πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν αὖθις ἀνθυπενόστησε.
to-do to the own land again returned
58 πρόσεισιν οὖν τοῖς ἄρχουσιν ὁ Σολδάνος, τὴν χάριν τῆς
approaches then the rulers — Soldanos the favor of-the
μηνύσεως ἀπαιτῶν· ἡ δὲ ἦν τὸ πρὸς τὴν οἰκείαν πατρίδα
information demanding it but was the to the own fatherland
συγχωρηθῆναι αὐτῷ ἀπελθεῖν. συγχωρηθεὶς οὖν καὶ κατὰ
to-be-allowed to-him to-depart having-been-allowed then and at
Καρχηδόνα γενόμενος καὶ τὴν οἰκείαν ἀρχὴν ἀπολαβὼν
Carthage having-come and the own rule having-received-back
καὶ τοῦ κακὸς εἶναι μὴ ἐκστὰς ἐκστρατεύει κατὰ
and from-the evil to-be not having-departed campaigns against
Καπύης τε καὶ Βενεβενδοῦ, τὰ χαριστήρια τούτοις τῆς
Capua both and Benevento the thank-offerings to-these of-the
σωτηρίας ἀποδιδούς. οἱ δὲ πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα διαπρεσβεύονται.
safety paying they but to the king send-embassy
ἀλλὰ μεθ' ὕβρεως ἀποπέμπονται, ἐπιχαίρειν εἰπόντος
but with insolence are-sent-away to-rejoice having-said
τῇ ἀπωλείᾳ αὐτῶν. στέλλουσιν ἄγγελον πρὸς τὸν
at-the destruction their send messenger to the

βασιλέα οἱ τῶν τοιούτων κάστρων ἐξηγούμενοι.
emperor the(-men) of-the such fortresses leading
συμπαθὴς οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ φιλάνθρωπος ὢν θᾶττον
compassionate then the emperor and humane being more-quickly
ἐκπέμπει τὸν πρεσβευτὴν δηλώσοντα τούτοις προσδέχεσθαι
sends-out the envoy going-to-show to-them to-expect
συντόμως τὴν ἐντεῦθεν βοήθειαν. γίνεται δὲ τοῖς πολεμίοις
quickly the from-here help becomes but to-the enemies
ἐγκρατὴς ὁ τῆς ἀγγελίας διάκονος πρὸ τοῦ δοῦναι τὰς
captive the of-the message servant before the to-give the
ἀποκρίσεις τοῖς ἀποστείλασι. λέγει οὖν πρὸς αὐτὸν
answers to-the(-ones) having-sent says then to him
ὁ Σολδάνος ὡς εἰ ὑπηρετήσεις μου τῷ βουλήματι, καὶ
— Soldanos that if you-will-serve my the will both
σωτηρίας ἀξιωθήσῃ καὶ δωρεῶν ἀπολαύσεις. τοῦ δὲ
of-safety you-will-be-deemed-worthy and gifts you-will-enjoy of-him but
συνθεμένου τὸ κεκελευσμένον ἅπαν ποιεῖν, "βούλομαι"
having-agreed the(-thing) ordered all to-do I-wish
ἔφη "στῆναί σε τοῦ κάστρου ἐκτός, καὶ τοῖς ἔνδον
he-said to-stand you of-the fortress outside and to-the(-men) inside
εἰπεῖν ὡς ἐγὼ μὲν τὴν διακονίαν μου ἐξεπλήρωσα καὶ
to-say that I indeed the service my fulfilled and
τὰ προσταγέντα μοι πάντα πεποίηκα· ἀλλ' ἐκ τοῦ
the(-things) ordered me all have-done but from the
βασιλέως βοήθειαν μὴ προσδέχεσθε· οὐ γὰρ ἤκουσεν
emperor help do-not expect not for he-heard
ὑμῶν τῆς δεήσεως." ὑποσχομένου δὲ αὐτοῦ ταῦτα οὕτως
your the petition having-promised but he these-things so
ἐρεῖν, ἀποστέλλεται μετὰ τῶν τοῦ Σολδάνου ὑπηρετῶν
to-say is-sent with the — of-Soldanos servants
τοῦ ταῦτα πρὸς τοὺς ἐν τῇ πόλει εἰπεῖν. ὁ δὲ πλησίον
for-the these-things to the(-men) in the city to-say he but near

τοῦ τείχους γενόμενος, καὶ τοὺς πρώτους παραγενέσθαι
the wall having-come and the first to-come-forward
τῆς πόλεως πρὸς τὴν ἀκρόασιν αἰτησάμενος, ἔφη "εἰ καὶ
of-the city for the hearing having-asked said if even
πρόδηλός μοι τυγχάνει ὁ θάνατος καὶ ἐν χερσὶν ἡ σφαγή,
evident to-me happens the death and in hands the slaughter
ἀλλ' ὅμως οὐκ ἀποκρύψομαι τὴν ἀλήθειαν. πλὴν αἰτῶ καὶ
but nevertheless not I-will-hide the truth but I-ask and
ὁρκίζω ὑμᾶς ἀποδοῦναί μοι τὴν χάριν εἰς τὰ ἐμὰ ἔκγονα
adjure you to-pay me the favor toward the my offspring
καὶ τὴν σύνευνον. ἐγὼ γάρ, ὦ κύριοί μου, εἰ καὶ νῦν
and the wife I for O lords my if even now
ταῖς τῶν πολεμίων περιεσχέθην χερσίν, ἀλλ' ὅμως τὴν
by-the of-the enemies I-have-been-held hands but nevertheless the
διακονίαν μου ἐπλήρωσα καὶ τὴν παρ' ὑμῶν πρεσβείαν τῷ
service my I-fulfilled and the from you embassy to-the
βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων προσήγαγον, καὶ συντόμως προσδέχεσθε
emperor of-Romans brought and quickly expect
τὴν ἐκεῖθεν βοήθειαν. διὸ στῆτε γενναίως καὶ μὴ
the from-there help wherefore stand nobly and do-not
δειλανδρήσητε· ἔρχεται γὰρ ὁ ὑμᾶς ῥυόμενος, εἰ καὶ μὴ
be-cowardly is-coming for the(-one) you rescuing if even not
ἐμέ." ταῦτα οὖν οἱ τοῦ Σολδάνου ὑπηρέται ἀκούσαντες καὶ
me these-things then the — of-Soldanos servants having-heard and
πρὸς τὴν ἀπάτην ἐκμανέντες σφοδρῶς, εὐθέως αὐτὸν τοῖς
at the deceit having-raged vehemently straightway him with-the
ξίφεσι κατακόπτουσι. φοβηθεὶς οὖν ὁ Σολδάνος τὴν ἐκ
swords cut-down having-feared then — Soldanos the from
βασιλέως προσδοκωμένην δύναμιν ἔλυσε τὴν πολιορκίαν καὶ
emperor expected force broke-up the siege and
πρὸς τὴν οἰκείαν χώραν ὑπέστρεψεν. καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ τούτου
to the own land returned and the(-time) from this

διέμειναν πιστοὶ βασιλεῖ οἱ τῶν τοιούτων ἐξηγούμενοι
remained faithful to-the-emperor the(-men) of-the such leading
κάστρων, καὶ ταῦτα πρὸς τὴν αὐτοῦ συνετήρησαν δούλωσιν.
fortresses and these for the his kept servitude
Συνέβη δὲ κατὰ τοὺς καιροὺς ἐκείνους καὶ ἄλλον στόλον 59
it-happened but at the times those also another fleet
Ἀγαρηνῶν κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἐπικρατείας ἐλθεῖν· ἀλλὰ ταῖς
of-Hagarenes against the Roman dominion to-come but by-the
τοῦ βασιλέως ἐπιμόνοις δεήσεσι πρὸς θεὸν καὶ ταῖς ἔμφροσι
of-the emperor persistent petitions to god and by-the sensible
διατάξεσι καὶ τῇ δεούσῃ τῶν πραγμάτων μεταχειρίσει
dispositions and by-the fitting of-the affairs management
μετὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἡ νίκη ἐγένετο καὶ δυσκλεᾶ τὴν ἧτταν
with the Romans the victory came and inglorious the defeat
οἱ ἐκ τῆς Ἄγαρ ἠνέγκαντο. ὁ γὰρ τῆς Ταρσοῦ ἀμηρᾶς,
the(-men) from — Hagar bore the for — of-Tarsus emir
ὃς Ἐσμὰν ὠνομάζετο, τριάκοντα πλοίων μεγίστων, ἃ
who Esman was-named of-thirty ships very-great which
κομβάρια λέγεται, στόλον ἐξαρτυσάμενος κατὰ τοῦ κάστρου
kombaria are-called fleet having-fitted-out against the fortress
Εὐρίπου ὁπλίζεται. τοῦ δὲ στρατηγοῦ Ἑλλάδος (ὁ Οἰνιάτης
of-Euripos arms-himself of-the but general of-Hellas the Oiniates
οὗτος ἦν) κελεύσει βασιλικῇ τὸν ἱκανὸν εἰς φυλακὴν τοῦ
this-one was by-order imperial the sufficient for guard of-the
κάστρου λαὸν ἀπὸ πάσης Ἑλλάδος εἰσαγαγόντος καὶ
fortress people from all Hellas having-brought-in and
τοῖς τείχεσι τὰ ἁρμόζοντα παρασκευασαμένου ἀμυντήρια,
for-the walls the fitting having-prepared defenses
ὡς εἶδον οἱ ἐκ τοῦ κάστρου τὰ πλοῖα τοῖς τείχεσι
when saw the(-men) from the fortress the ships to-the walls
πλησιάζοντα καὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους βελῶν ἀφέσει συχνῶν
approaching and the barbarians of-arrows with-discharge frequent

ἀναστέλλειν καὶ ἀπωθεῖν πειρωμένους τοὺς ἔνδον ἐκ τῶν
to-check and to-thrust-back trying the(-men) inside from the
τειχῶν, θυμοῦ καὶ προθυμίας πλήρεις γενόμενοι γενναίως
walls of-spirit and eagerness full having-become nobly
ἀντηγωνίζοντο, καὶ τοῖς πετροβόλοις ὀργάνοις καὶ
fought-back and with-the stone-throwing engines and
τοξοβαλλίστραις καὶ ταῖς ἐκ χειρῶν τῶν λίθων ἀφέσεσι
arrow-ballistas and with-the from hands of-the stones discharges
χρώμενοι συχνοὺς τῶν βαρβάρων καθ' ἑκάστην ἀνήλισκον.
using many of-the barbarians by each(-day) destroyed
οὐ μόνον δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν νεῶν τὰς πλείστας ἐπιφόρου
not only and but also of-the ships the most favorable
γενομένου τοῦ πνεύματος τῷ ὑγρῷ πυρὶ κατενέπρησαν.
having-become the wind with-the liquid fire burned-up
ἀπορῶν οὖν καὶ δυσθυμῶν ὁ βάρβαρος, καὶ εἰδὼς
being-at-a-loss then and being-disheartened the barbarian and knowing
ἐφέσει χρημάτων ἑκόντας τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀποθνήσκοντας,
from-desire of-moneys willing the many dying
ἀσπίδα μεγάλην πρὸ τοῦ χάρακος θεὶς καὶ χρυσίου
shield great before the palisade having-placed and with-gold
ταύτην πεπληρωκὼς "τοῦτο γέρας" ἔφη "καὶ ἀριστεῖον
it having-filled this prize be-said and reward-of-valor
ἐγὼ δίδωμι, μετὰ καὶ παρθένων ἐπιλέκτων τὸν ἀριθμὸν
I give with also of-virgins chosen the number
ἑκατόν, τῷ πρώτως ἐπιβάντι τοῦ ἄστεος καὶ τοῖς
hundred to-the(-one) first having-mounted the town and to-the
ὁμοφύλοις βραβεύσαντι τὸ νικῶν." ὅπερ οἱ ἀπὸ τῆς
fellow-tribesmen having-awarded the victory which the(-men) from the
πόλεως θεασάμενοι, καὶ τὸν νοῦν τοῦ πραττομένου
city having-beheld and the meaning of-the(-thing) being-done
κατανοήσαντες, τοῖς παρακλητικοῖς τῶν λόγων ἑαυτοὺς
having-perceived with-the exhortatory of-the words themselves

παρεθάρρυνον, καὶ ὑφ᾽ ἓν σύνθημα τῶν πυλῶν αὐτοῖς
encouraged and under one signal the gates for-them
ἀναζυγεισῶν ἀνδρείως κατὰ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐξώρμησαν.
having-been-thrown-open manfully against the barbarians rushed-out
καὶ πολλῶν ἀναιρουμένων, δεξαμένου δὲ καὶ τοῦ ἀμηρᾶ
and many being-killed having-received but also the emir
καιρίαν πληγὴν καὶ πεσόντος, ἐτράπησαν οἱ λοιποὶ καὶ
mortal blow and having-fallen were-routed the rest and
τῶν διωκόντων ἐπικειμένων μέχρι τῶν ὑπολοίπων νεῶν
the pursuers pressing-on as-far-as the remaining ships
κατεσφάττοντο, καὶ φόνος ἐγένετο τῶν βαρβάρων πολύς.
were-slaughtered and slaughter happened of-the barbarians great
οἱ γὰρ περιλιπεῖς ὀλίγας πληρώσαντες τῶν νεῶν μετ᾽
the for remaining few having-manned of-the ships with
αἰσχύνης ἀπέφυγον πρὸς τὰ ἴδια. οὕτως ὁ βαρβαρικὸς
shame fled to the own-things so the barbarian
στόλος δίχα ναυτικῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων δυνάμεως, ταῖς τοῦ
fleet without naval of-the Romans force by-the of-the
βασιλέως εὐχαῖς καὶ ταῖς τῶν ἀντιπαραταξαμένων
emperor prayers and by-the of-the(-men) drawn-up-against
ἀλκαῖς, περιφανῶς ἡττήθη καὶ δυσκλεῶς ἀνεχώρησεν.
strength conspicuously was-defeated and ingloriously withdrew
Οὕτω δὲ τοῦ ἀπὸ Ταρσοῦ διασκεδασθέντος νέφους, αἱ ἀπὸ 60
so but the from Tarsus having-been-scattered cloud the from
Κρήτης αὖθις ἀντηγείροντο θύελλαι. τοῦ γὰρ Σαὴτ ἐκείνου
Crete again rose-up-in-turn storms — for of-Saet that
τοῦ Ἀποχὰψ τῆς τοιαύτης ἀμηρεύοντος νήσου, ἔχοντος
the(-son) of-Apochaps of-the such being-emir island having
δὲ καὶ Φώτιόν τινα συνεργόν, ἄνδρα πολεμιστὴν καὶ
but also Photius some fellow-worker man warlike and
δραστήριον, ἑπτὰ καὶ εἴκοσι κομβάρια κατὰ Κρήτην ἐγένετο.
energetic seven and twenty kombaria in Crete were-made

προσῆν δὲ αὐτοῖς ἀναλόγως καὶ πλῆθος μυοπαρώνων
were-added but to-them in-proportion also multitude of-myoparones
καὶ πεντηκοντόρων, ἃς σακτούρας καὶ γαλέας ὀνομάζειν
and of-fifty-oared-ships which saktourai and galleys to-call
εἰώθασι πάμπολλοι. μεθ' ὧν κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἐξιόντες
are-accustomed very-many with which against the of-Romans going-out
ἐπικρατείας καὶ πάντα τὸν Αἰγαῖον καταληΐζόμενοι, πολλάκις
dominion and all the Aegean plundering often
δὲ καὶ μέχρι τῆς ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ Προικοννήσου ποιούμενοι
but even as-far-as the in Hellespont Prokonnesos making
τὴν ἐπέλευσιν, πολλοὺς ἠνδραποδίζοντο καὶ διέφθειρον.
the inroad many enslaved and destroyed
προσβαλὼν δὲ τῷ τηνικαῦτα τῷ τοιούτῳ ναυτικῷ τῶν
having-attacked but — at-that-time the such fleet of-the
Κρητῶν ὁ προμνημονευθεὶς Νικήτας πατρίκιος, ὁ τῶν
Cretans the aforementioned Nicetas patrician the(-man) the
Ῥωμαϊκῶν τριήρεων ἄρχειν λαχών, καὶ μάχην μετ'
Roman triremes to-command having-obtained and battle with
αὐτῶν καρτερὰν συστησάμενος, εὐθὺς τὰ μὲν εἴκοσι
them strong having-joined straightway the(-ships) indeed twenty
τῶν Κρητικῶν σκαφῶν τῷ ὑγρῷ πυρὶ συγκατέφλεξε,
of-the Cretan vessels with-the liquid fire burned-up
καὶ τοὺς ἐπ' αὐτῶν βαρβάρους μάχαιρα καὶ πῦρ καὶ ὕδωρ
and the on them barbarians sword and fire and water
διεμερίσαντο· τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ φυγῇ τὴν σωτηρίαν, ὅσα
divided-among-themselves the but rest by-flight the safety as-many-as
τὸν ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάσσης διέφυγον κίνδυνον, ἐπορίσαντο.
the from the sea escaped danger procured
61 Ἀλλὰ καίπερ οὕτως οἱ Κρῆτες ἐλαττωθέντες καὶ δυστυχῶς
but although so the Cretans having-been-worsted and unfortunately
ὑποστρέψαντες οὐκ ἠγάπησαν ἠρεμεῖν, ἀλλὰ πάλιν τῶν κατὰ
having-returned not were-content to-be-quiet but again of-the at

θάλασσαν πραγμάτων ἀντείχοντο, καὶ τὰ μᾶλλον τῆς
sea affairs held-to and the(-places) more from-the
βασιλίδος ἀπέχοντα, τὴν Πελοπόννησον καὶ τὰς κάτωθεν
queen-city distant — Peloponnese and the below
ταύτης νήσους φημί, παρελύπουν καὶ ἐληΐζοντο, τὸν ἀνωτέρω
it islands I-mean grieved and plundered the above
μνημονευθέντα Φώτιον ναύαρχον ἔχοντες. ἀποστέλλεται
mentioned Photius admiral having is-sent
τοίνυν καὶ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ μετὰ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν τριήρων ὁ
therefore also against him with the Roman triremes the
τούτων καλῶς ἀφηγούμενος Νικήτας, τὸν Ὠορύφαν φημί, ὃς
them well leading Nicetas — Ooryphas I-mean who
αἰσίως χρησάμενος πλῷ δι᾽ ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν καταλαμβάνει
auspiciously having-used voyage through few days reaches
τὴν Πελοπόννησον. καὶ τῷ λιμένι προσορμισάμενος
— Peloponnese and at-the harbor having-anchored
Κεγχρεῶν, καὶ μαθὼν ὅτι τὰ δυτικώτερα Πελοποννήσου
of-Kenchreai and having-learned that the more-western of-Peloponnese
μέρη, Μεθώνην καὶ Πάτρας καὶ τὰ προσεχῆ Κορίνθου χωρία,
parts Methone and Patras and the adjacent of-Corinth places
λυμαίνεται τὸ βαρβαρικόν, βουλὴν βουλεύεται συνετὴν καὶ
ravages the barbarian counsel plans intelligent and
σοφήν. οὐ γὰρ ἔκρινε διὰ θαλάσσης τὴν Πελοπόννησον
wise not for he-judged through sea — Peloponnese
διελθεῖν καὶ διὰ τοῦ Μαλέου κάμψας τὸ τῶν χιλίων
to-go-around and through the Malea having-rounded the of-the thousand
μιλίων μῆκος ἀναμετρήσασθαι καὶ τοῦ προσήκοντος
miles length to-measure-out and from-the fitting
ὑστερῆσαι καιροῦ, ἀλλ᾽ ὡς εἶχεν, εὐθὺς ἐν νυκτὶ διὰ τοῦ
to-fall-behind time but as he-was straightway in night through the
κατὰ Κόρινθον ἰσθμοῦ πολυχειρίᾳ καὶ ἐμπειρίᾳ πρὸς τὸ
at Corinth isthmus by-many-hands and skill to the

ἐκεῖθεν μέρος κατὰ τὸ ξηρὸν διαβιβάσας τὰς ναῦς ἔργου
from-there part over the dry-land having-carried-across the ships to-work
εἶχετο. καὶ οὔπω πεπυσμένοις τι περὶ τούτου τοῖς
held and not-yet having-learned anything about this to-the
πολεμίοις αἰφνίδιον ἐπιφαίνεται, καὶ συγχέας αὐτῶν τῷ
enemies suddenly appears and having-confounded their by-the
δέει τοὺς λογισμοὺς διά τε τὸ ἐκ τῆς προτέρας μάχης
fear the reasonings because-of both the from the former battle
δέος καὶ διὰ τὸ τῆς ἐφόδου ἀπρόοπτον οὐδὲ συστῆναι
fear and because-of the of-the attack unforeseen not-even to-stand-together
καὶ ἀλκῆς μεμνῆσθαι παντελῶς συνεχώρησεν, ἀλλὰ τὰς
and of-strength to-remember altogether allowed but the(-ships)
μὲν πυρπολήσας τὰς δὲ καταποντώσας τῶν πολεμίων
indeed having-burned the(-ships) but having-sunk of-the enemy
νεῶν, καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων τοὺς μὲν ἀνελὼν τῷ ξίφει
ships and of-the barbarians the(-ones) indeed having-killed with-the sword
τοὺς δὲ ὑποβρυχίους τῷ βυθῷ ποιησάμενος, καὶ τὸν
the(-ones) but under-water to-the deep having-made and the
τούτων ἀρχηγὸν ἀνελών, τοὺς λοιποὺς διασκεδασθῆναι
their leader having-killed the rest to-be-scattered
κατὰ τὴν νῆσον ἠνάγκασεν· οὓς σαγηνεύσας ὕστερον
over the island compelled whom having-netted later
καὶ ζωγρῶν διαφόροις τιμωρίαις ὑπέβαλε. τῶν μὲν
and taking-alive to-various punishments subjected of-the(-ones) indeed
γὰρ τὴν τῆς σαρκὸς ἀπέωσε δοράν, μάλιστα τῶν
for the of-the flesh he-pushed-off skin especially of-the(-ones)
ἀρνησαμένων τὸ βάπτισμα τοῦ Χριστοῦ, τοῦτο παρ' αὐτῶν
having-denied the baptism — of-Christ this from them
ἀφαιρεῖσθαι λέγων, καὶ οὐδὲν αὐτῶν ἴδιον· ἐκ δὲ τῶν
to-be-taken-away saying and nothing their own from but the(-others)
ἱμάντας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἰνίου ἄχρι τῶν σφυρῶν μετ' ὀδύνης
thongs from the nape as-far-as the ankles with pain

δριμείας ἐξεῖλκυεν· ἄλλους δὲ χηλωνείοις τισὶν αἰωρῶν,
sharp he-drew-out others but on-tortoise-frames some hanging
εἶτα ἀπὸ τοῦ μετεώρου πρὸς λέβητας πίσσης μεστοὺς
then from the height into cauldrons of-pitch full
ἐμβάλλων τε καὶ ὠθῶν, τοῦ ἰδίου αὐτοῖς μεταδιδόναι
throwing both and thrusting of-the own to-them to-give-a-share
βαπτίσματος ἔλεγε τοῦ ἐπωδύνου καὶ ζοφεροῦ. οὕτως οὖν
baptism he-said the painful and murky so then
κατακερτομήσας, καὶ ἀναλόγους τῶν ἐργασθέντων αὐτοῖς
having-mocked and proportionate to-the deeds-done by-them
ποινὰς εἰσπραξάμενος, τοῦ καὶ αὖθις κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς
penalties having-exacted of-the also again against the Roman
ἐπικρατείας ἐκστρατεύειν οὐκ ὀλίγον δέος ἐνέβαλεν.
dominion to-campaign not little fear he-cast-in
Ἀλλ᾽ οὕτως μὲν τὰ μεσημβρινὰ διεσκέδαστο πνεύματα,
but so indeed the southern had-been-scattered winds
καὶ ἀκλύστως ἐντεῦθεν τὸ τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ κράτους σκάφος
and without-surge from-there the of-the Roman power vessel
ηὐθύνετο·
was-steered
ἐκ δὲ τῆς ἑσπέρας αὖθις κλύδων δεινὸς ἐπηγείρετο. ὁ γὰρ 62
from but the west again surge terrible rose-up the for
τῆς Ἀφρικῆς ἀμερμουμνῆς παμμεγέθεις ναῦς ἑξήκοντα
— of-Africa commander-of-the-faithful very-great ships sixty
τὸν ἀριθμὸν κατασκευασάμενος κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς
the number having-built against the Roman
ἐπικρατείας ἐξώρμησε, καὶ τὰ μεταξὺ ληϊζόμενος καὶ
dominion set-out and the(-places) between plundering and
πολλὰ σώματα λαμβάνων αἰχμάλωτα ἄχρι Κεφαληνίας
many bodies taking captive as-far-as Cephallenia
καὶ Ζακύνθου τῶν νήσων ἀφίκετο. ἅπερ ἀκηκοὼς ὁ
and Zakynthos the islands arrived which-things having-heard the

βασιλεὺς συντόμως πρὸς τὴν βοήθειαν διανίσταται, καὶ
emperor quickly for the help rises and
τὸν τῶν ναυτικῶν ἡγεμόνα δυνάμεων (Νάσαρ δὲ οὗτος ἦν)
the of-the naval leader forces Nasar but this-one was
μετὰ δυνάμεως ἐκπέμπει ἁδρᾶς, τριήρων τε καὶ διήρων
with force sends-out stout of-triremes both and of-biremes
καὶ ἄλλων νεῶν ταχυναυτουσῶν πλῆθος ἐξαρτυσάμενος.
and of-other ships fast-sailing multitude having-fitted-out
σύντομον δὲ τὸν ἔκπλουν ὁ Νάσαρ πεποιηκὼς καὶ
quick but the sailing-out — Nasar having-made and
αἰσίοις χρησάμενος πνεύμασι δι' ὀλίγου μὲν χρόνου τὴν
auspicious having-used winds through little indeed time —
Μεθώνην κατέλαβε, θᾶττον δὲ τὴν κατὰ τῶν πολεμίων
Methone reached more-quickly but the against the enemies
ἐπίθεσιν ἀπὸ τοιαύτης αἰτίας διεκωλύθη ποιήσασθαι· τῶν
attack from such cause was-prevented to-make of-the
γὰρ ἐρετῶν οὐκ ὀλίγοι πρὸς τὸν κίνδυνον ἀποδειλιάσαντες
for rowers not few at the danger having-lost-heart
κατ' ὀλίγους λαθραίως ἀπέφυγον, ὧν τῇ λειποταξίᾳ
by few secretly fled of-whom by-the desertion
τὸ προσῆκον τάχος ἀφαιρεθεισῶν τῶν νεῶν, μὴ ἐχουσῶν
the fitting speed having-been-deprived the ships not having
τὴν μετὰ ῥοθίου σὺν ὀξύτητι κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων ἐπέλασιν,
the with surge with keenness against the opponents onset
οὐκ ἔκρινε δεῖν παρωπλισμένοις οὕτως κατὰ τῶν
not he-judged it-to-be-needful ill-armed thus against the
δυσμενῶν ἀπελθεῖν. μηνύει δὲ τὸ συμβὰν διὰ ταχυδρόμου
hostile to-go reports but the happening through courier
τῷ βασιλεῖ. ὁ δὲ διὰ ταχείας ἀποστολῆς τῶν πρὸς
to-the emperor he but through swift dispatch of-the(-men) for
τοῦτο ἐπιτηδείων πάντας τοὺς λειποτάκτας ἐζώγρησε καὶ
this fit all the deserters took-alive and

ἐμφρούρους ἐποίησε. σκοπῶν δὲ ὅπως καὶ ὁμοφύλων
in-custody made considering but how both of-fellow-tribesmen
φόνου τὰς χεῖρας τηρήσῃ καθαρὰς καὶ τὸ προσῆκον
of-murder the hands he-may-keep pure and the fitting
ἐμποιήσῃ δέος τοῖς ὑπολοίποις τῶν ἐρετῶν, ὡς ἂν μὴ
he-may-instill fear in-the remaining of-the rowers so-that — not
καὶ ἄλλοις εἴη πρὸς μίμησιν ἡ τούτων κακία καὶ
also to-others may-be for imitation the their wickedness and
ἐθελοκακῶσιν οἱ πλεῖστοι καὶ ῥαστωνεύωνται, βουλὴν
may-be-willfully-remiss the most and may-take-it-easy counsel
βουλεύεται συνετήν. τῷ γὰρ τῆς βίγλης δρουγγαρίῳ
plans intelligent to-the for of-the Vigla droungarios
διακελεύεται ἀπὸ τῶν ἐν τῷ πραιτωρίῳ δεσμίων τε καὶ
he-orders from the in the praetorium prisoners both and
κακούργων, ὧν ἐκ τῶν νόμων κατεψήφιστο θάνατος,
evildoers for-whom from the laws had-been-voted death
τριάκοντα τὸν ἀριθμὸν ἔτι νυκτὸς οὔσης ἐξαγαγεῖν, καὶ
thirty the number still night being to-bring-out and
τούτων ἀσβόλῃ τὰ πρόσωπα χρίσαντα, καὶ τὰς ἐπὶ τοῦ
their with-soot the faces having-smeared and the on the
γενείου καὶ τῆς κεφαλῆς τρίχας ψιλώσαντα διὰ φλογός,
chin and the head hairs having-stripped through flame
περιελεῖν αὐτῶν τὸ γνώρισμα τῆς μορφῆς, ἐξασφαλίσασθαι
to-remove their the mark of-the form to-make-sure
δὲ τοῦ μηδένα τῶν ἁπάντων τολμῆσαι προσειπεῖν
but for-the no-one of-the all to-dare to-address
αὐτοὺς ἢ προσφθέγξασθαι, ἐπιτίμιον δὲ τῆς τόλμης
them or to-speak-to penalty but of-the daring
ὁρίσασθαι θάνατον, καὶ τούτους ὡς δῆθεν ἐξάρχους τῶν
to-fix death and these as forsooth ringleaders of-the
λειποτακτησάντων ἐκείνων πλωΐμων ἐν τῷ ἱπποδρόμῳ διὰ
having-deserted those sailors in the hippodrome through

μαστίγων ἐπεξελθεῖν, καὶ ἑτοίμως διὰ τῆς κατὰ τὴν πόλιν
whips to-go-through and readily through the in the city
ἀγορᾶς περιηγκωνισμένους διεξελθεῖν, εἶτα ποδοκάκαις
marketplace with-arms-bound-behind to-go-through then in-stocks
ἀσφαλισθέντας ἐκπεμφθῆναι πρὸς Πελοπόννησον, ὡς ἂν ἐν
having-been-secured to-be-sent-off to Peloponnese so-that — in
τῷ τόπῳ ὅθεν ἀποφυγεῖν ἐνομίζοντο, καὶ τὴν προσήκουσαν
the place whence to-have-fled they-were-thought also the fitting
τιμωρίαν προσδέξωνται. ὑπηρετήσασθαι δὲ πρὸς τοῦτο
punishment they-may-receive to-serve but for this
Ἰωάννης ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐπετράπη Πελοποννήσου, ὁ
John the general was-entrusted of-Peloponnese the(-one)
λεγόμενος Κρητικός· ὃς τῇ βασιλικῇ κελεύσει καθυπουργῶν
called Kretikos who the imperial order serving
ἰσαρίθμους τῶν ἀποσταλέντων δεσμίων ἐν Μεθώνῃ φούρκας
equal-in-number to-the sent prisoners in Methone gallows
στῆναι προσέταξε καὶ τοὺς ὡς ἐξάρχους τῆς φυγῆς
to-stand ordered and the(-men) as ringleaders of-the flight
πεμφθέντας ἀνεσκολόπισεν. ἅπερ ὁ Ῥωμαϊκὸς στόλος
sent impaled which-things the Roman fleet
ἀκούσας τε καὶ ἰδὼν ἐκείνους τε ὡς δειλοὺς καὶ ἀθλίους
having-heard both and having-seen those both as cowardly and wretched
ᾠκτείρησε καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπερρώσθη πρὸς τὰ δεινά, πᾶσαν
pitied and itself was-strengthened for the dangers all
ἀποθέμενος μαλακίαν τε καὶ τρυφήν, καὶ ἄγειν αὐτοὺς
having-put-off softness both and luxury and to-lead them
ταχέως πρὸς τοὺς ὑπεναντίους παρεκάλουν τὸν ἡγεμόνα.
quickly against the opponents begged the leader

63 Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς τὸ λεῖπον τῆς στρατείας ἀπὸ
in this but also he the lacking of-the army from
τῶν κατὰ Πελοπόννησον στρατιωτῶν καὶ Μαρδαϊτῶν
the in Peloponnese soldiers and Mardaites

ἀναπληρώσας, καὶ τὸν στρατηγὸν συνεργὸν προσλαβόμενος,
having-filled-up and the general as-fellow-worker having-taken-along
πρὸς ἐπίθεσιν εὐτρεπίζεται. τῶν δὲ Σαρακηνῶν ἤδη
for attack makes-ready of-the but Saracens already
πολλὴν δειλίαν τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ καταγνόντων στόλου διὰ
much cowardice of-the Roman having-condemned fleet because-of
τὸ δοκεῖν τὸν μεταξὺ χρόνον μάτην αὐτοῖς κατατρίβεσθαι,
the to-seem the intervening time vainly for-them to-be-wasted
καὶ ἐπ᾽ ἀδείας πολλῆς ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκείων ἐξερχομένων
and in freedom-from-fear much from the own going-out
νεῶν καὶ τὰς ὑποκειμένας λῃζομένων χώρας καὶ νήσους,
ships and the lying-below plundering lands and islands
ἐξαίφνης πλησίον αὐτῶν ἀφανῶς γεγονὼς ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
suddenly near them unseen having-come the of-the Romans
στρατὸς ναυτικός, τὸ σύνθημα δόντος τοῦ στρατηγοῦ,
army naval the signal having-given the general
ἐπιτίθεται τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀπροόπτως ἐν τῇ νυκτί. καὶ
attacks the enemies unexpectedly in the night and
μήτε συστῆναι μήτε πρὸς ἀλκὴν τραπῆναι σχόντες
neither to-stand-together nor to strength to-turn having-had
καιρὸν δυστυχῶς ἀπεσφάττοντο, καὶ αἱ τούτων ναῦς πυρὶ
time unfortunately were-slaughtered and the their ships with-fire
μετὰ τῶν ἐπιβατῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτοῖς κατεφλέγοντο.
with the marines and the(-men) with them were-burned
ὅσαι δὲ τὸν τοῦ πυρὸς κίνδυνον διέφυγον, ταύτας
as-many-as but the of-the fire danger escaped these
τῇ ἐν Μεθώνῃ τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησίᾳ φέρων ὁ Νάσαρ ὡς
to-the in Methone — of-god church bringing — Nasar as
χαριστήρια ἐδωρήσατο, καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν λαφύρων καὶ τῶν
thank-offerings gave and from the spoils and the
περιλειφθέντων σωμάτων ὠφεληθῆναι τὸν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν λαὸν
left-over bodies to-be-benefited the under him people

συνεχώρησεν. δηλοποιεῖ δὲ ταῦτα θᾶττον τῷ βασιλεῖ,
allowed makes-clear but these-things more-quickly to-the emperor
καὶ περὶ τοῦ τί χρὴ τὸ ἐντεῦθεν πράττειν καὶ
and about the what is-needful the(-time) from-here to-do and
ποῖ τραπέσθαι πυνθάνεται. ὃν ἐπὶ τοῖς πεπραγμένοις
whither to-turn inquires whom for the(-things) done
ἐπαινέσας ὁ βασιλεὺς προσωτέρω χωρεῖν ἐγκελεύεται.
having-praised the emperor farther to-go urges

64 Ἐπεὶ οὖν τοῖς προκατειργασμένοις πρόθυμος ἦν ὁ
since then by-the(-things) achieved-before eager was the
στρατός, διαπεραιοῦται πρὸς Σικελίαν καὶ Πάνορμον, καὶ
army crosses to Sicily and Palermo and
τὰς ἐνταῦθα πόλεις, ὅσαι τοῖς ἐκ Καρχηδόνος Ἀγαρηνοῖς
the there cities as-many-as to-the from Carthage Hagarenes
ἐτέλουν ὑπόφοροι, ἐπιὼν ἐληΐζετο· καὶ φορτηγῶν νεῶν καὶ
paid tributary coming-upon plundered and of-cargo ships and
σκαφῶν παμπολλῶν ἐκράτησεν, ὧν ὁ φόρτος ἔλαιόν τε
vessels very-many became-master of-which the cargo oil both
δαψιλὲς ἦν καὶ ἄλλα τῶν τιμιωτέρων πολλά. τοσοῦτον
abundant was and other-things of-the more-precious many so-much
δέ φασιν ἐπευωνηθῆναι τότε τὸ ἔλαιον ἐκ τῆς τοιαύτης
but they-say to-have-been-cheapened then the oil from the such
προσαγωγῆς ὥστε ὀβολοῦ τὴν λίτραν πιπράσκεσθαι.
importation that for-an-obol the pound to-be-sold

65 διαπεράσας δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὰ τῆς Ἰταλίας μέρη ὁ αὐτὸς
having-crossed but also to the — of-Italy parts the same
στόλος, καὶ ταῖς ὁπλιτικαῖς καὶ ἱππικαῖς τῶν Ῥωμαίων
fleet and with-the heavy-armed and cavalry of-the Romans
δυνάμεσιν ἑνωθείς, ὧν Προκόπιος ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως
forces having-united which Procopius the of-the emperor
ἡγεῖτο πρωτοβεστιάριος καὶ Λέων ὁ τῶν Θρᾳκῶν καὶ
led protovestiarios and Leo the of-the Thracians and

Μακεδόνων τότε στρατηγός, ὃν Ἀποστύππην ἐκάλουν,
Macedonians then general whom Apostyppes they-called
πολλὰ καὶ ἐπωφελῆ τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ κατεπράξατο·
many-things and beneficial for-the of-Romans rule accomplished
τόν τε γὰρ ἐξ Ἀφρικῆς αὖθις ἐξελθόντα στόλον ἐν τῇ
the both for from Africa again having-gone-out fleet in the
νήσῳ τῇ καλουμένῃ Στῆλαι ὁ αὐτὸς Νάσαρ κατεπολέμησε,
island the called Stelai the same Nasar defeated
καὶ τὰ ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν κατεχόμενα κάστρα ἔν τε
and the by the Hagarenes held fortresses in both
Καλαβρίᾳ καὶ Λαγοβαρδίᾳ, πλὴν ὀλίγων πάνυ, πάντα
Calabria and Langobardia except few very all
τῆς βαρβαρικῆς χειρὸς ἠλευθέρωσε καὶ πρὸς τὴν
from-the barbarian hand freed and to the
Ῥωμαίων ἐξουσίαν μετήγαγε. καὶ οὕτω μὲν ὁ ναυτικὸς
of-Romans authority transferred and so indeed the naval
στρατὸς κρείττων δόλου καὶ φθόνου φανεὶς καὶ
army stronger than-guile and envy having-appeared and
νεμέσεως μετὰ πολλῶν λαφύρων καὶ νικητικῶν στεφάνων
nemesis with many spoils and victorious crowns
ἐπανῆλθε πρὸς βασιλέα, εὐφροσύνης ἐμπλήσας πᾶν τὸ
returned to emperor with-joy having-filled all the
πολίτευμα, καὶ βασιλεῖ πολλὰς ἀφορμὰς παρασχὼν τῆς
citizen-body and to-the-emperor many occasions having-provided of-the
πρὸς θεὸν εὐχαριστίας καὶ ἀνθομολογήσεως.
to god thanksgiving and confession

Leo Apostyppes, quarreling with Procopius, leaves him unaided in battle, and Procopius dies; Leo takes Taranto, but Basil exiles him. His sons then kill Baianos, his accuser, and die resisting arrest; Leo, half-blinded and maimed, is banished. A spy reports Basil's ready fleet, and the Arabs abandon their expedition. Adrian dawdles at Monemvasia while Syracuse falls, demons at Helos telling shepherds first; he flees to Hagia Sophia but is punished. Nikephoros Phokas retakes Amantea and other towns. Basil reads histories and saints' lives, seeks out holy men, keeps the four virtues, forbids rich and poor to wrong each other, and is often taught in dreams.

66 Αἱ πεζικαὶ δὲ δυνάμεις οὐ πάντῃ τὸν φθόνον διέφυγον,
the land but forces not wholly the envy escaped
ἀλλ' ἔργα μὲν ἀνδρικὰ καὶ λαμπρὰ κατειργάσαντο,
but deeds indeed manly and brilliant accomplished
ἐξ ἔριδος δὲ καὶ φιλονεικίας κατ' αὐτὸν τὸν ἀγῶνα
from strife but and rivalry in very the contest
συμπεσούσης ἀπώλεσαν τὸν μείζονα στρατηγόν. τοῦ γὰρ
having-befallen lost the greater general — for
Λέοντος διενεχθέντος πρὸς τὸν Προκόπιον, συμβαλόντων
of-Leo having-quarreled with — Procopius having-engaged
δὲ ὅμως τοῖς πολεμίοις, συνέβη τὸν μὲν Ἀποστύππην
but nevertheless the enemies it-happened — indeed Apostyppes
μετὰ τῶν Θρᾳκῶν τε καὶ Μακεδόνων κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν
with the Thracians both and Macedonians on the right
μέρος ἀγωνιζόμενον κρατεῖν τῶν ἐχθρῶν καὶ πολὺν
part fighting to-prevail-over the enemies and much
φόνον ἐργάζεσθαι, τὸν δὲ Προκόπιον μετὰ τῶν Σκλαβηνῶν
slaughter to-work — but Procopius with the Slavs
τε καὶ δυτικῶν κατὰ τὸ ἕτερον μέρος ἀντιταττόμενον
both and westerners on the other part drawn-up
ὑπὸ τῶν ἐναντίων πιέζεσθαι. μὴ πεμφθείσης δὲ παρὰ τοῦ
by the opponents to-be-pressed not having-been-sent but from the

συστρατηγοῦ βοηθείας πρὸς τὸ πονοῦν διὰ τὴν
fellow-general help to the(-part) suffering because-of the
προηγησαμένην φιλονεικίαν, ἐτράπη καθαρῶς τὸ κατὰ τὸν
preceding rivalry was-routed clean the under —
Προκόπιον μέρος, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκεῖνος ἐσφάγη κατὰ τὴν
Procopius part and he that-one was-slain in the
δίωξιν, τοῦ ἵππου συμπεσόντος αὐτῷ. τοιοῦτον δὲ τέλος τῆς
pursuit of-the horse having-fallen-with him such but end of-the
μάχης ἐκείνης λαβούσης, θέλων τι καὶ ἕτερον λαμπρὸν
battle that having-received wishing something also other brilliant
ὁ Λέων ἐργάσασθαι, ὡς ἂν τὸ ἐκ τῆς ἔριδος συσκιάσῃ
— Leo to-work so-that — the from the strife he-might-overshadow
συμβάν, τό τε οἰκεῖον στράτευμα λαβὼν καὶ τοὺς
having-happened the both own army having-taken and the(-men)
ἐκ τῆς φυγῆς διασωθέντας τῶν ταττομένων ὑπὸ
from the flight having-been-saved of-the(-men) ranked under
τὸν Προκόπιον συμπεριλαβὼν τὸ κάστρον κατεπολέμησε
— Procopius having-taken-in-also the fortress attacked
Τάραντος, ἔτι κατεχόμενον ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν, καὶ
of-Taranto still held by the Hagarenes and
τοῦτο κατὰ κράτος εἶλε, καὶ πάντα τὸν ἐν αὐτῷ
it by force took and all the in it
λαὸν ἐξηνδραποδίσατο· ἐξ ὧν τό τε στρατιωτικὸν
people enslaved from which-things the both soldiery
ἀποχρώντως ὠφεληθῆναι συνεχώρησε καὶ βασιλεῖ συχνὰ
sufficiently to-be-benefited he-allowed and to-the-emperor many
προσήγαγε λάφυρα. ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἐπεῖδε τούτοις ἡδέως ὁ
brought spoils but not looked-upon these-things gladly the
βασιλεύς, οὐδὲ ὡς ἀριστέα τὸν Λέοντα ἀντημείψατο,
emperor nor as bravest — Leo requited
ἀλλ᾽ ἐπεὶ διερευνώμενος εὕρισκεν ἐκ τῆς συμπεσούσης
but since searching he-found from the having-befallen

φιλονεικίας κατ᾽ αὐτὴν τοῦ πολέμου συμβολὴν ἀπολωλέναι
rivalry in very of-the war engagement to-have-perished
τὸν ὁμοστράτηγον, τῆς τε ἀρχῆς παρέλυσε καὶ ἐξόριστον
the fellow-general from-the both command he-removed and exiled
ἐν τῷ ἰδίῳ οἴκῳ ἀπέστειλε πλησίον Κοτυαείου τυγχάνοντι.
to the own house sent near Kotyaeion being

67 Τοιαύταις δὲ καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα τύχαις ὁ Ἀποστύππης
such but also after these-things fortunes — Apostyppes
ἐχρήσατο. συμφρονήσαντες γὰρ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ὅ τε
met having-conspired for against him the both
πρωτοστράτωρ Βαϊάνος καὶ Χαμάρετος ὁ κουβικουλάριος
protostrator Baianos and Chamaretos the cubicularius
καὶ πρῶτος τῶν οἰκειοτάτων αὐτῷ γραφὴν κατὰ τοῦ ἰδίου
and first of-the most-intimate to-him writing against the own
δεσπότου πρὸς βασιλέα συνέθεσαν, δι᾽ ἧς ἐδηλοῦτο
master to emperor composed through which was-shown
καὶ ὁ τοῦ πρωτοβεστιαρίου Προκοπίου θάνατος γνώμῃ
both the of-the protovestiarios Procopius death by-the-will
τοῦ κυρίου αὐτῶν γεγονὼς καὶ καθοσιώσεως ἔγκλημα
of-the lord their having-happened and of-treason charge
καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ βαρέα καὶ δυσχερῆ. ἦν ὁ Χαμάρετος
and other some heavy and grievous-things which — Chamaretos
λαβὼν καὶ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν εἰσελθὼν τῷ βασιλεῖ
having-taken and to the reigning-city having-entered to-the emperor
ἐπιδέδωκεν. μαθόντες δὲ τοῦτο οἱ τοῦ Ἀποστύππη υἱοί,
handed having-learned but this the — of-Apostyppes sons
ὅ τε Βάρδας καὶ ὁ Δαβίδ, αὐτόχειρες τοῦ Βαϊάνου
— both Bardas and — David murderers — of-Baianos
καθίστανται, τοῖς ξίφεσιν αὐτὸν ἀνηλεῶς κατακόψαντες.
become with-the swords him pitilessly having-cut-down
διὰ δὲ τὸ τοιοῦτον τόλμημα καὶ τὸ ἐκ βασιλέως δέος
because-of but the such daring-deed and the from emperor fear

ὥρμησαν μετὰ τοῦ πατρὸς πρὸς Συρίαν φυγεῖν. ἀκούσας
they-set-out with the father to Syria to-flee having-heard
δὲ ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς σὺν τάχει πολλῷ Βαρτζαπέδονα
but these-things the emperor with speed much Bartzapedon
τὸν μαγκλαβίτην ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸ κατασχεῖν αὐτοὺς
the manglabites sent for the to-seize them
καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀγαγεῖν. οὓς ἤδη πρὸς Καππαδοκίαν
and to him to-bring whom already at Cappadocia
κατέλαβε, τὴν πρὸς Συρίαν ὁδὸν συντόνως ἐλαύνοντας.
he-overtook the to Syria road vigorously driving
πειραθεὶς οὖν αὐτοὺς κατὰ τὸ πρόσταγμα τὸ βασιλικὸν
having-tried then them according-to the order the imperial
κατασχεῖν, ἐκείνων δὲ ἀντιστάντων καὶ ἀμυνομένων εἰς
to-seize of-them but having-resisted and defending to
δύναμιν, συνέβη κατὰ τὴν τοιαύτην ἀψιμαχίαν καὶ στάσιν
power it-happened in the such skirmish and fight
σφαγῆναι τοὺς δύο τοῦ Ἀποστύππη υἱούς, αὐτὸν δὲ
to-be-slain the two — of-Apostyppes sons him but
ληφθῆναι καὶ δέσμιον ἀχθῆναι πρὸς βασιλέα κατὰ τὰς
to-be-taken and bound to-be-brought to emperor at the
ἐν Ἱερείᾳ βασιλικὰς οἰκίας τὸ τηνικαῦτα τυγχάνοντα·
in Hiereia imperial houses — at-that-time being
ὃς τῇ κρίσει Μανουὴλ τοῦ μαγίστρου βασιλικῇ κελεύσει
who to-the judgment of-Manuel the magistros by-imperial order
ὑποπεσὼν καὶ τὸν ἕνα τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐκκοπείς,
having-fallen-under and the one of-the eyes having-been-gouged
ἀφαιρεθεὶς δὲ καὶ τῶν χειρῶν τὴν μίαν διά τε τὴν
having-been-deprived but also of-the hands the one because-of both the
ἔνδειξιν τὴν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ καὶ διὰ τὴν πεῖραν τῆς πρὸς
evidence the against him and because-of the attempt of-the to
τοὺς πολεμίους φυγῆς, τὸ λοιπὸν ἐν Μεσημβρίᾳ ἐξόριστος
the enemies flight the rest in Mesembria exiled

κατεγήρασε. καὶ τὰ μὲν κατὰ τὸν Ἀποστύππην,
grew-old and the(-things) indeed concerning — Apostyppes
οὐδὲ ἄλλως ὄντα χρηστόν, τοιοῦτον τέλος ἐδέξατο.
not-even otherwise being good such end received
68 Ἐν ὅσῳ δὲ τὰ κατὰ τὴν ἑσπέραν διὰ τῶν
in as-much but the(-things) in the west through the
ὑποστρατήγων τῷ βασιλεῖ κατεπράττετο, οἱ ἐκ μεσημβρίας
subordinate-generals for-the emperor were-being-done the from south
ἀναπνεύσαντες Ἄραβες ἀργεῖν τε καὶ σχολάζειν καὶ
having-breathed-again Arabs to-be-idle both and to-be-at-leisure and
ῥαθυμοῦν νομίσαντες ἀνεθάρρησαν, καὶ τῶν κατὰ θάλασσαν
to-be-indolent having-thought took-courage-again and of-the at sea
ἀνθάπτεσθαι πραγμάτων πάλιν διέγνωσαν, καὶ δὴ κατά
to-take-hold-of affairs again resolved and indeed in
τε τὴν Αἴγυπτον καὶ τὰς ἐν Συρίᾳ παραθαλασσίους
both — Egypt and the in Syria coastal
πόλεις ναῦς τεκτηνάμενοι κατὰ τῆς ὑποφόρου Ῥωμαίοις
cities ships having-built against the tributary to-Romans
γῆς καὶ θαλάσσης ἐκστρατεῦσαι διενοοῦντο. κρίναντες
land and sea to-campaign intended having-judged
δὲ δεῖν διὰ κατασκόπων πρότερον τὰ βασιλέως
but it-to-be-needful through spies first the of-emperor
πράγματα κατιδεῖν, τὸν ἐποψόμενον ἕκαστα καὶ πρὸς
affairs to-observe the(-man) going-to-oversee each-thing and to
αὐτοὺς ἀπαγγελοῦντα, Ῥωμαϊκῇ στολῇ καὶ γλώσσῃ
them going-to-report Roman with-dress and language
χρώμενον, ἐξαπέστειλαν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ταῖς περὶ τοῦ
using sent-out the but emperor with-the about the
κοινοῦ φροντίσιν ἀεὶ ἀγρυπνῶν καὶ τὰ δέοντα
common-weal cares always lying-awake and the needful-things
προπαρασκευαζόμενος, ἐπεὶ μηδὲ τὰ ἐν Συρίᾳ ναυπηγούμενα
preparing-beforehand since not-even the in Syria being-built

πλοῖα τοῦτον διέλαθε, πλειόνων τριήρων καὶ διήρων
ships him escaped-notice of-more triremes and biremes
κατασκευὴν ἐποιήσατο, καὶ τὰς ναυτικὰς δυνάμεις κατὰ
construction made and the naval forces at
τὴν βασιλίδα συναγαγὼν ἐκαραδόκει τὸ μέλλον. καὶ τέως
the queen-city having-gathered awaited the future and meanwhile
μέν, ὡς ἂν μὴ σχολάζων ὁ ναυτικὸς ὄχλος ἀτακτότερος
indeed so-that — not being-at-leisure the naval crowd more-disorderly
γένοιτο, ἐν τῇ ἀνοικοδομῇ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν βασίλειον αὐλὴν
might-become in the rebuilding of-the in the imperial court
ἐγειρομένου τότε ναοῦ εἰς ὄνομα τοῦ σωτῆρος ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ
being-raised then church in name of-the savior our Jesus
Χριστοῦ καὶ τῶν ἀρχιστρατήγων καὶ Ἠλιοὺ τοῦ Θεσβίτου
Christ and of-the archangels and of-Elijah the Tishbite
διωρίσατο αὐτοὺς ὑπουργεῖν, ὅτε δὲ τῶν ὁρίων Συρίας
decreed them to-serve when but from-the borders of-Syria
ὁ ἐκεῖθεν στόλος ὑπερκύπτων φανῇ, ἀποσταλῆναι καὶ
the from-there fleet peeping-over may-appear to-be-sent also
τούτους πρὸς τὴν ἐκείνων ἀντιπαράταξιν. ἐλθὼν οὖν
these to the their opposing-line having-come then
ὁ ἀπὸ Συρίας κατάσκοπος, καὶ τό τε πλῆθος ἰδὼν
the from Syria spy and the both multitude having-seen
τῶν νεῶν καὶ τὴν δύναμιν ὡς ἑτοίμη πάρεστι πρὸς τὴν
of-the ships and the force how ready it-is-present for the
ἔκπεμψιν, καὶ πάντα καταμαθών τε καὶ στοχασάμενος,
sending-out and all-things having-learned both and having-conjectured
ἀπαγγέλλει τοῖς ἀποστείλασιν, οἳ παρ᾽ ἐλπίδα τὸ
reports to-the(-ones) having-sent who beyond hope the
ἐμπαράσκευον βασιλέως ἀκούσαντες, τότε μὲν πτήξαντες
preparedness of-emperor having-heard then indeed having-cowered
τὴν ἡσυχίαν ἠγάπησαν καὶ τὴν πρὸς τὸν ἔκπλουν σπουδὴν
the quiet were-content-with and the for the sailing-out zeal

διελύσαντο, ἔμενε δὲ ὅμως κατὰ τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἡ
dissolved remained but nevertheless at the reigning-city the
ναυτικὴ πληθὺς εἰς τὸ εἰρημένον ἔργον ἀσχολουμένη.
naval multitude in the said work occupied
69 Οἱ δὲ ἐν Καρχηδόνι βάρβαροι διὰ τὰς προγεγενημένας
the but in Carthage barbarians because-of the previous
ἥττας δείσαντες μὴ πρὸς τὴν αὐτῶν ἤδη πρὸς τὸ ἑξῆς
defeats having-feared lest to the their-own already for the next
διαπερᾶσαι ὁ στόλος ὁ Ῥωμαϊκὸς πειρασθῇ, καὶ διὰ
to-cross the fleet the Roman may-try and because-of
τοῦτο ναῦς ἱκανὰς καὶ αὐτοὶ τεκτηνάμενοι, ἐπεὶ τοῦ ἦρος
this ships sufficient also themselves having-built since the spring
διεληλυθότος οὐδεμίαν ἐκ βασιλέως δύναμιν κατελθοῦσαν
having-passed no from emperor force having-come-down
ἐπύθοντο, ὑποτοπήσαντες πρὸς ἄλλοις πολέμοις ἄσχολον
they-learned having-suspected with other wars occupied
τυγχάνειν τὸν βασιλέως στρατὸν ἐκστρατεύεσθαι κατὰ
to-be the of-emperor army to-campaign against
Σικελίας ἐθάρρησαν, καὶ πρὸς τὴν ταύτης ἐλθόντες
Sicily dared and to the its having-come
μητρόπολιν, τὰς Συρακούσας φημί, ταύτην ἐπολιόρκουν
metropolis — Syracuse I-mean it besieged
καὶ περὶ αὐτὴν ἐληΐζοντο καὶ κατεδῄουν τὴν χώραν καὶ τὰ
and about it plundered and ravaged the land and the
προάστεια. τοῦ δὲ στρατηγοῦ τῆς Σικελίας δῆλα ταῦτα
suburbs of-the but general — of-Sicily clear these-things
τῷ βασιλεῖ καταστήσαντος, εὐθέως ἡ κατὰ Συρίας
to-the emperor having-made straightway the against Syria
εὐτρεπισθεῖσα δύναμις πρὸς Σικελίαν ἐκπέμπεται, Ἀδριανόν
made-ready force to Sicily is-sent-out Adrian
τινα ναύαρχον ἔχουσα· οὗτος γὰρ ἔτυχε τότε τῆς ναυτικῆς

δυνάμεως ἐξηγούμενος. ὃς ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλίδος ἐξορμισάμενος,
force leading who from the queen-city having-set-sail
πνευμάτων δὲ μὴ εὐμοιρήσας ἐπιτηδείων καὶ δεξιῶν,
of-winds but not having-been-fortunate-in suitable and favorable
μόλις κατῆλθεν ἄχρι Πελοποννήσου, ἐν Μονεμβασίᾳ δὲ ἐν
scarcely came-down as-far-as Peloponnese in Monemvasia but in
τῷ λιμένι τῷ καλουμένῳ Ἱέρακος προσορμίσας τὰς ναῦς
the harbor the called of-Hierax having-anchored the ships
ἐπίφορον πνεῦμα ἀνέμενε, ῥαθυμότερος, ὡς ἔοικεν, ὢν
favorable wind awaited more-indolent as it-seems being
καὶ μὴ ἔχων ζέουσαν τὴν ψυχήν, ὥστε καὶ πρὸς ἐναντία
and not having boiling the soul so-as both against contrary
παραβάλλεσθαι πνεύματα καὶ δι᾽ εἰρεσίας ἐν ταῖς διὰ
to-venture winds and through rowing in the through
μέσου γαλήναις πρὸς τὸ προκείμενον κατεπείγεσθαι.
middle calms toward the(-goal) set-before to-press-on
ἐπὶ πολὺ δὲ χρονοτριβοῦντος αὐτοῦ κατὰ τὸν εἰρημένον 70
for long but delaying he at the said
λιμένα, καὶ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν σφοδρότερον τῇ πολιορκίᾳ
harbor and the Hagarenes more-vehemently on-the siege
ἐπικειμένων καὶ πᾶσαν μηχανὴν κινούντων καὶ σπευδόντων
pressing and every engine moving and hastening
πρὸ τοῦ ἐπιστῆναι τοῖς πολιορκουμένοις βοήθειαν
before the to-arrive for-the(-ones) besieged help
ἀνύσαι τὸ σπουδαζόμενον, συνέβη τὴν πόλιν κατὰ
to-accomplish the(-thing) striven-for it-happened the city by
κράτος ἁλῶναι καὶ τῶν ἀντιταττομένων φόνον γενέσθαι
force to-be-taken and of-the(-men) opposing slaughter to-happen
πολύν, ἐξανδραποδισθῆναι δὲ πᾶσαν τὴν κατὰ τὸ ἄστυ
much to-be-enslaved but all the in the town
πληθὺν καὶ τὸν ἐν αὐτῇ πλοῦτον λάφυρα τοῖς πολεμίοις
multitude and the in it wealth spoils for-the enemies

γενέσθαι, κατασκαφῆναι δὲ τὴν πόλιν καὶ πυρὶ δοθῆναι
to-become to-be-razed but the city and to-fire to-be-given
τοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ θείους ναούς, καὶ ἐρείπιον χρηματίσαι
the in it divine churches and ruin to-become
τὴν μέχρι τότε πόλιν περιφανῆ καὶ λαμπρὰν καὶ
the until then city illustrious and brilliant and
πολλὰς πολλάκις Ἑλληνικάς τε καὶ βαρβαρικὰς δυνάμεις
many often Greek both and barbarian forces
ἐπ᾽ αὐτὴν ἐλθούσας καταβαλοῦσαν, τοῦ δὲ συμβάντος
against it having-come having-overthrown of-the but happening
αἴσθησις ἀπὸ τοιαύτης αἰτίας γίνεται τῷ Ἀδριανῷ. τόπος
perception from such cause comes — to-Adrian place
τις ἔστι κατὰ Πελοπόννησον οὐ μακρὰν Μονεμβασίας
some is in Peloponnese not far from-Monemvasia
διεστηκώς, καθ᾽ ἣν ὁ Ῥωμαϊκὸς στόλος ηὐλίζετο, Ἕλος
distant at which the Roman fleet was-encamped Helos
προσαγορευόμενος, ἀπὸ τῆς περὶ αὐτὸν δασείας καὶ
called from the about it thick and
συνηρεφοῦς ὕλης τὸ ὄνομα κληρωσάμενος. ἐν τούτῳ τοίνυν
overshadowed wood the name having-obtained in this therefore
δαιμονία τις ἐφήδρευε δύναμις, ἣ καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε
demonic some lay-in-wait power which also by the there
νεμόντων ποιμένων πολλάκις ἐθεραπεύετο, ὡς ἂν ἀσινῆ
grazing shepherds often was-worshiped so-that — unharmed
δῆθεν ἐκ τούτων τὰ νεμόμενα διαφυλάττοιτο θρέμματα.
forsooth by these the grazing might-be-kept flocks
ὧν τινῶν δαιμόνων οἱονεὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους διαλεγομένων
of-which some demons as-it-were with one-another conversing
καὶ ἐπιχαιρόντων ἤκουσαν οἱ νομεῖς ὡς ἑάλω τῇ χθὲς
and rejoicing heard the herdsmen that was-taken on-the yesterday
ἡμέρᾳ Συράκουσα καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ πάντα κατέσκαπται
day Syracuse and the(-things) in it all have-been-razed

καὶ πυρὶ παραδέδοται. ἅπερ πρός τινας τῶν νομέων
and to-fire have-been-handed-over which-things to some of-the herdsmen
ἐξηγουμένων ἔφθασε καὶ πρὸς τὸν Ἀδριανὸν τὸ διήγημα. ὁ δὲ
telling reached also to — Adrian the story he but
τοὺς ποιμένας αὐτοὺς μετακαλεσάμενος καὶ πολυπραγμόνως
the shepherds themselves having-summoned and curiously
ἀναζητήσας, εὗρε τοῖς ἀκουσθεῖσι συμβαίνοντα καὶ τὰ
having-inquired found with-the(-things) heard agreeing also the
παρὰ τῶν ποιμένων λεγόμενα. βουληθεὶς δὲ καὶ αὐτήκοος
from the shepherds said having-wished but also ear-witness
γενέσθαι, καὶ πρὸς τῷ τόπῳ μετὰ τῶν ποιμένων γενόμενος,
to-become and at the place with the shepherds having-come
καὶ δι᾽ αὐτῶν τοῖς δαίμοσι προσαγαγὼν τὴν ἐρώτησιν
and through them to-the demons having-put the question
περὶ τοῦ πότε καταλήψεται Συρακούσας, ἤκουσεν ὅτι ἤδη
about the when he-will-reach Syracuse heard that already
ἑάλω ἡ Συράκουσα. λύπῃ δὲ καὶ ἀμηχανίᾳ περισχεθεὶς
was-taken — Syracuse with-grief but and helplessness having-been-seized
ὅμως πάλιν ἀνέφερε, μὴ χρῆναι πιστεύειν οἰόμενος τὰ
nevertheless again he-recovered not to-be-needful to-believe thinking the
παρὰ τῶν πονηρῶν δαιμόνων λεγόμενα ὡς οὐκ οὔσης
by the wicked demons said as not being
αὐτοῖς τῆς προγνώσεως, ἀγνοῶν ὅτι τοῦτο οὐχὶ πρόγνωσις
for-them the foreknowledge not-knowing that this not foreknowledge
ἦν ἀλλὰ τῶν ἀποβάντων καὶ τελεσθέντων δήλωσις,
was but of-the(-things) having-turned-out and accomplished disclosure
ἐκ τοῦ λεπτομεροῦς καὶ ταχυκινήτου τὴν ἐξ ἀνθρωπίνης
from the subtlety and swift-movement the from human
ἐπιδημίας ἀπαγγελίαν προφθανόντων αὐτῶν. διαπιστοῦντος
arrival report anticipating they disbelieving
δ᾽ οὖν ὅμως αὐτοῦ, μετὰ δεκάτην ἡμέραν τινὲς τῶν
but then nevertheless he after tenth day some of-the(-men)

διαδράντων τὸν ὄλεθρον, ἀπὸ τῶν κατὰ Πελοπόννησον
having-escaped the destruction from the in Peloponnese
Μαρδαϊτῶν καὶ Ταξατῶν τυγχάνοντες, αὐτάγγελοι τῶν
Mardaites and Taxatai being self-messengers of-the
ὀλεθρίων διηγημάτων γεγόνασιν. ἀφ' ὧν τὴν πληροφορίαν
deadly tales became from whom the full-assurance
δεξάμενος ὁ Ἀδριανός, ὡς εἶχε τάχους, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὰ πρὸς
having-received — Adrian as he-was of-speed since also the for
τὴν κάθοδον ἐναντιούμενα πνεύματα ἐπιτήδεια πρὸς τὴν
the going-down opposing winds favorable for the
ἄνοδον καθεστήκεισαν, καταλαμβάνει μετὰ τοῦ στόλου
going-up had-become reaches with the fleet
τὴν βασιλεύουσαν, καὶ τῷ μεγάλῳ τοῦ θεοῦ τεμένει, ἐν
the reigning-city and to-the great — of-god precinct in
ᾧ τὸ τῆς αὐτοῦ σοφίας ἐπικεκήρυκται ὄνομα, ὡς ἱκέτης
which the of-the his wisdom has-been-proclaimed name as suppliant
προσέφυγεν. ἀλλὰ τοῦ μεγέθους τῆς συμφορᾶς τὰ βασιλέως
fled but the greatness of-the misfortune the of-emperor
σπλάγχνα δριμέως διασπαράξαντος καὶ πρὸς ἀμετρίαν
bowels sharply having-torn and to excess
σχεδὸν θυμοῦ καὶ λύπης προαγαγόντος, οὐδ' αὐτὸς ὁ
almost of-anger and grief having-led not-even itself the
θεῖος ναός, οὐδ' ὁ ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ πρεσβεύων ἀρχιερεὺς τῆς
divine church nor the for him interceding high-priest from-the
παντελοῦς τιμωρίας ἐξείλκυσε τὸν Ἀδριανόν, ἀλλὰ τῆς
complete punishment drew-out — Adrian but from-the
ἐσχάτης μὲν καὶ προσηκούσης τυχὸν ἐλυτρώσατο, τῆς
extreme indeed and fitting perhaps redeemed from-the
μετρίας δὲ καὶ πρὸς σωφρονισμὸν τῶν ἄλλων ἐπαγομένης
moderate but also for chastening of-the others inflicted
καθάπαξ αὐτὸν ἀθωῶσαι οὐκ ἴσχυσεν. οὕτως ἐν τοῖς
once-for-all him to-acquit not was-able so in the

ἰδίοις μέτριον ἔχων καὶ κεκολασμένον ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν
own-affairs moderate having and chastened the emperor the
θυμὸν ἐν τοῖς κοινοῖς οὐ πάνυ τι ἐμετρίαζεν.
anger in the common-affairs not very at-all moderated
Οὕτω τοίνυν τῶν κατὰ τὴν ἑσπέραν πάλιν κρατυνομένων 71
so therefore the in the west again being-strengthened
ἐχθρῶν, καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς παρούσης εὐτυχίας καὶ κατὰ τῶν
enemies and from the present good-fortune also against the
προσεχεστέρων ἐκστρατεῦσαι προσδοκωμένων, ἀποστέλλεται
nearer to-campaign expected is-sent
Στέφανος ὁ καὶ Μαξέντιος προσαγορευόμενος, ὃς ἐκ
Stephen the(-one) also Maxentios called who from
Καππαδοκῶν, στρατηγὸς τῶν ἐν Λαγοβαρδίᾳ δυνάμεων
Cappadocians general of-the in Langobardia forces
μετὰ Θρᾳκῶν καὶ Μακεδόνων καὶ ἐπιλέκτων Χαρσιανιτῶν
with Thracians and Macedonians and chosen Charsianites
καὶ Καππαδοκῶν. ὃς τὴν ἀποδειχθεῖσαν τῆς ἀρχῆς χώραν
and Cappadocians who the appointed of-the command land
καταλαβών, καὶ τὴν πόλιν Ἀμαντίας ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν
having-reached and the city of-Amantea by the Saracens
κατεχομένην ἀφελέσθαι πειραθεὶς ἐξ αὐτῶν, καὶ διὰ τὴν
held to-take-away having-tried from them and because-of the
προσοῦσαν αὐτῷ μέλλησιν καὶ ῥαθυμίαν, ὡς ἔοικε, μᾶλλον
belonging to-him delay and indolence as it-seems rather
δὲ ἀνανδρίαν τε καὶ τρυφήν, μηδὲν ἄξιον λόγου καὶ τῆς
but cowardice both and luxury nothing worthy of-account and of-the
περὶ αὐτὸν δυνάμεως καταπράξασθαι δυνηθείς, παραλύεται
about him power to-accomplish having-been-able is-removed
τῆς ἀρχῆς, καὶ ἀντ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἀποστέλλεται Νικηφόρος
from-the command and instead-of him is-sent Nikephoros
ὁ κατὰ τὸν Φωκᾶν προσαγορευόμενος, ἀνὴρ ἐπιμελής
the(-one) by — Phokas called man careful

τε καὶ ἄγρυπνος καὶ κατὰ χεῖρά τε καὶ βουλὴν γενναῖός τε
both and wakeful and in hand both and counsel noble both
καὶ συνετός, προσεπαγαγὼν καὶ πλείονα δύναμιν ἀπὸ τῶν
and intelligent having-brought-in-also also more force from the
κατὰ τὴν ἀνατολὴν ἀρχόντων καὶ τὸν Διακονίτζιν ἐκεῖνον,
in the east rulers and — Diakonitzes that
ὃς ὑπηρέτης ποτὲ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν Τεφρικὴν Χρυσόχειρος
who servant once of-the at — Tephrike Chrysocheir
ἦν, στῖφος τῶν ἀπὸ Μάνεντος τὴν θρησκείαν ἑλκόντων
was band of-the(-men) from Manes the worship drawing
προσεπαγόμενον. ἑνωθεὶς οὖν ὁ Νικηφόρος ταῖς μετὰ
bringing-in-also having-united then — Nikephoros with-the with
Στεφάνου δυνάμεσι πολλὰ καὶ συνέσεως ἔργα καὶ πολεμικῆς
Stephen forces many both of-intelligence deeds and of-military
ἀνδρίας καὶ γενναιότητος ἀπεδείξατο. τήν τε γὰρ πόλιν
courage and nobility displayed the both for city
Ἀμαντίας εὐθὺς ἐχειρώσατο, τοὺς ἀντιταξαμένους ἐχθροὺς
of-Amantea straightway subdued the drawn-up-against enemies
φόνῳ πολλῷ τρεψάμενος, καὶ τὸ κάστρον ὃ Τρόπας
with-slaughter much having-routed and the fortress which Tropai
κατωνομάζετο καὶ τὸ τῆς ἁγίας Σευηρίνης πρὸς τὴν
was-named and the(-fortress) of-the holy Severina to the
προτέραν δεσποτείαν τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἀρχῆς μετηγάγετο,
former lordship of-the Roman rule brought-over
καὶ μάχαις ἄλλαις καὶ παρατάξεσι τοὺς ἐκ τῆς Ἄγαρ
and in-battles other and in-lines the(-men) from — Hagar
νενίκηκε, καὶ τοῖς ἐξ αὐτῶν λαφύροις τὸν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν
conquered and with-the from them spoils the under him
στρατὸν ἱκανῆς ὠφελείας ἐνέπλησε. καὶ ταῦτα μέν,
army with-sufficient benefit filled and these-things indeed
ἕως ὁ ἐν βασιλεῦσιν ἀοίδιμος ἔζη Βασίλειος, ὁ ἀνὴρ
while the among emperors celebrated lived Basil the man

κατεπράξατο· τὰ δὲ λείποντα προσέθηκεν ὕστερον ἐπὶ
accomplished the(-things) but remaining he-added later under
τοῦ πραοτάτου καὶ σοφωτάτου βασιλέως ἁπάντων Λέοντος
the most-gentle and most-wise emperor of-all Leo
τοῦ ἐκείνου υἱοῦ. εἰ δὲ μὴ συνημμέναι τοῖς χρόνοις ἀλλήλαις
the of-that-one son if but not joined in-the times with-one-another
αἱ μάχαι ἐτύγχανον, ὥσπερ οὖν ἡ διήγησις, ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως
the battles happened as indeed the narrative but nevertheless
ἐπεὶ ὁ ἑκάστης πράξεως ἀκριβὴς ἠγνοεῖτο χρόνος, διὰ
since the of-each deed exact was-unknown time because-of
τοῦτο μίαν κατὰ τὴν ἐπαγγελίαν τάξιν ἐδέξατο ἅπαντα.
this one in the announcement order received all-things
Καὶ τὰ μὲν ἐν πολέμοις καταπραχθέντα διά τε αὐτοῦ
and the(-things) indeed in wars accomplished through both him
καὶ διὰ τῶν ὑποστρατήγων Βασιλείῳ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὅσα
and through the subordinate-generals for-Basil the emperor as-many-as
εἰς ἐμὴν ἔφθασεν ἐλθεῖν ἀκοήν, διά τε τῆς ξηρᾶς καὶ ὑγρᾶς
to my reached to-come hearing through both the dry and wet
κατὰ ἀνατολὴν καὶ δύσιν, τοιαῦτα καὶ τοσαῦτα ἐτύγχανεν.
in east and west such and so-great happened-to-be
Χρὴ δὲ αὖθις τὸν λόγον ἀναδραμεῖν ἐπὶ τὰς πράξεις 72
it-is-needful but again the discourse to-run-back to the deeds
ἐκείνας ὧν αὐτουργὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐχρημάτιζεν, καὶ
those of-which doer-himself the emperor was and
διηγήσασθαι ὅπως ἀεὶ τοῖς κοινοῖς ἐνασχολούμενος
to-narrate how always with-the common being-occupied
πράγμασι καὶ πρὸς τὴν κοσμικὴν ἐπιμέλειαν τεταμένην
affairs and toward the worldly care stretched
ἔχων διηνεκῶς τὴν διάνοιαν ἄλλοτε μὲν τὰ πρὸς
having continually the mind at-one-time indeed the(-things) for
τὸ δέον τῇ ἔμφρονι μεταχειρίσει κατηύθυνεν, ἄλλοτε
the needful with-the sensible management he-directed at-another

δὲ τὴν ἀκοὴν ὑπετίθει καὶ ἐπιμελῶς ἠκροᾶτο ἱστορικῶν
but the hearing he-applied and carefully listened-to historical
τε διηγημάτων καὶ πολιτικῶν παραγγελμάτων καὶ
both narratives and political precepts and
ἠθικῶν παιδευμάτων καὶ πατρικῶν τε καὶ πνευματικῶν
moral teachings and paternal both and spiritual
νουθετημάτων καὶ εἰσηγήσεων, ἄλλοτε δὲ καὶ τὴν χεῖρα
admonitions and instructions at-another but also the hand
πρὸς τὸν γραφικὸν ἐξεπαίδευε καὶ κατηύθυνε κάλαμον, καὶ
for the writing trained and directed reed and
νῦν μὲν στρατηγῶν τε καὶ αὐτοκρατόρων ἀνδρῶν ἤθη
now indeed of-generals both and of-emperors men characters
καὶ βίους καὶ μεταχειρίσεις πραγμάτων καὶ πολεμικοὺς
and lives and managements of-affairs and military
ἀγῶνας διηρευνᾶτο, καὶ ἀνασκοπῶν, τὰ κράτιστα τούτων
contests he-searched-out and examining the best of-them
καὶ ἐπαινούμενα ἐκλεγόμενος, εἰς οἰκείας πράξεις ἐσπούδαζε
and praised choosing into own deeds he-strove
τὴν μίμησιν κατατίθεσθαι, νῦν δὲ τῶν ἐν τῇ κατὰ
the imitation to-deposit now but of-the in the according-to
θεὸν ἀρίστῃ πολιτείᾳ διαπρεψάντων ἀνδρῶν τοὺς βίους
god best way-of-life having-been-distinguished men the lives
ἐπιμελῶς καταμανθάνων καὶ τὰς ἀλόγους ὁρμὰς τῆς
carefully learning also the irrational impulses of-the
ψυχῆς περιέκοπτεν, αὐτὸν ἑαυτοῦ δεικνύειν ἐθέλων πρὸ
soul he-cut-back himself of-himself to-show wishing before
τῶν ἐκτὸς αὐτοκράτορα, καὶ πολλὴν ἐντεῦθεν ἐκαρποῦτο
the(-things) outside emperor and much from-here he-reaped
ὠφέλειαν. διὸ καὶ τοὺς ἔτι τῷ βίῳ περιόντας τῶν
benefit wherefore also the(-men) still in-the life surviving of-the
μακαρίων ἀνδρῶν, τῶν τὴν ἄϋλον πολιτείαν διαζώντων
blessed men of-the(-ones) the immaterial way-of-life living-through

ἐν τῇ ὑλώδει ταύτῃ ζωῇ καὶ πολίτευμα μεταθεμένων ἐν
in the material this life and citizenship having-transferred in
οὐρανοῖς, γνωρίζειν καὶ ἐντυγχάνειν καὶ ὁμιλεῖν ἐποιεῖτο
heavens to-know and to-meet and to-converse-with he-made
περὶ πολλοῦ καὶ ἐν μεγάλῃ φροντίδι ἐτίθετο. ὑπὸ δὲ
of much and in great care he-placed by but
τῆς ἄγαν εὐλαβείας οὐ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν αὐτοὺς μετεστέλλετο,
the excessive piety not to himself them he-summoned
ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲν τὸν βασιλικὸν ὄγκον τιθέμενος ἐβάδιζε πρὸς
but nothing the imperial dignity accounting he-walked to
αὐτούς, καὶ τῶν εὐχῶν αὐτῶν μετελάγχανε, καί πως
them and of-the prayers their partook and somehow
ταῖς ἐξ αὐτῶν εὐλογίαις ἐστεφανοῦτο καὶ πρὸς τὸν
with-the from them blessings was-crowned and in the
θεῖον ἐστηρίζετο φόβον καὶ πρὸς τὰ τοῦ θεοῦ δικαιώματα
divine was-established fear and toward the — of-god ordinances
κατηυθύνετο. καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου διηνεκῶς ἐνδιαιτωμένην παρ᾽
was-directed and from this continually dwelling with
αὐτῷ τὴν τῶν ἀρετῶν ὑπῆρχεν ὁρᾶν τετρακτύν, καὶ
him the of-the virtues it-was-possible to-see foursome and
ἐθαυμάζετο αὐτοῦ μετὰ τῆς ἀνδρίας τὸ φρόνημα καὶ μετὰ
was-admired his with the courage the prudence and with
τῆς σωφροσύνης τὸ δίκαιον, καὶ πάντα εἶχε τὴν πρὸς τὸ
the temperance the justice and all-things had the toward the
κρεῖττον ἐπίδοσιν. καὶ ἐδόκει αὖθις ὁ βίος ἐπὶ τῆς ἀρχαίας
better advance and seemed again the life to the ancient
γενέσθαι εὐταξίας καὶ καταστάσεως, αὐτοῦ τε διηνεκῆ
to-come good-order and settlement he both continual
κεκτημένου πρόνοιαν ὑπὲρ τοῦ εὐσταθεῖν τὸ ὑπήκοον καὶ
having forethought for the to-be-stable the subjects and
ὑπὸ μηδενὸς μηδένα ἐπηρεάζεσθαι, καὶ τῶν εἰς τὰς
by no-one anyone to-be-abused and of-the(-men) to the

ἀρχὰς προβαλλομένων ἑκάστοτε μιμεῖσθαι σπουδαζόντων
offices put-forward each-time to-imitate striving
τὴν δεσποτικὴν καὶ περὶ τὸ θεῖον εὐλάβειαν καὶ πρὸς τοὺς
the of-the-master also about the divine piety and toward the
ἱερεῖς καὶ μονάζοντας αἰδῶ καὶ τὸν πρὸς τοὺς πένητας
priests and monks reverence and the toward the poor
ἔλεον καὶ τὴν πρὸς πάντας δικαιοσύνην καὶ ἰσότητα.
pity and the toward all justice and equality
ἐκείνου γὰρ ἦν ἐντολὴ καὶ παράγγελμα τὸ μήτε τὸν ἥττονα
his for was command and precept the neither the weaker
ὑπὸ τοῦ μείζονος καταδυναστεύεσθαι μήτε τὸν ὑπερέχοντα
by the greater to-be-oppressed nor the superior
ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐνδεοῦς λοιδορεῖσθαι ἢ διαβάλλεσθαι, ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνόν
by the needy to-be-reviled or to-be-slandered but that-one
τε ὡς ἀδελφὸν ἀγκαλίζεσθαι καὶ περιέπειν τὸν πένητα,
both as brother to-embrace and to-cherish the poor
καὶ τοῦτον ὡς κοινὸν πατέρα καὶ σωτῆρα τὸν ὑπερέχοντα
and this-one as common father and savior the superior
εὐλογεῖν καὶ ἀδόλως αὐτῷ τὰ ἀγαθὰ παρὰ τοῦ κυρίου
to-bless and guilelessly for-him the good-things from the lord
ἐπεύχεσθαι. οὕτω δὲ τὸν βίον αὐτοῦ ῥυθμίζων καὶ τῆς θείας
to-pray-for so but the life his regulating and on-the divine
προνοίας τὴν οἰκείαν ἐξαρτῶν πολλὰ τῶν δεόντων κατὰ
providence the own hanging many of-the needful-things in
τοὺς ὕπνους ἐναργῶς ἐδιδάσκετο· καὶ ὅταν ἔμφροντις ἐπὶ
the sleeps clearly he-was-taught and when anxious to
τὴν κοίτην ᾔει καὶ περί τινος τῶν κοινῶν ἐσφάδαζε
the bed he-went and about some of-the common-affairs was-agitated
μεριμνῶν, πολλάκις ὄναρ ἑώρα τὸ ἐκβησόμενον καὶ
worrying often in-a-dream he-saw the(-thing) going-to-happen and
ἐπ' ἐλπίδος ἐγίνετο ἀγαθῆς καὶ τὸν τῆς ψυχῆς κατέστελλε
in hope became good and the of-the soul calmed

θόρυβον. καὶ οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν τοὺς λειτουργίαν ὥσπερ
turmoil and nothing marvelous the(-ones) service as
τινὰ τὴν ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς ἐξουσίαν ἀνύοντας καὶ τὴν θείαν τῷ
some the on the earth authority accomplishing and the divine in-the
ὄντι διακονίαν ἐκτελοῦντας ἐν τοῖς κάτω περὶ ἡμᾶς, καὶ
reality ministry performing in the(-things) below around us and
πρὸς τὸ κρεῖττον ἀφωμοιωμένους παράδειγμα τὸν δυνατὸν
to the better having-been-made-like model the possible
τρόπον, ὑπὸ τῆς προνοίας παραθαρρύνεσθαι καὶ πρὸς τὸ
way by the providence to-be-encouraged and toward the
συμφέρον ἰθύνεσθαι καὶ τὰ μέλλοντα προδιδάσκεσθαι.
advantageous to-be-directed and the future-things to-be-taught-beforehand

73–84 · GIFTS REMEMBERED AND THE CHURCHES RESTORED

Basil rewards those who served him in his lower fortune: he richly endows the monastery of St. Diomedes and honors Danelis's son. Danelis, carried from the Peloponnese on a litter, brings slaves, eunuchs, and fabrics, is called the emperor's mother, and gives him land; later she makes Leo her heir, and after her death three thousand of her slaves are freed to settle Langobardia. Then the churches: Hagia Sophia's western arch, the Holy Apostles, the Pege, the Sigma, St. Mokios, St. Andrew, St. Romanos, and many more are repaired or rebuilt, and in the palace Basil builds the New Church, gilded and jeweled, a bride for Christ.

Ἀλλ' ὅπερ ἡ ῥύμη τοῦ λόγου παρήνεγκε φέρουσα καὶ κατὰ 73
but what the rush of-the discourse carried-aside carrying and at
τὸν οἰκεῖον ῥηθῆναι καιρὸν οὐκ ἐπέτρεψεν, ἐνταῦθα ἤδη
the own to-be-told time not allowed here already
μετὰ τὸ σχολάσαι τῶν πολεμικῶν ἀγώνων τὸν λόγον
after the to-have-rested from-the military contests the discourse
καὶ τῶν πολεμικῶν ἀφηγήσεων καλὸν ἀναγράψασθαι.
and from-the military narratives good to-record

λέγω δὲ τὸ περὶ τὴν μνήμην καὶ ἀμοιβὴν τῶν ἐν
I-mean but the(-matter) about the memory and requital of-the(-ones) in
τῇ ἐλάττονι ἔτι τύχῃ ὄντα θεραπευσάντων τὸν βασιλέα,
the lesser still fortune being having-served the emperor
καὶ τὸ μὴ ἐπιλαθέσθαι αὐτῶν αἰτησαμένων ἐν τῇ τῆς
and the not to-forget them having-asked in the of-the
τύχης λαμπρότητι. οὗτοι δὲ ἦσαν ὁ τοῦ ἁγίου
fortune brilliance these but were the(-man) of-the holy
Διομήδους τῆς μονῆς προεστὼς καὶ ἡ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου
Diomedes of-the monastery presiding and the from Peloponnese
γυνὴ Δανηλίς, οἷς τῶν ἐλπισθέντων ἀπέδωκε
woman Danelis to-whom than-the(-things) hoped-for he-gave
μείζονα. τόν τε γὰρ μέγαν ἐν μάρτυρσι Διομήδην καὶ
greater the both for great among martyrs Diomedes both
ἀναθημάτων πολυτελῶν ἀναθέσει καὶ βιβλίων ἱκανῶν
of-offerings costly with-dedication and of-books sufficient
παροχῇ καὶ κειμηλίων ἄλλων καὶ λαμπρῶν ἐσθημάτων
with-provision and of-treasures other and of-splendid garments
προσαγωγῇ μεγαλοπρεπῶς ἐφάνη κοσμῶν, καὶ τὴν ἐπ᾽
with-bringing magnificently appeared adorning and the in
ὀνόματι τούτου μονὴν καὶ κτημάτων ἐπιδόσει μεγάλων
name his monastery both of-estates with-gift great
τε καὶ προσόδων ἱκανῶν ἀφθόνῳ χορηγίᾳ καὶ δαψιλείᾳ
both and of-revenues sufficient with-unstinting supply and abundance
πρὸς τὸ εὔπορον ἤγαγε, καὶ τὸ πανταχόθεν ἀνενδεὲς
to the prosperity led and the from-everywhere self-sufficiency
αὐτῇ ἐμνηστεύσατο, καὶ κτισμάτων πολυτελέσιν οἰκοδομαῖς
for-it he-wooed and of-buildings with-costly constructions
κατελάμπρυνε, καὶ παντοίως ὑπερῆρε καὶ κατεπλούτισεν.
made-brilliant and in-every-way exalted and enriched

τὸν δὲ τῆς Δανηλίδος υἱὸν ἅμα τῷ γενέσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς 74
the but — of-Danelis son at-once with-the to-become of-the rule
ἐγκρατὴς μεταπεμψάμενος τῷ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου
master having-summoned with-the of-the protospatharius
ἐτίμησεν ἀξιώματι καὶ τῆς πρὸς αὐτὸν παρρησίας
honored dignity and of-the toward him frankness
μετέδωκε διὰ τὴν φθάσασαν κοινωνίαν τῆς πνευματικῆς
gave-a-share because-of the former fellowship of-the spiritual
ἀδελφότητος. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἡ μήτηρ αὐτοῦ, καίπερ σχεδὸν
brotherhood since but also the mother his although almost
γραῦς ἤδη τυγχάνειν νομιζομένη, πόθον ἔσχε καὶ μεγάλην
old-woman already to-be thought longing had and great
ἔφεσιν ὥστε τὸν βασιλέα ἰδεῖν καὶ ἀπολαῦσαί τινος καὶ
desire so-as the emperor to-see and to-enjoy some also
αὐτὴ περισσοτέρας ἐν τῷ γήρᾳ τιμῆς διὰ τὴν ἐκ τοῦ
she more in the old-age honor because-of the from the
εὐλαβοῦς μοναχοῦ προαγόρευσιν καὶ διὰ τὴν ἄλλην
devout monk prediction and because-of the other
εὐεργεσίαν τε καὶ δεξίωσιν, προστάξαντος τοῦ βασιλέως
benefaction both and welcome having-ordered the emperor
ἐντίμως πάνυ καὶ μετὰ μεγάλης δορυφορίας καὶ ὑπηρεσίας
honorably very and with great escort and service
πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἀνελήλυθεν. ὡς γὰρ οὔτε ὀχήματι
to the reigning-city she-came-up since for neither on-carriage
ἔποχος οὔτε ἵππῳ γενέσθαι ἦν δυνατή, τυχὸν δὲ καὶ
mounted nor on-horse to-be she-was able perhaps but also
τρυφῶσα διὰ τὴν ἄφθονον τοῦ πλούτου περιουσίαν, ἐπὶ
living-luxuriously because-of the abundant of-the wealth surplus on
σκίμποδος αὐτὴν ἀνακλίνασα, καὶ τριακοσίους τῶν οἰκετῶν
litter herself having-reclined and three-hundred of-the servants
ἀπολέξασα νέους καὶ ἰσχυροὺς τὸ σῶμα, βαστάζοντας
having-picked young and strong the body carrying

αὐτὴν ἀνιέναι ἐκελεύσατο, καὶ οὕτως ὑπὸ δέκα τὸ λέχος
her to-go-up ordered and so by ten the litter
αἰρόντων καὶ ἐκ διαδοχῆς ἀλλήλους ὑπαλλασσόντων τὴν ἐκ
lifting and in succession one-another relieving the from
Πελοποννήσου μέχρι τῆς βασιλευούσης ταύτης τῶν πόλεων
Peloponnese as-far-as the reigning this of-the cities
πορείαν διήνυσεν. δοχῆς δὲ γεγονυίας ἐν τῇ Μαγναύρᾳ,
journey completed reception but having-happened in the Magnaura
καθὼς ἔστιν ἔθος τοῖς βασιλεῦσι Ῥωμαίων ποιεῖν, ὅταν
as it-is custom for-the emperors of-Romans to-do when
τινὰ τῶν ἐφ' ἡγεμονίας ἔθνους τινὸς περιφανῶν καὶ
some of-the(-ones) in leadership of-nation some illustrious and
μεγάλων εἰσδέχεσθαι μέλλωσιν, εἰσήχθη καὶ αὐτὴ πρὸς
great to-receive they-are-about was-brought-in also she to
βασιλέα ἐντίμως τε καὶ λαμπρῶς, εἰσαγαγοῦσα καὶ δῶρα
emperor honorably both and brilliantly having-brought-in also gifts
πολυτελῆ, οἷα τῶν ἐθνικῶν βασιλέων οὐδεὶς σχεδὸν μέχρι
costly such-as of-the foreign kings no-one almost until
καὶ τότε πρὸς βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων εἰσήγαγεν. ἦσαν γὰρ
even then to emperor of-Romans brought-in there-were for
οἰκετικὰ μὲν πρόσωπα πεντακόσια, ἐξ ὧν ὑπῆρχον
household indeed persons five-hundred from whom were
εὐειδεῖς ἐντομίαι τὸν ἀριθμὸν ἑκατόν. ᾔδει γάρ, ὡς ἔοικεν,
handsome eunuchs the number hundred knew for as it-seems
ἡ πλουτοκράτωρ ἐκείνη γραῦς ὅτι ἀεὶ τυγχάνει χώρα
the wealth-ruling that old-woman that always there-happens-to-be place
τοῖς σπάδουσι τούτοις εἰς τὰ βασίλεια, καὶ ἐν τούτοις
for-the eunuchs these in the palace and in these
ὑπὲρ τὰς μυίας ἐν ἔαρος ὥρᾳ κατὰ προβάτων σηκὸν
more-than the flies in of-spring season at of-sheep fold
ἀναστρέφονται· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τούτους προηυτρεπίσατο,
they-move-about and because-of this these she-prepared-beforehand

ὡς ἂν δορυφόρους αὐτοὺς εὑρίσκοι τυχὸν διὰ τὴν
so-that — bodyguards them she-might-find perhaps because-of the
πάλαι δουλείαν, ὅταν εἰς τὰ βασίλεια εἴσεισιν. ἦσαν
old slavery when into the palace she-enters there-were
δὲ καὶ γυναῖκες σκιάστριαι ἑκατόν, καὶ Σιδόνια ἔργα
but also women weavers hundred and Sidonian works
παμποίκιλα, ἃ δὴ νῦν παραφθαρέντος τυχὸν τοῦ
very-varied which indeed now having-been-corrupted perhaps the
ὀνόματος τῇ τῶν πολλῶν ἀμαθίᾳ λέγεται σενδαῖς,
name by-the of-the many ignorance are-called sendai
ἑκατόν, λινομαλοτάρια ἑκατὸν (καλὸν γὰρ ἐπὶ τούτοις
hundred linen-woolens hundred good for in these-things
κοινολεκτεῖν), ἀμάλια λινᾶ ψιλὰ διακόσια, καὶ ἕτερα ὑπὲρ
to-speak-commonly amalia linen bare two-hundred and others beyond
τὰ τοῦ ἀραχνίου νήματα εἰς λεπτότητα, ὧν ἕκαστον εἰς
the of-the spider threads in fineness of-which each in
καλάμου κόνδυλον ἐνεβέβλητο, καὶ αὐτὰ ἑκατόν, καὶ σκεύη
of-reed joint had-been-put and these hundred and vessels
πολυτελῆ ἐξ ἀργύρου καὶ χρυσοῦ ἱκανὰ καὶ διάφορα.
costly from silver and gold sufficient and various
ἀποδεχθεῖσα δὲ δεξιῶς καὶ φιλοφρονηθεῖσα μεγαλοπρεπῶς 75
having-been-received but graciously and having-been-entertained magnificently
ἀναλόγως τῆς προαιρέσεως καὶ εὐγενείας αὐτῆς, καὶ
in-proportion-to the purpose and nobility her and
μήτηρ καλεῖσθαι βασιλέως ἀξιωθεῖσα, καὶ πολλῶν
mother to-be-called of-emperor having-been-deemed-worthy and many
μετασχοῦσα βασιλικῶν δεξιώσεων καὶ τιμῶν, ἐγεγήθει
having-partaken-of imperial receptions and honors rejoiced
τε καὶ ἐγάννυτο καὶ ἔκπλεως τὰς ἀμοιβάς, μᾶλλον δὲ
both and exulted and in-full the requitals rather but
καὶ ὑπεραιρούσας κατὰ πολὺ διωμολόγει λαβεῖν. διὸ
even exceeding by much confessed to-have-received wherefore

δὴ καὶ προσέθηκεν ἔτι μεγαλοψύχως ἐπὶ τοῖς εἰρημένοις
indeed also she-added still magnanimously to the said
δώροις οὐ μικρὸν καὶ τῆς Πελοποννήσου μέρος, ὅπερ ὡς
gifts not small also — of-Peloponnese part which as
ἴδιον κτῆμα τυγχάνον αὐτῆς φιλοδώρως τότε τῷ υἱῷ καὶ
own possession being hers generously then to-the son and
βασιλεῖ ἐχαρίζετο. διατρίψασα δὲ κατὰ τὴν μεγαλόπολιν
emperor she-gave having-spent-time but in the great-city
ταύτην ἐφ' ὅσον αὐτῇ φιλοτιμιῶν τε καὶ ἀπολαύσεων,
this for as-much-as to-her of-honors both and enjoyments
αὖθις πρὸς τὴν οἰκείαν χώραν ἀνθυπενόστησεν ὥσπερ
again to the own land she-returned as
τις δέσποινα τῶν ἐκεῖθεν βασίλισσα, πολλῷ πλείονας
some mistress of-the(-people) there queen much more
τῶν προτέρων καὶ μείζονας καρπουμένη τιμάς. ὃν δὲ
than-the former and greater reaping honors in-what but
τρόπον τὴν ἄνοδον ἐποιήσατο, τὸν αὐτὸν καὶ τὴν κάθοδον.
way the going-up she-made the same also the going-down
76 κατὰ δὲ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκεῖνον καὶ ὁ περικαλλὴς οὗτος ναὸς
at but the time that also the very-beautiful this church
καὶ περίοπτος ᾠκοδομεῖτο ὃν νέαν βασιλικὴν ἐκκλησίαν
and conspicuous was-being-built which new imperial church
λέγειν εἰώθαμεν, ὃς ἐπ' ὀνόματι τοῦ σωτῆρος ἡμῶν
to-call we-are-accustomed which in name of-the savior our
Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ καὶ Μιχαὴλ τοῦ πρώτου τῶν ἀγγέλων καὶ
Jesus Christ and of-Michael the first of-the angels and
Ἠλιοὺ τοῦ Θεσβίτου ἠγείρετο. λαβοῦσα δὲ μέτρα τοῦ
of-Elijah the Tishbite was-raised having-taken but measurements of-the
ἔνδον τούτου χωρήματος ἡ γυνὴ εἰργάσατο καὶ ἀπέστειλε
inside this space the woman made and sent
νακοτάπητας μεγάλους, τοὺς παρ' ἡμῖν ἀπὸ τῆς εὐχῆς τὸ
carpets-of-nap great the(-ones) among us from the prayer the

ἐπώνυμον φέροντας, ὑφ᾽ ὧν ἅπαν τὸ ἔδαφος, ἐκ διαφόρων
name bearing by which all the floor from various
ἐντίμων λίθων, ψηφίδων δίκην ἐνηρμοσμένων, πρὸς
precious stones of-mosaic-pebbles in-fashion fitted-in with
ἀλλήλους συντεθειμένων, ποικιλίαν καὶ κάλλος ταώνων
one-another put-together variety and beauty of-peacocks
μιμούμενον, καλύπτεσθαι ἔμελλε, θαύματος ἀξίους μεγέθει
imitating to-be-covered was-going of-wonder worthy in-size
καὶ ὡραιότητι. ἀλλὰ καὶ καθ᾽ ἕκαστον χρόνον, ἕως ἔζη
and beauty but also in each year while lived
ὁ βασιλεύς, οὐκ ἐλάττονα τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτῆς εἰσαχθέντων
the emperor not less than-the by her brought-in
ἀπέστελλεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔτυχε μακρόβιον γενέσθαι αὐτὴν καὶ
she-sent since but it-happened long-lived to-be her and
πλέον τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως ζωῆς τὴν ἐκείνης ἐπεκταθῆναι
more-than the of-the emperor life the her to-be-extended
ζωήν, ζῶντος δὲ ἔτι καὶ τοῦ προορατικοῦ ἐκείνου μοναχοῦ
life living but still also the foreseeing that monk
ἤκουσε παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ὅτι μετὰ δεύτερον χρόνον μέλλει
she-heard from him that after second year he-is-going
ἀπαίρειν τοῦ ζῆν, ἐπεθύμησε καὶ τὸν ἐκείνου υἱὸν Λέοντα,
to-depart from-the living she-desired also the his son Leo
ἤδη τὴν αὐτοκράτορα λαβόντα ἀρχήν, ἀνελθοῦσα ἰδεῖν,
already the sole having-received rule having-gone-up to-see
καὶ πάλιν κατὰ τὸν τρόπον τὸν πρότερον ὑπὸ νεανίσκων
and again in the way the former by young-men
ἐκκρίτων αἰρομένη τὸ τοσοῦτον διάστημα τῆς ὁδοῦ διήνυσεν
chosen lifted the so-great distance of-the road completed
εὐμαρῶς καὶ ἀβαρῶς. ἰδοῦσα δὲ τὸν σοφώτατον καὶ πρᾶον
easily and lightly having-seen but the most-wise and gentle
βασιλέα Λέοντα, καὶ θαυμαστὰ δῶρα καὶ πρὸς τοῦτον
emperor Leo and marvelous gifts also to him

εἰσαγαγοῦσα καὶ κληρονόμον αὐτὸν τῆς οἰκείας ποιησαμένη
having-brought-in and heir him of-the own having-made
ὑπάρξεως (ἤδη γὰρ ὁ ταύτης υἱὸς Ἰωάννης ἐτύγχανε τὸν
property already for the her son John happened the
βίον ἀπολιπών), αἰτησαμένη δὲ καὶ βασιλικὸν ἀποσταλῆναι
life having-left having-asked but also imperial to-be-sent
τὸν ἀπογράψασθαι καὶ παραλαβεῖν ὀφείλοντα τὴν
the(-man) to-register and to-take-over obliged the
περιουσίαν αὐτῆς, ἀπῆρεν αὖθις συνταξαμένη τῷ χρηστῷ
property her she-departed again having-taken-leave from-the good
βασιλεῖ ἐπὶ τὸ τῆς πατρίδος θρεψάμενον ἔδαφος, ὡς
emperor to the of-the fatherland having-nourished(-her) soil so-that
ἂν ἐν τούτῳ καὶ τὸν τῆς σαρκὸς ἀπόθηται χοῦν. καὶ
— in this also the of-the flesh she-may-put-off dust and
δὴ κατελθοῦσα μετὰ μικρὸν ἐτελεύτησεν.
indeed having-gone-down after little she-died

77 ὁ δὲ πρωτοσπαθάριος Ζηνόβιος, ὃς ἦν ὁρισθεὶς καὶ
the but protospatharius Zenobios who was appointed and
ἀποσταλεὶς πρὸς τὸ πάντα τὰ παρὰ τῆς γραὸς αἰτηθέντα
sent for the all the by the old-woman asked
καὶ διατυπωθέντα ἀποπληρῶσαι, εἰς τὸ κάστρον Ναυπάκτου
and set-down to-fulfill to the fortress of-Naupaktos
ἤδη καταλαβὼν ἀνέμαθε παρὰ Δανιὴλ τοῦ ἐκγόνου αὐτῆς
already having-reached learned from Daniel the grandson her
τὴν πρὸς τὸν ἐκεῖθεν βίον ἐκδημίαν αὐτῆς. ἀφικόμενος δὲ
the toward the there life departure her having-arrived but
εἰς τὸν οἶκον αὐτῆς καὶ τὸ ἴσον τῆς διατάξεως αὐτῆς ἐπὶ
at the house her and the copy of-the testament her into
χεῖρας λαβὼν κατὰ τὴν ἐκείνης βούλησιν καὶ διάταξιν
hands having-taken according-to the her wish and disposition
τὰ πάντα διῴκησεν. εὗρε δὲ καὶ χρυσὸν ἐν νομίσμασι
the all-things administered he-found but also gold in coins

πάμπολυν καὶ ἄλλην περιουσίαν ἔν τε ἀργυρώμασι καὶ
very-much and other property in both silver-plate and
χρυσώμασιν ἐσθῆτί τε καὶ χαλκῷ καὶ ἀνδραπόδοις καὶ
gold-plate clothing both and bronze and slaves and
κτήνεσι, πάντα ἰδιωτικὸν ὑπερβαίνουσαν πλοῦτον, μᾶλλον
cattle all private exceeding wealth rather
δὲ καὶ τυραννικῶν ὀλίγον καταδεέστερον. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ
but even than-royal little inferior since but the
οἰκετικὰ ταύτης ἀνδράποδα εἰς πλῆθος ἄπειρον ἦν, κελεύσει
household her slaves to multitude boundless were by-order
βασιλικῇ ἐκ τούτων ὥσπερ εἰς ἀποικίαν ἐπ᾽ ἐλευθερίᾳ
imperial from these as to colony in freedom
ἐστάλησαν εἰς τὸ θέμα Λαγοβαρδίας τρισχίλια σώματα.
were-sent to the theme of-Langobardia three-thousand bodies
διενεμήθη δὲ καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ταύτης κτήματα καὶ χρήματα
were-distributed but also the other her possessions and moneys
καὶ ψυχάρια ὡς ἐκείνη κατὰ τὴν διάταξιν αὐτῆς διωρίσατο,
and soul-gifts as she in the testament her decreed
καὶ κατελείφθη καὶ τῷ κληρονόμῳ ταύτης βασιλεῖ εἰς
and was-left also to-the heir her emperor for
ἴδιον κλῆρον τῶν ἄλλων χωρὶς προάστεια ὀγδοήκοντα.
own lot of-the others without estates eighty
Ταῦτα εἰ καὶ πολὺ τοῖς χρόνοις τὰ μὲν ἐτύγχανε
these-things if even far in-the times the(-things) indeed were
πρότερα τῶν ἱστορουμένων κατὰ τὸ προκείμενον μέρος
earlier than-the narrated in the present part
πραγμάτων τε καὶ καιρῶν, τὰ δὲ οὐκ ὀλίγον ὕστερον,
affairs both and times the(-things) but not little later
καὶ οὐδὲ σφόδρα ἀναγκαῖον ἐδόκει τῇ ἱστορίᾳ, ἀλλ᾽
and not-even very necessary seemed for-the history but
ὅμως εἰς χάριν τῆς εἰρημένης γραὸς καὶ ἔνδειξιν τοῦ
nevertheless for favor of-the said old-woman and display of-the

πλούτου καὶ τῆς εὐγενείας αὐτῆς καὶ τῆς προαιρέσεως
wealth and of-the nobility her and of-the purpose
ἐνταῦθα κείσθω κατὰ παρέκβασιν.
here let-them-lie by digression

78 Ὁ δὲ φιλόχριστος Βασίλειος ὁ βασιλεὺς μεταξὺ τῶν
the but Christ-loving Basil the emperor between the
πολεμικῶν ἀγώνων, οὓς διὰ τῶν ὑπὸ χεῖρα πολλάκις
military contests which through the(-men) under hand often
ὥσπερ ἀγωνοθετῶν πρὸς τὸ δέον κατηύθυνε, πολλοὺς
as presiding-over-the-games to the needful be-directed many
τῶν ἱερῶν καὶ θείων ναῶν, ἐκ τῶν προγεγονότων
of-the holy and divine churches from the previous
διαρραγέντας σεισμῶν καὶ ἢ καταβληθέντας παντελῶς
broken earthquakes and either thrown-down altogether
ἢ πτῶσιν ἀπὸ τῶν ῥηγμάτων σύντομον ὑπομεῖναι
or fall from the cracks speedy to-undergo
δηλοῦντας, ἐπιμελείᾳ τε διηνεκεῖ καὶ τῶν πρὸς
showing by-care both continual and of-the(-things) for
τὴν χρείαν ἐπιτηδείων ἀφθόνῳ χορηγίᾳ καὶ παροχῇ
the need suitable with-unstinting supply and provision
τοὺς μὲν τοῦ πτώματος ἤγειρε, τῇ ἀσφαλείᾳ καὶ
the(-ones) indeed from-the fall he-raised to-the safety also
κάλλος προσθείς, τῶν δὲ τὸ ἀσθενὲς ἐνισχύσας
beauty having-added of-the(-ones) but the weakness having-strengthened
διὰ τῆς τῶν δεόντων ἐπιβολῆς καὶ ἐπανορθώσεως τοῦ
through the of-the needful-things application and restoration of-the
μὴ καταρρυῆναι ἀλλὰ πρὸς ἀκμὴν αὖθις ἐπανελθεῖν καὶ
not to-collapse but to prime again to-return and
νεότητα ἐγένετο αἴτιος. δηλωτέον δὲ καὶ καθ' ἕκαστα.
youth became cause it-must-be-shown but also in detail

Τοῦ τε γὰρ περιωνύμου καὶ θείου ναοῦ ὃς τὸ τῆς μεγάλης 79
of-the both for renowned and divine church which the of-the great
τοῦ θεοῦ σοφίας κεκλήρωται ὄνομα, τὴν πρὸς δύσιν ἀψῖδα,
— of-god wisdom has-obtained name the toward west arch
τὴν μεγάλην τε καὶ μετέωρον, ἱκανῶς διαρραγεῖσαν καὶ
the great both and lofty considerably cracked and
πτῶσιν οὐκ εἰς μακρὰν ἀπειλοῦσαν αὐτὸς ἐμπειρίᾳ τεχνιτῶν
fall not at long threatening he by-skill of-craftsmen
περισφίγξας καὶ ἀνανεωσάμενος ἀσφαλῆ καὶ μόνιμον
having-bound-round and having-renewed safe and lasting
ἀπειργάσατο· καθ' ἣν καὶ τὴν τῆς θεομήτορος εἰκόνα τὸν
made in which also the of-the mother-of-god icon the
ἄσπορον υἱὸν ἐπωλένιον φέρουσαν ἀνιστόρησε, καὶ τοὺς
seedless son in-her-arms carrying he-depicted and the
τῶν ἀποστόλων κορυφαίους Πέτρον καὶ Παῦλον ἑκατέρωθεν
of-the apostles chiefs Peter and Paul on-each-side
ἔστησε. καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ δὲ ῥήγματα ταύτης ἐν κτίσμασί τε
he-set and the other too cracks of-it in buildings both
καὶ δαπανήμασι φιλοτιμότατα διωρθώσατο. οὐ μόνον γὰρ
and expenditures most-generously he-repaired not only for
τοὺς σαθρωθέντας τῶν τοίχων ἐπηνωρθώσατο, ἀλλὰ καὶ
the rotten of-the walls he-restored but also
τὴν τῶν προσόδων ἐλάττωσιν ταῖς παρ' ἑαυτοῦ ἐπιδόσεσιν
the of-the revenues diminution with-the from himself gifts
εἰς αὔξησιν ἤγαγεν. ἐνδείᾳ γὰρ ἐλαίου σχεδὸν κινδυνευόντων
to increase led by-lack for of-oil almost being-in-danger
ἀποσβεσθῆναι τῶν λύχνων τῶν ἱερῶν, μεγίστου κτήματος
to-be-extinguished the lamps the holy of-very-great estate
ἐπιδόσει, ὃ προσαγορεύεται Μάντεα, τούτοις τὸ
by-gift which is-called Mantea for-them the
φῶς διαμένειν προσεπενοήσατο ἄσβεστον, καὶ τοῖς
light to-remain he-devised unquenched and to-the(-men)

ἐξυπηρετουμένοις εἰς τὸν θεῖον τοῦτον ναὸν ἐπεδαψιλεύσατο
serving in the divine this church he-lavished
τὰ ὀψώνια ἐκ τῆς ἱκανῆς προσόδου τοῦ κτήματος, ὅπερ
the provisions from the sufficient revenue of-the estate which
οἶδε τὴν ὑπηρεσίαν ποιεῖν ἀνυστέρητόν τε καὶ ἀδιάλειπτον.
knows the service to-make unfailing both and unceasing
80 Ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ τῶν θείων ἀποστόλων περιφανὲς καὶ
but also the of-the divine apostles conspicuous and
μέγα τέμενος, τῆς προτέρας εὐπρεπείας καὶ ἀσφαλείας
great precinct from-the former seemliness and safety
διαπεσόν, ἐρεισμάτων περιβολαῖς καὶ ταῖς τῶν
having-fallen-away of-buttresses with-encirclings and with-the of-the
διαρραγέντων ἀνοικοδομαῖς ὀχυρώσας, καὶ ἀποξέσας
cracked rebuildings having-strengthened and having-scraped-off
τὸ ἀπὸ χρόνου γῆρας καὶ τὰς ῥυτίδας περιελών, ὡραῖον
the from time old-age and the wrinkles having-removed beautiful
αὖθις καὶ νεουργὸν ἀπετέλεσεν. καὶ τὸν ἐν τῇ Πηγῇ δὲ
again and newly-made he-rendered and the in the Pege too
τῆς θεομήτορος θεῖον ναὸν διαπτωθέντα καὶ τὸ ἀρχαῖον
of-the mother-of-god divine church fallen and the ancient
ἀποβαλόντα κάλλος ἀνενεώσατό τε καὶ ὑπερλάμποντα
having-lost beauty he-renewed both and outshining
μᾶλλον ἢπερ τὸ πρότερον ἔδειξεν. ὡσαύτως καὶ τὸν ἕτερον
more than the before showed likewise also the other
τῆς θεοτόκου ναόν, ὃς τὸ Σίγμα εἶχεν ἐπώνυμον, πτῶμα
of-the god-bearer church which the Sigma had as-name fall
πεσόντα δεινὸν ἐκ βάθρων ἀνῳκοδόμησε καὶ ἑδραιότερον
having-fallen terrible from foundations he-rebuilt and more-firm
τοῦ προτέρου εἰργάσατο. καὶ τὸν ἐν Αὐρηλιαναῖς δὲ
than-the former made and the in Aurelianai too
Στεφάνου τοῦ πρώτου τῶν μαρτύρων ναὸν ἄχρις ἐδάφους
of-Stephen the first of-the martyrs church as-far-as ground

καταπεσόντα ἐκ θεμελίων αὐτῶν ἀνεδείματο. τοὺς δὲ
having-fallen-down from foundations very he-built-up the but
τοῦ βαπτιστοῦ καὶ προδρόμου σηκοὺς ἱεροὺς ἔν τε τῇ
of-the baptist and forerunner precincts holy in both the
Στροβυλαίᾳ καὶ Μακεδονιαναῖς, τὸν μὲν ἐκ βάθρων,
Strobylaia and Makedonianai the(-one) indeed from foundations
τοῦ δὲ τὸ πλεῖστον ἀνῳκοδόμησεν. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ
of-the(-other) but the most rebuilt not indeed but
καὶ τὸ τοῦ ἀποστόλου Φιλίππου ἱερόν, καὶ τὸ αὐτοῦ
also the of-the apostle Philip shrine and the(-shrine) of-it
δυτικώτερον κείμενον τοῦ εὐαγγελιστοῦ Λουκᾶ, τῶν
more-westerly lying of-the evangelist Luke from-the
παλαιῶν ἀνακαθάρας πτωμάτων νέα εἰργάσατο.
old having-cleared falls new made
ἔτι δὲ καὶ τὸ Μωκίου τοῦ μάρτυρος μέγα τέμενος, οὐκ 81
still but also the of-Mokios the martyr great precinct not
ὀλίγοις ὑποπεσὸν ῥήγμασι, καὶ τὸ ἄδυτον τούτου μέρος ἄχρι
few having-suffered cracks and the sanctuary its part as-far-as
τῆς γῆς καταβληθὲν ἐσχηκὸς ὡς καὶ τὴν ἱερὰν κατεάξαι
the ground thrown-down having-had so-as also the holy to-break
τράπεζαν, τῆς προσηκούσης ἐπιμελείας ἠξίωσε καὶ τελείως
table of-the fitting care deemed-worthy and completely
τοῦ πτώματος ἤγειρεν. καὶ τὸν πλησιάζοντα δὲ τούτῳ
from-the fall raised and the near too to-it
κατὰ τὸ μέρος τὸ πρὸς δυσμὰς Ἀνδρέου τοῦ πρωτοκλήτου
in the part the toward west of-Andrew the first-called
τῶν ἀποστόλων ναὸν ἐκ πολλῆς ἀμελείας διαρρυέντα εἰς
of-the apostles church from much neglect having-fallen-apart to
τὸ ἀρχαῖον κάλλος τῇ δεούσῃ ἐπιμελείᾳ ἀνήγαγεν. τὸν
the ancient beauty with-the fitting care brought-back the
δὲ τοῦ ἁγίου Ῥωμανοῦ θεῖον οἶκον καὶ αὐτὸν καταπεσόντα
but of-the holy Romanos divine house also it having-fallen-down

ἐκ βάθρων ἀνεδείματο. καὶ τὸν τῆς ἁγίας Ἄννης ἐν
from foundations he-built-up and the(-church) of-the holy Anna in
τῷ Δευτέρῳ καὶ τὸν τοῦ Χριστοῦ μάρτυρος Δημητρίου
the Deuteron and the(-church) of-the of-Christ martyr Demetrius
καινοὺς ἀντὶ παλαιῶν καὶ εὐπρεπεῖς ἀπειργάσατο. τὸν
new instead-of old and seemly made the(-church)
δὲ τοῦ μάρτυρος Αἰμιλιανοῦ, ὃς ἐν τῇ Ῥάβδῳ τῷ οἴκῳ
but of-the martyr Aemilianus which in the Rhabdos the house
τῆς θεομήτορος γειτονεῖ, τῇ παλαιότητι κατερρικνωμένον
of-the mother-of-god neighbors by-the age shriveled
ἰδὼν καινουργεῖ, ἑκατέρωθεν πυργώσας ἐδράσμασι.
having-seen he-renews on-each-side having-towered with-foundations
82 πρὸς δὲ καὶ τὸν τοῦ ἀθλοφόρου Ναζαρίου ἱερὸν οἶκον, ἐκ
besides but also the of-the prize-bearing Nazarius holy house from
πολλῶν τῶν χρόνων οὐ μόνον πτωθέντα ἀλλὰ καὶ τέλεον
many the times not only fallen but also completely
ἠφανισμένον, νέον ἐδείματο σεμνότητι καὶ κάλλει πολλῷ
having-been-destroyed new he-built in-dignity and in-beauty much
τοῦ πρὶν διαφέροντα. ἐν δὲ τοῖς Δομνίνου λεγομένοις
than-the former excelling in but the of-Domninos called
Ἐμβόλοις τὸν εἰς ὄνομα τῆς θείας Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν
Emboloi the in name of-the divine of-Christ — of-god our
ἀναστάσεως καὶ Ἀναστασίας τῆς μάρτυρος περικαλλῆ ναὸν
resurrection and of-Anastasia the martyr very-beautiful church
ἐπισκευάσας ἐλάμπρυνε, λιθίνην ἀντὶ ξυλίνης τὴν ὀροφὴν
having-repaired he-made-brilliant of-stone instead-of wooden the roof
ἐργασάμενος, καὶ κόσμον ἄλλον ἐπιθεὶς ἀξιάγαστον.
having-made and adornment other having-put-on admirable
ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ Πλάτωνος τοῦ μεγάλου ἐν μάρτυσι
likewise but also of-Plato the great among martyrs
πονήσασαν τὴν τοῦ ναοῦ κατιδὼν ὀροφὴν νέαν εἰργάσατο,
having-suffered the of-the church having-seen roof new he-made

καὶ τοίχων ἐν οἷς ἔδει κατοχυρώσας τὸν οἶκον
and of-walls in which it-was-needful having-strengthened the house
ἐπιβολαῖς. τῶν δὲ καλλινίκων μαρτύρων Ἑσπέρου τε καὶ
with-additions of-the but gloriously-victorious martyrs Hesperos both and
Ζωῆς τὸν θεῖον οἶκον ἠδαφισμένον σχεδὸν κατάλληλον τοῦ
Zoe the divine house razed almost equal to-the
πρώην ἐδείματο. πρὸς τούτοις δὲ καὶ τὸν τοῦ μάρτυρος
former he-built besides these but also the of-the martyr
Ἀκακίου ἐν τῷ Ἑπτασκάλῳ θεῖον ναὸν ἤδη σχεδὸν
Akakios in the Heptaskalon divine church already almost
καταρρυέντα καὶ πρὸς πτῶσιν συνελαυνόμενον ἀνακαινίσας
having-fallen-apart and toward fall being-driven having-renewed
καὶ παντοίοις κατασφαλισάμενος ὀχυρώμασι τοῦ πτώματος
and with-all-kinds having-secured fortifications from-the fall
ἥρπασε καὶ ἑδραίως ἑστηκέναι πεποίηκεν. τὸν δὲ Ἠλιοὺ
snatched and firmly to-stand made the but of-Elijah
τοῦ προφήτου κατὰ τὸ Πετρίον ναὸν ὥσπερ λειποψυχοῦντα
the prophet at the Petrion church as fainting
ἀνέρρωσε καὶ περιφανῶς ἐκτίσατο, ἐλευθερώσας καὶ τῆς
he-strengthened and conspicuously built having-freed also from-the
περιστοιχούσης καὶ πιεζούσης τῶν κοινῶν οἰκιῶν συνοχῆς.
surrounding and pressing of-the common houses crowding
Ἀλλὰ τί στρεφόμεθα περὶ τὰ μικρὰ τῶν ἐκείνου, 83
but why do-we-turn about the small-things of-the his
εἰ καὶ πάνυ μεγάλα καθέστηκε, καὶ οὐ προστιθέαμεν
if even very great they-are and not we-add
τὸ μέγα ἔργον καὶ ἀξιάγαστον, ὃ κατ᾽ αὐτὰς τὰς
the great work and admirable which in very the
βασιλείους αὐλὰς αὐτὸς ἐπιστατῶν τε καὶ αὐτουργῶν
imperial courts he supervising both and working-himself
ᾠκοδόμησεν; ὅπερ ἀρκεῖ καὶ μόνον τήν τε περὶ τὸ
built which suffices also alone the both about the

θεῖον αὐτοῦ δηλοῦν ὁσιότητα καὶ τὸ πρὸς τὰ
divine his to-show holiness and the toward the(-things)
ἐπιβαλλόμενα μεγαλουργόν τε καὶ θαύματος ἄξιον.
undertaken magnificence both and of-wonder worthy
ἀμειβόμενος γὰρ ὥσπερ τῆς περὶ αὐτὸν εὐμενείας τὸν
requiting for as of-the about him goodwill the
δεσπότην Χριστὸν καὶ τὸν πρῶτον τῶν ἀγγελικῶν
master Christ and the first of-the angelic
δυνάμεων Γαβριὴλ καὶ τὸν Θεσβίτην Ἠλίαν τὸν ζηλωτήν,
powers Gabriel and the Tishbite Elijah the zealot
ὃς καὶ τῇ αὐτοῦ μητρὶ τῆς πρὸς βασιλείαν τοῦ υἱοῦ
who also to-the his mother of-the to kingship of-the son
ἀνυψώσεως ἐχρημάτισεν ἄγγελος, εἰς ὄνομα τούτων καὶ
exaltation served-as messenger in name of-these and
μνήμην ἀΐδιον, ἔτι δὲ τῆς θεοτόκου καὶ Νικολάου τοῦ
memory everlasting still but of-the god-bearer and of-Nicholas the(-one)
ἐν ἱεράρχαις πρωτεύοντος, θεῖον καὶ περικαλλῆ ναὸν
among hierarchs being-first divine and very-beautiful church
ἐδομήσατο, εἰς ὃν συνῆλθε τέχνη καὶ πλοῦτος καὶ ζέουσα
he-built into which came-together art and wealth and boiling
πίστις καὶ ἀφθονωτάτη προαίρεσις, καὶ τὰ πανταχόθεν
faith and most-unstinting purpose and the from-everywhere
συνέδραμε κάλλιστα, ἃ τοῖς ὁρῶσι μᾶλλον ἢ
ran-together finest which to-the(-ones) seeing rather than
τοῖς ἀκούουσιν οἶδα τυγχάνειν πιστά. ὃν ὡς νύμφην
to-the(-ones) hearing I-know to-be credible which as bride
ὡραϊσμένην καὶ περικεκοσμημένην μαργάροις τε καὶ
adorned and decked with-pearls both and
χρυσῷ καὶ ἀργύρου λαμπρότησιν, ἔτι δὲ καὶ μαρμάρων
with-gold and of-silver with-splendors still but also of-marbles
πολυχρόων ποικιλίαις καὶ ψηφίδων συνθέσεσι καὶ
many-colored with-varieties and of-mosaic-pebbles with-compositions and

σηρικῶν ὑφασμάτων καταστολαῖς, τῷ ἀθανάτῳ προσήγαγε
of-silk fabrics with-hangings to-the immortal he-brought
νυμφίῳ Χριστῷ.
bridegroom Christ
ὅ τε γὰρ ὄροφος ἐκ πέντε συμπληρούμενος ἡμισφαιρίων 84
the both for roof from five being-completed hemispheres
στίλβει χρυσῷ καὶ εἰκόνων ὡς ἀστέρων ἀστράπτει
glitters with-gold and of-images as of-stars flashes
κάλλεσιν, ἔξωθεν μετάλλοις ἐμφεροῦς χρυσίῳ χαλκοῦ
with-beauties from-outside with-metals like to-gold of-bronze
καλλυνόμενος, οἵ τε παρ᾽ ἑκάτερα τοῖχοι τῷ πολυτελεῖ
being-beautified the both on each-side walls with-the costly
καὶ πολυχρόῳ τῶν μαρμάρων καταποικίλλονται, καὶ
and many-colored of-the marbles are-adorned and
τὰ ἄδυτα τοῦ ναοῦ καὶ χρυσῷ καὶ ἀργύρῳ καὶ
the sanctuaries of-the church both with-gold and with-silver and
λίθοις τιμίοις καὶ μαργάροις καταπεποίκιλται καὶ
with-stones precious and with-pearls are-adorned and
καταπεπλούτισται. καὶ αἱ τῶν ἐκτὸς διείργουσαι
are-enriched and the from-the(-parts) outside separating
τὰ θυσιαστήρια κιγκλίδες καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐταῖς περίστυλα
the altars screens and the on them colonnades
καὶ τὰ ἄνωθεν οἷον ὑπέρθυρα χρηματίζοντα οἵ τε
and the(-pieces) above as lintels serving the both
ἐντὸς θᾶκοι καὶ αἱ πρὸ τούτων βαθμίδες καὶ αὐταὶ
inside seats and the before these steps and themselves
αἱ ἱεραὶ τράπεζαι, ἐξ ἀργύρου πάντα περικεχυμένον
the holy tables from silver all overlaid
ἔχοντος τὸν χρυσὸν καὶ λίθοις τιμίοις ἐκ μαργαριτῶν
having the gold and with-stones precious from pearls
ἠμφιεσμένοις πολυτελῶν τὴν σύμπηξιν καὶ σύστασιν
clothed costly the joining and structure

ἔχουσιν. αὐτὸ δὲ τὸ ἔδαφος σηρικῶν ὑφασμάτων
have very but the floor of-silk fabrics
ἢ Σιδονίων ἔργων ἐφηπλωμένων δόξει τυγχάνειν
or of-Sidonian works spread-out will-seem to-be
ἀνάπλεων· οὕτω πᾶν ἐξωραΐσται καὶ καταπεποίκιλται
full so all has-been-beautified and has-been-adorned
τῷ πολυχρόῳ τῶν ὑποκειμένων ἐκ μαρμάρων
with-the many-colored of-the underlying from marbles
πλακῶν καὶ ταῖς πολυειδέσι τῶν ταύτας περικλειουσῶν
slabs and with-the various of-the them surrounding
ψηφίδων ζώναις καὶ τῷ τῆς ἁρμογῆς ἀκριβεῖ καὶ
of-mosaic-pebbles bands and with-the of-the fitting exactness and
τῷ περιττῷ τῆς περιθεούσης ἐν ἅπασι χάριτος.
with-the abundance of-the running-round in all grace
ἔνθα καὶ πλῆθος ᾀδόντων ἐξυπηρετουμένων ἀφώρισε
there also multitude of-singers serving be-set-apart
καὶ προσόδους ἱκανὰς ἀπέταξεν, ἃς φιλοτίμως καὶ
and revenues sufficient assigned which generously and
μεγαλοπρεπῶς διανέμεσθαι τοῖς προσανέχουσι τῷ
magnificently to-be-distributed to-the(-ones) attending to-the
τοιούτῳ ἱλαστηρίῳ προσέταξεν, ὑπερβαλέσθαι σχεδὸν τοὺς
such propitiatory he-ordered to-surpass almost the(-ones)
πρὸ αὐτοῦ πάντας τῇ περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα μεγαλοδωρεᾷ
before him all in-the about the such-things munificence
φιλοτιμησάμενος.
having-striven

Before the New Church stand two fountains, one of Egyptian stone with serpents, the other with bronze cocks, goats, and rams spouting water, and cups where wine welled up. Porticoes run north and south, the southern one to a polo ground Basil cleared of houses, with the Mesokepion garden between. In the palace he built the gilded church of Elijah, the oratory of Clement with the martyr's head, the Savior's oratory with its silver floor and gold-beamed screen, Paul's oratory, and Peter's church. The Kainourgion's mosaics show his campaigns, its bedchamber his family praying beneath a cross; the Pentakoubouklon, the Eagle, John the Theologian's oratory, and a great bath follow.

Ἀλλ᾽ ὁ μὲν ναὸς τοιοῦτος καὶ οὕτω τὰ ἐντὸς ἔχων, 85
but the indeed church such and so the(-things) inside having
ὅσον μικρῷ λόγῳ δηλῶσαι δυνατὸν τὰ μεγάλα, καὶ πᾶσαν
as-far-as by-small word to-show possible the great-things and all
ἐντιθέντα ταῖς τῶν θεωμένων διανοίαις ἔκπληξιν·
putting into-the of-the(-ones) beholding minds astonishment
τὰ δὲ ἐκτὸς οἷα! πρὸς ἑσπέραν μὲν καὶ κατ᾽ αὐτὰ
the(-things) but outside what-sort toward west indeed and at very
τοῦ ναοῦ τὰ προαύλια φιάλαι δύο ἑστήκασιν, ἡ μὲν
of-the church the forecourts fountains two stand the(-one) indeed
πρὸς νότον ἡ δὲ πρὸς βορρᾶν, πᾶσαν ἔχουσαι καὶ
toward south the(-other) but toward north all having both
τέχνης ὑπερβολὴν καὶ ὕλης λαμπρότητα καὶ φιλοτιμίαν
of-art excess and of-material brilliance and munificence
τοῦ τῶν ἔργων δημιουργοῦ. ὧν ἡ μὲν πρὸς νότον
of-the of-the works craftsman of-which the(-one) indeed toward south
ἐξ Αἰγυπτίου λίθου, ὃν ἡμεῖς Ῥωμαῖον λέγειν εἰώθαμεν,
from Egyptian stone which we Roman to-call are-accustomed
ἔχει τὴν σύστασιν. περὶ ἣν καὶ δράκοντας ἔστιν ἰδεῖν,
has the structure around which also serpents it-is-possible to-see

οὗς ἡ λιθοξόος τέχνη ἄριστα διεμόρφωσεν. ἧς μέσον
which the stone-cutting art best fashioned of-which in-middle
μὲν κωνοειδὴς καὶ διάτρητος ἀνέστηκε στρόβιλος, πέριξ
indeed cone-shaped and pierced stands pine-cone around
δὲ κιονίσκοι λευκοὶ καὶ τὸ ἔνδον ὑπόκενοι χοροῦ σχῆμα
but small-columns white and the(-part) inside hollow of-dance figure
σώζοντες ὑφεστήκασι, στεφάνην ἄνωθεν ἔχοντες περιθέουσαν,
keeping stand-beneath crown above having running-round
ἀφ᾽ ὧν ἁπάντων κρουνηδὸν τὸ ὕδωρ κατὰ τὸ ἐμβαδὸν καὶ
from which all in-streams the water on the floor and
τὸν πυθμένα τῆς φιάλης ἄνωθεν ἔρρει καὶ κατώμβρει τὰ
the bottom of-the fountain from-above flowed and rained-down-on the(-parts)
ὑποκείμενα. ἡ δὲ πρὸς βορρᾶν ἐκ τοῦ Σαγαρίου
below the(-other) but toward north from the Sagarian
λεγομένου λίθου, ὃς τῷ παρά τινων Ὀστρίτῃ καλουμένῳ
called stone which to-the by some Ostrite called
λίθῳ καθέστηκεν ἐμφερής, ἐδέξατο τὴν κατασκευήν, ἐκ
stone is like received the construction from
λευκοῦ λίθου πολύτρητον στρόβιλον καὶ αὐτὴ κατὰ τὸ μέσον
white stone much-pierced pine-cone also it in the middle
τοῦ πυθμένος προβαλλομένη ἐξέχοντα. ὕπερθεν δὲ κατὰ τὴν
of-the bottom putting-forward projecting above but along the
περιτρέχουσαν στεφάνην τῇ φιάλῃ ἐκ χαλκοῦ τῷ τεχνίτῃ
running-round crown on-the fountain from bronze by-the craftsman
διετυπώθησαν ἀλεκτρυόνες τράγοι τε καὶ κριοί, διά τινων
were-modeled cocks he-goats both and rams through some
συρίγγων καὶ αὐτοὶ κρουνοὺς ὑδάτων ἐξερευγόμενοι καὶ
pipes also themselves streams of-waters belching-forth and
οἷον ἐξεμοῦντες κατὰ τὸ τῆς φιάλης ὑποκείμενον ἔδαφος.
as-it-were vomiting onto the of-the fountain underlying floor

ἔνθα καὶ κύλικες ὁρῶνται, περὶ ἃς τότε οἶνος ἀνέβλυζε
there also cups are-seen around which then wine bubbled-up
κάτωθεν, τοὺς παριόντας ποτίζων καὶ δεξιούμενος.
from-below the(-ones) passing-by giving-drink and welcoming
ἐξιόντι δέ σοι τὴν βόρειον πύλην τοῦ ἱεροῦ μακρός τις 86
going-out but you the northern gate of-the shrine long some
ἐκδέχεται περίπατος κυλινδροειδής, ἐξ ἐνύλων γραφῶν
receives walk cylindrical with colored paintings
κατηγλαϊσμένος τὴν ὀροφήν, τοὺς μαρτυρικοὺς περιέχων
adorned the roof the martyrial containing
ἄθλους καὶ τὰ παλαίσματα, ἑστιῶν ἅμα τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς
contests and the wrestlings feasting at-once the eyes
καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν διεγείρων πρὸς τὸν θεῖον καὶ μακάριον
and the soul rousing to the divine and blessed
ἔρωτα, ταῖς τῶν μαρτύρων ἀριστείαις εἰς τοῦτον ἐναγομένην
love by-the of-the martyrs exploits to it led-on
καὶ ὑπερβαίνειν κατὰ τὸ ἐφικτὸν πειρωμένην τὴν αἴσθησιν.
and to-surpass as-far-as the attainable trying the sense
κατὰ δὲ τὰς πρὸς νότον τε καὶ τὴν θάλασσαν πύλας,
at but the toward south both and the sea gates
εἰ ἐξελθὼν πρὸς ἀνατολὰς ποιήσασθαι τὴν πορείαν
if having-gone-out to east to-make the journey
θελήσειας, ἄλλον εὑρήσεις ἰσομήκη τοῦ πρὸς βορρᾶν
you-should-wish another you-will-find equal-in-length to-the(-one) toward north
καὶ ἰσόδρομον δίαυλον, ἄχρι τῆς βασιλικῆς αὐλῆς καὶ αὐτὸν
and equal-in-course double-course as-far-as the imperial court also itself
παρατείνοντα, καθ' ἣν μεθ' ἵππων σφαιρίζειν βασιλεῦσί
extending in which with horses to-play-ball for-emperors
τε καὶ τοῖς τῶν εὐδαιμόνων παισὶ καθέστηκε σύνηθες·
both and to-the of-the prosperous sons is customary
ἣν καὶ αὐτὴν ὁ αὐτὸς ἀοίδιμος βασιλεύς, τὰς πρότερον
which also itself the same celebrated emperor the formerly

ἐκεῖσε τυγχανούσας οἰκίας ἐξωνησάμενος καὶ ἄχρις ἐδάφους
there being houses having-bought-up and as-far-as ground
καταβαλὼν καὶ περικαθάρας τὸν τόπον, εἰργάσατο, κατὰ
having-thrown-down and having-cleared the place made at
τὸ πρὸς θάλασσαν μέρος τῆς τοιαύτης αὐλῆς καὶ τὰς
the toward sea part of-the such court also the
περικαλλεῖς οἰκίας δειμάμενος, ἃς οἱονεὶ ταμιεῖον καὶ
very-beautiful houses having-built which as-it-were treasury and
οἰκονομεῖον τοῦ εἰρημένου τυγχάνειν ναοῦ διωρίσατο. ἡ δὲ
steward's-house of-the said to-be church he-designated the but
τῶν οἰκημάτων ἐξώνησις καὶ κατασκευὴ τῆς αὐλῆς διὰ
of-the buildings buying-up and construction of-the court because-of
τὸ τὴν πρότερον εἰς τὸ τοιοῦτον γυμνάσιον ἀνειμένην
the the(-court) formerly for the such exercise given-over
τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν ἐν τῇ τοῦ θείου ναοῦ παροπλισθῆναι
to-the emperors in the of-the divine church to-have-been-taken-away
οἰκοδομῇ δεόντως ἐγένετο. τὸ δὲ περικλειόμενον μέσον
building fittingly happened the but enclosed middle
τῶν δύο περιδρόμων χωρίον κατὰ τὸ ἑῷον τοῦ ναοῦ
of-the two walks place at the eastern of-the church
μέρος παράδεισον ἐξειργάσατο, κατὰ ἀνατολὰς καὶ αὐτὸν
part garden he-made in east also itself
φυτευθέντα τῆς νέας Ἐδὲμ καὶ παντοίοις κομῶντα φυτοῖς
planted of-the new Eden and with-all-kinds luxuriant with-plants
καὶ ὕδασιν ἀφθόνοις ὄντα κατάρρυτον· ὃν ἀπὸ τῆς
and with-waters abundant being well-watered which from the
θέσεως Μεσοκήπιον ὀνομάζειν εἰώθαμεν.
position Mesokepion to-call we-are-accustomed
Ἀλλὰ ἀπόχρη περὶ τούτων τὰ εἰρημένα, μὴ καὶ
but suffices about these the(-things) said lest also
ἀπειροκαλίας τις γραφὴν ἀποίσεται καθ' ἡμῶν.
of-tastelessness anyone indictment will-bring against us

καὶ μεταστρεπτέον ἤδη τὸν λόγον ἐπὶ τὰ λοιπὰ 87
and it-must-be-turned already the discourse to the rest
τῶν ἔργων τοῦ φιλοπόνου καὶ τῶν καλῶν προμηθοῦς
of-the works of-the laborious and of-the good-things provident
αὐτοκράτορος. κατ᾽ αὐτὰ γὰρ τὰ βασίλεια τίνα τῶν
emperor in very for the palace whom of-the
πώποτε μνημονευομένων ἐν ταῖς περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα
ever mentioned in the about the such-things
φιλοτιμίαις οὐχ ὑπερβέβηκεν ἔν τε πολυτελείᾳ καὶ κάλλει
munificences not has-be-surpassed in both costliness and beauty
καὶ τῷ καινοπρεπεῖ τῶν σχημάτων καὶ ταῖς περὶ πάντα
and the novelty of-the forms and the about all
τὰ ἀξιάγαστα χάρισιν, οὐ μόνον ἐν ναῶν καλλοναῖς
the admirable graces not only in of-churches beauties
καὶ πολυτελείαις καὶ τέρψεσιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν διαιτητηρίων
and costlinesses and delights but also in of-residences
βασιλικῶν ὄντως καὶ μεγαλοπρεπῶν οἰκοδομαῖς, μετὰ
imperial truly and magnificent buildings with
τοῦ πολυτελοῦς τὸ τερπνὸν καὶ μετὰ τοῦ τέρποντος
the costly the delightful and with the delighting
πολὺ τὸ χρήσιμον ἐχόντων καὶ θαύματος ἄξιον; ἀλλ᾽
much the useful having and of-wonder worthy but
ἐπεὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα κάλλη οὐ πᾶσιν εἰς ὅρασιν πρόκειται,
since the such beauties not to-all for sight lie-open
ἧ καὶ μᾶλλον ἀκριβὴς τῶν τοιούτων πέφυκεν εἶναι
which also more exact of-the such-things is-by-nature to-be
διδάσκαλος, ἀνάγκη διὰ τῆς γραφῆς παρατεθῆναι τῶν
teacher necessity through the writing to-be-set-before of-the
σπουδαίων ταῖς ἀκοαῖς, ἵν᾽ ἐντεῦθεν ὅ τε δημιουργὸς
serious to-the ears that from-here the both craftsman
αὐτῶν ἀξίως θαυμάζηται καὶ οἱ τῶν βασιλείων
their worthily may-be-admired and the(-ones) from-the palace

εἰσόδων εἰργόμενοι μὴ παντελῆ τούτων ἔχοιεν ἄγνοιαν.
entrances barred not complete of-these may-have ignorance
ἔστι γὰρ εὐθὺς κατὰ τὸ πρὸς ἀνατολὰς τῶν ἀνακτόρων
there-is for straightway at the toward east of-the palace
μέρος κατασκευασθεὶς Ἠλιοὺ τῷ Θεσβίτῃ ναός, οὐ τὰ
part having-been-built to-Elijah the Tishbite church not the(-things)
ἐντὸς μόνον πάσης ἀνάπλεως πολυτελείας καὶ ὡραιότητος
inside only of-all full costliness and beauty
ἀλλ᾽ ἤδη καὶ τὰ ἐκτός. ἄνωθεν γὰρ τὸ στέγος ἅπαν
but already also the(-things) outside from-above for the roof all
χρυσῷ κατελάμπετο, ἐκ ψηφίδων εὖ ἡρμοσμένων ἅπαν
with-gold shone from mosaic-pebbles well fitted all
συνεστηκός, εἰ καὶ τῷ χρόνῳ νῦν ἡ πολλὴ τῶν ὄμβρων
composed if even by-the time now the much of-the rains
ἐπιφορὰ καὶ οἱ χειμέριοι νιφετοί τε καὶ παγετοὶ τὸ πολὺ
onset and the wintry snowfalls both and frosts the much
τοῦ κάλλους διαφθείραντες ἐλυμήναντο. συνημμένον δὲ
of-the beauty having-destroyed have-spoiled joined but
τῷ τοιούτῳ ναῷ καὶ τὸ ἐπ᾽ ὀνόματι τοῦ πολυπαθοῦς
to-the such church also the in name of-the much-suffering
καὶ καρτερικωτάτου τῶν μαρτύρων Κλήμεντος εὐκτήριον
and most-enduring of-the martyrs Clement oratory
ἀνεδείματο, ἐν ᾧ καὶ τὴν θείαν τούτου κάραν καὶ ἄλλων
he-built in which also the divine his head and of-other
πολλῶν μαρτύρων ἱερὰ ἐναπέθετο λείψανα, ἀφ᾽ ὧν ἐκεῖνός
many martyrs holy he-deposited relics from which he
τε καὶ οἱ μετ᾽ αὐτὸν ψυχῆς τε καὶ σώματος τὴν
both and the(-ones) after him of-soul both and of-body the
ῥῶσιν λαμβάνουσι. γειτονεῖ δὲ τούτοις καὶ ὁ ἐπ᾽ ὀνόματι
strength receive neighbors but to-these also the in name
τοῦ σωτῆρος ἡμῶν καὶ θεοῦ κατασκευασθεὶς ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ
of-the savior our and god built by him

εὐκτήριος οἶκος, οὗ τὸ πολυτελὲς καὶ ὑπέρτιμον τοῖς
prayer house of-which the costliness and preciousness to-the(-ones)
οὐκ ἰδοῦσιν ἄπιστος νομισθήσεται· τοσοῦτος ἄργυρος καὶ
not having-seen incredible will-be-thought so-much silver and
χρυσὸς καὶ τιμίων λίθων καὶ μαργάρων πλῆθος ἐν τῇ
gold and of-precious stones and pearls multitude in the
τούτου περιβολῇ καταβέβληται. τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔδαφος ἅπαν
its enclosure has-been-laid-down the indeed for floor all
ἐξ ἀργύρου σφυρηλάτου καὶ στιβαροῦ μετ᾽ ἐγκαύσεως,
from silver hammered and solid with encaustic
τὸ τῶν χρυσοχόων ἀκριβὲς τῆς τέχνης ἐπιδεικνύμενος,
the of-the goldsmiths exactness of-the art displaying
κατεσκεύασται, οἱ δὲ ἐξ δεξιῶν καὶ ἐξ εὐωνύμων
has-been-made the but from right and from left
τοῖχοι ἄργυρον ἄφθονον καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπικείμενον ἔχουσι,
walls silver abundant also themselves laid-on have
διηνθισμένον χρυσῷ καὶ τιμίοις πεποικιλμένον λίθοις
flowered with-gold and with-precious adorned stones
καὶ μαργάρων λαμπρότησιν. ἡ δὲ διείργουσα τὰ ἄδυτα
and of-pearls with-splendors the but separating the sanctuary
τοῦ θείου οἴκου τούτου κιγκλίς, Ἡράκλεις, ὅσον ὄλβον
of-the divine house this screen Heracles how-much wealth
ἐν ἑαυτῇ περιείληφεν! ἧς οἱ στῦλοι μὲν καὶ τὰ
in itself has-comprised of-which the columns indeed and the(-parts)
κάτωθεν ἐξ ἀργύρου διόλου τὴν σύστασιν ἔχουσιν, ἡ δὲ
below of silver throughout the structure have the but
ταῖς κεφαλίσι τούτων ἐπικειμένη δοκὸς ἐκ καθαροῦ χρυσίου
on-the capitals their lying beam of pure gold
πᾶσα συνέστηκε, τὸν πλοῦτον πάντα τὸν ἐξ Ἰνδῶν
all is-composed the wealth all the from Indians
περικεχυμένον πάντοθεν ἔχουσα· ἐν ᾗ κατὰ πολλὰ
poured-around from-everywhere having in which in many

μέρη καὶ ἡ θεανδρικὴ τοῦ κυρίου μορφὴ μετὰ χυμεύσεως
parts also the god-manly of-the lord form with enamel
ἐκτετύπωται. αὐτὸ δὲ τὸ ἄδυτον ὅσα κάλλη καὶ
has-been-modeled itself but the sanctuary how-many beauties and
ἅγια περιείληφε καὶ ἐν ἑαυτῷ θησαυροφυλακεῖ, ὁ λόγος
holy-things it-has-comprised and in itself it-treasures the discourse
παραιτεῖται δηλοῦν, ἐᾶν δὲ μᾶλλον ὡς ἄδυτον καὶ τοῖς
declines to-show to-let-be but rather as untrodden also to-the
λόγοις ἄβατον βούλεται· ἐν γὰρ τοῖς ἐπέκεινα λόγου
words inaccessible it-wishes in for the(-things) beyond word
εὐλογωτέρα ἡ σιωπή. καὶ τὰ μὲν ὡς ἂν εἴποι τις
more-fitting the silence and the indeed as — might-say someone
ἑῷα κάλλη τῶν ἀνακτόρων, ἅπερ ἐκ τῆς τοῦ ἀοιδίμου
eastern beauties of-the palace which from the of-the celebrated
βασιλέως Βασιλείου πίστεως ἐξανέτειλεν, ταῦτα ἐστίν.
emperor Basil faith dawned these are
88 Κατ᾽ ἄλλα δὲ μέρη καθέστηκε τὰ λοιπά, ἐν οἷς τό τε τοῦ
in other but parts stand the rest in which the both of-the
ἱεροκήρυκος Παύλου σεπτὸν τυγχάνει εὐκτήριον, τὸν αὐτὸν
sacred-herald Paul venerable is oratory the same
κεκτημένον δημιουργόν, μετὰ τῆς αὐτῆς πλουτοχορήγου
having craftsman with the same wealth-supplying
χειρὸς καὶ αὐτὸ δομησάμενον· καὶ τὸ τούτου γὰρ ἔδαφος
hand also it having-built and the its for floor
ἄργυρον ἔχει τοὺς κύκλους τῶν μαρμάρων ἐμπερικλείοντα,
silver has the circles of-the marbles enclosing
καὶ πολυτελείᾳ καὶ κάλλει τῶν ἄλλων κατ᾽ οὐδὲν ὁρᾶται
and in-costliness and beauty than-the others in nothing is-seen
λειπόμενον. ὡσαύτως καὶ ὁ ἐπ᾽ ὀνόματι τοῦ κορυφαίου
lacking likewise also the in name of-the chief
τῶν ἀποστόλων Πέτρου κατὰ τὸ ἄκρον τῶν Μαρκιανοῦ
of-the apostles Peter at the end of-the of-Marcian

περιδρόμων ὡς ἀκροπύργιον ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ κατασκευασθὲὶς
walks as citadel by him built
θεῖος ναός, ᾧ καὶ τὸ τοῦ ἀρχιστρατήγου εὐκτήριον
divine church to-which also the of-the archangel oratory
ἥνωται. καὶ ὃ τῆς θεομήτορος αὖθις ὑπέρκειται, ποίαν
has-been-united and which of-the mother-of-god again lies-above what
εὐπρεπείας καὶ ὡραιότητος ὑπερβολὴν οὐκ ἐπλούτησεν,
of-seemliness and beauty excess not has-it-been-rich-in
ἢ τίνος οὐκ ἂν ὀφθαλμὸν ἑστιάσοι καὶ ψυχὴν εὐφράνοι
or whose not — eye would-it-feast and soul would-gladden
καὶ ὅλον ἡδίω ποιήσοι τὸν θεατήν;
and whole sweeter would-make the spectator
Τὰ δὲ τῶν οἴκων κάλλη, ἅπερ ὡς βασιλείων βασίλεια ἐν 89
the but of-the houses beauties which as of-palaces palace in
αὐτοῖς τοῖς βασιλείοις ὁ βασιλεὺς Βασίλειος ἀνεδείματο,
very the palace the emperor Basil built
λαμπροτέρων ἐδεῖτο κηρύκων λόγων εἰς δήλωσιν καὶ
more-brilliant needed heralds of-words for showing and
χειρὸς ἐντελεστέρας εἰς τὸ δύνασθαι λόγῳ δηλοῦν ἃ
of-hand more-perfect for the to-be-able by-word to-show what-things
τοῖς ἔργοις ἐστὶν ἀμίμητα. ὁ γὰρ καινοπρεπὴς οὗτος
by-the deeds are inimitable the for novel this
οἶκος, οὗ τὸ Καινούργιόν ἐστιν ἐπώνυμον, ὃν ἐκ
house of-which the Kainourgion is name which from
βάθρων ἐκεῖνος ἀνήγειρεν, τίνα τῶν θεωμένων οὐκ
foundations he raised whom of-the(-ones) beholding not
ἐγείρει πρὸς ἔκπληξιν; ὃν ἑκκαίδεκα κίονες κατὰ στίχον
does-it-rouse to astonishment which sixteen columns in row
ἑστηκότες ἀνέχουσιν, οἱ μὲν ὀκτὼ τούτων ἐκ λίθου
standing hold-up the(-ones) indeed eight of-them of stone
τυγχάνοντες Θετταλῆς, ἢ τὸ πράσιον χρῶμα κεκλήρωται·
being Thessalian which the leek-green color has-received

οἱ ἓξ δὲ τὴν τοῦ ὀνυχίτου προσηγορίαν αὐχοῦσιν, οὓς
the six but the of-the onyx name boast which
ὁ λιθοξόος παντοίως ὡράϊσεν, ἀμπέλου σχῆμα κατ᾽
the stone-cutter in-every-way beautified of-vine figure on
αὐτοὺς μορφώσας καὶ παντοίων ζῴων ἰδέας ἐν ταύτῃ
them having-shaped and of-all-kinds of-animals forms in it
ἀπεργασάμενος. οἱ ἕτεροι δὲ δύο καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν τὴν
having-worked the other but two also themselves indeed the
αὐτοῦ ὀνυχίτου φύσιν εἰλήφασιν, οὐχ ὅμοιον δὲ τὸ σχῆμα
of-the-same onyx nature have-received not like but the figure
παρὰ τῶν λιθοξόων ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ γραμμαῖς σκολιαῖς
from the stone-cutters received but by-lines crooked
τὸ τῆς ἐπιφανείας ὁμαλὸν ἀφῃρέθησαν, οὕτω ποικῖλαι
the of-the surface smoothness were-deprived-of so to-variegate
ταύτας τοῦ τεχνίτου θελήσαντος, ὡς ἐκ τοῦ πολυμόρφου
them the craftsman having-wished as from the multiform
θηρῶντος τὸ εὐπρεπὲς καὶ ἐράσμιον. ἄνωθεν δὲ τῶν κιόνων
hunting the seemly and lovely above but the columns
ἄχρι τῆς ὀροφῆς καὶ τὸ κατὰ ἀνατολὰς ἡμισφαίριον,
as-far-as the roof and the toward east hemisphere
ἐκ ψηφίδων ὡραίων ἅπας ὁ οἶκος κατακεχρύσωται,
from mosaic-pebbles beautiful all the house has-been-gilded
προκαθήμενον ἔχων τὸν τοῦ ἔργου δημιουργόν, ὑπὸ τῶν
presiding having the of-the work craftsman by the
συναγωνιστῶν ὑποστρατήγων δορυφορούμενον, ὡς δῶρα
fellow-combatant subordinate-generals escorted as gifts
προσαγόντων αὐτῷ τὰς ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἑαλωκυίας πόλεις. καὶ
bringing to-him the by him taken cities and
αὖθις ἄνωθεν ἐπὶ τῆς ὀροφῆς ἀνιστόρηται τὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
again above on the roof are-depicted the of-the emperor
Ἡράκλεια ἆθλα καὶ οἱ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ὑπηκόου πόνοι καὶ οἱ τῶν
Heraclean labors and the for the subjects toils and the of-the

πολεμικῶν ἀγώνων ἱδρῶτες καὶ τὰ ἐκ θεοῦ νικητήρια,
military contests sweats and the from god victory-prizes
ὑφ᾽ ὧν ὡς οὐρανὸς ὑπ᾽ ἀστέρων ὑπέρλαμπρος ἐξανίσχει
by which as heaven by stars very-brilliant rises
κοιτὼν ὑπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ φιλοτεχνηθεὶς αὐτοκράτορος, ὡραῖός
bedchamber by the same artfully-made emperor beautiful
τε καὶ παμποίκιλος καὶ κατὰ πάντων σχεδὸν τὰ τοῦ
both and very-varied and against all almost the of-the
κάλλους φερόμενος νικητήρια. εὐθὺς γὰρ κατὰ τὸ τοῦ
beauty carrying-off victory-prizes straightway for at the of-the
ἐδάφους μεσαίτατον τὸ Μηδικὸν ὄρνεον ὁ ταὼς ἐκ
floor very-middle the Median bird the peacock from
ψηφίδων λαμπρῶν τῇ λιθοξόῳ τέχνῃ διαμεμόρφωται, ἐν
mosaic-pebbles bright by-the stone-cutting art has-been-shaped in
εὐθυτόρνῳ κύκλῳ ἐκ λίθου Καρικῆς συγκλειόμενος, ἀφ᾽
well-turned circle of stone Carian enclosed from
οὗπερ ἀκτῖνες ἀπὸ λίθου τῆς αὐτῆς πρὸς ἄλλον μείζονα
which rays from stone the same toward another greater
κύκλον ἐκπέμπονται. ἔξωθεν δὲ καὶ τούτου καθάπερ τινὲς
circle are-sent-out outside but also of-this as some
ῥύακες ἢ ποταμοὶ ἐκ λίθου Θετταλῆς, ἣ τὸ πράσιον
streams or rivers of stone Thessalian which the leek-green
χρῶμα κεκλήρωται, κατὰ τὸ τοῦ οἴκου τετράγωνον σχῆμα
color has-received along the of-the house square shape
ἐφήπλωνται, κατὰ τὰς ἐντὸς λαγόνας τέτταρας ἀετοὺς
have-been-spread-out at the inner flanks four eagles
ἐκ ψηφίδων ποικίλων τε καὶ λεπτῶν περισφίγγουσαι, εἰς
of mosaic-pebbles varied both and fine binding-round to
τοσοῦτον ἀκριβοῦντα τὴν μίμησιν ἅπαντα ὡς εἰκάζειν
so-much exactness the imitation all so-that to-guess
αὐτὰ ζῆν καὶ ἵπτασθαι βούλεσθαι.
them to-live and to-fly to-wish

οἱ δὲ παρ᾽ ἑκάτερα τοῖχοι ὑάλου πολυχρόοις πλαξὶ
the but on each-side walls of-glass with-many-colored slabs
περισκέπονται, διαφόρων ἀνθέων δοκοῦντες μορφαῖς
are-covered of-various flowers seeming with-forms
ὡραϊζεσθαι. ὕπερθεν δὲ τούτων κόσμος τις ἄλλος
to-be-beautified above but these adornment some other
περιηνθισμένος διαθέσει χρυσῷ, ὑφ᾽ οὗ διείργεσθαι
flowered with-arrangement in-gold by which to-be-separated
τὰ κατώτερα τῶν ἄνω δοκεῖ· ὃν ἐκ χρυσοῦ ψηφίδων
the lower from-the upper seems which of gold mosaic-pebbles
διαδέχεται τερπνότης ἄλλη, ἔνθρονον δεικνῦσα τὸν τοῦ
succeeds delight another enthroned showing the of-the
ἔργου δημιουργὸν αὐτοκράτορα καὶ τὴν σύζυγον Εὐδοκίαν,
work craftsman emperor and the wife Eudocia
στολαῖς κεκοσμημένους βασιλικαῖς καὶ ταινιουμένους τοῖς
in-robes adorned imperial and crowned with-the
στέμμασιν. οἱ δὲ κοινοὶ παῖδες ὡς ἀστέρες λαμπροὶ
diadems the but common children as stars bright
τοῦ δόμου πέριξ ἱστόρηνται, ταῖς βασιλείοις καὶ αὐτοὶ
of-the house around are-depicted with-the imperial also themselves
στολαῖς καὶ τοῖς στέμμασι καταγλαϊζόμενοι. ὧν οἱ
robes and with-the diadems made-splendid of-whom the
μὲν ἄρρενες τόμους ἐπιφερόμενοι δείκνυνται τὰς θείας
indeed male books carrying are-shown the divine
ἐντολάς, αἷς στοιχεῖν ἐπαιδεύοντο, περιέχοντας, τὸ δὲ
commandments which to-follow they-were-educated containing the but
θῆλυ γένος καὶ αὐτὸ βίβλους τινὰς κατέχον ὁρᾶται, νόμων
female sex also itself books some holding is-seen of-laws
θείων ἐχούσας περιοχήν, βουλομένου δεῖξαι τοῦ τεχνίτου
divine having content wishing to-show the craftsman
τυχὸν ὡς οὐ μόνον ἡ ἄρρην γονὴ ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡ θήλεια
perhaps that not only the male offspring but also the female

τὰ ἱερὰ μεμύηται γράμματα καὶ τῆς θείας σοφίας οὐκ
the holy has-been-initiated letters and of-the divine wisdom not
ἔστιν ἀμέτοχος, καὶ κἂν ὁ φυτοσπόρος τούτων οὐκ ἔσχεν
is without-share and even-if the father of-these not had
ἐξ ἀρχῆς οἰκείως πρὸς γράμματα διὰ τὴν βιωτικὴν
from beginning familiarly toward letters because-of the of-life
περιπέτειαν, ἀλλ᾽ οὖν τοὺς οἰκείους ἅπαντας βλαστοὺς ἐν
vicissitude but then the own all shoots in
μετοχῇ σοφίας πεποίηκε· τοῦτο δέ, καὶ τῆς ἱστορίας δίχα,
sharing of-wisdom made this but even of-the history without
διὰ τῆς γραφικῆς ἐβουλήθη τοῖς ὁρῶσι σημαίνεσθαι.
through the painting he-wished to-the(-ones) seeing to-be-signified
καὶ ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κάλλη τῷ τετραμερεῖ τῶν τοίχων ἄχρι
and these indeed the beauties by-the four-sided of-the walls as-far-as
τῆς ὀροφῆς περιέχεται· αὐτὴ δὲ ἡ τοῦ τοιούτου κοιτῶνος
the roof are-contained itself but the of-the such bedchamber
ὀροφὴ οὐκ ἀνεστηκυῖα πρὸς ὕψος ἐπαίρεται, ἀλλὰ τῷ
roof not standing-up to height is-raised but with-the
τετραγώνῳ σχήματι τοῖς τοίχοις ἐγκάθηται, χρυσίῳ διόλου
square shape on-the walls sits with-gold throughout
κατηγλαϊσμένη καὶ στίλβουσα, κατὰ τὸ μεσαίτατον φέρουσα
made-splendid and glittering at the very-middle bearing
τὸν νικοποιὸν σταυρόν, ὑάλῳ πρασίῳ διαμορφούμενον,
the victory-making cross with-glass leek-green formed
περὶ ὃν ὡς ἄστρα κατ᾽ οὐρανὸν θεάσῃ ἐκλάμποντα
around which as stars in heaven you-may-behold shining-forth
αὐτόν τε τὸν ἀοίδιμον βασιλέα καὶ μετὰ τῶν τέκνων
himself both the celebrated emperor and with the children
πάντων τὴν σύνευνον, πρός τε θεὸν καὶ τὸ τοῦ σταυροῦ
all the wife to both god and the of-the cross
ζωοποιὸν σημεῖον τὰς χεῖρας ἐπαίροντας, καὶ τοῦτο μόνον
life-giving sign the hands raising and this only

οὐχὶ βοῶντας, ὅτι διὰ τοῦδε τοῦ νικοποιοῦ συμβόλου
not shouting that through this the victory-making symbol
πᾶν ἀγαθὸν καὶ φίλον θεῷ ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις τῆς ἡμετέρας
all good and dear to-god in the days of-the our
βασιλείας διαπέπρακται καὶ κατώρθωται. περιέχεται δὲ
reign has-been-accomplished and has-been-achieved is-contained but
καὶ εὐχαριστία ἐγγράμματος παρά τε τῶν φυσάντων
also thanksgiving written by both the(-ones) having-begotten
ὑπὲρ τῶν τέκνων λεγομένη πρὸς τὸν θεὸν καὶ παρὰ τῶν
for the children said to — god and by the
τέκνων αὖθις ὑπὲρ τῶν γεννητόρων. καὶ ἡ μὲν παρὰ
children again for the parents and the(-one) indeed by
τῶν γονέων οὑτωσί πως ἐπὶ λέξεως ἔχουσα δείκνυται
the parents thus somehow on word being is-shown
"εὐχαριστοῦμέν σοι, θεὲ ὑπεραγαθὲ καὶ βασιλεῦ τῶν
we-thank you god most-good and king of-the(-ones)
βασιλευόντων, ὅτι περιέστησας ἡμῖν τέκνα εὐχαριστοῦντα
reigning that you-surrounded us children thankful
τῇ μεγαλοπρεπείᾳ τῶν θαυμασίων σου. ἀλλὰ φύλαξον
to-the magnificence of-the wonders your but guard
αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ θελήματί σου, μή τις αὐτῶν παραδράμῃ
them in the will your lest any of-them transgress
τι τῶν σῶν ἐντολῶν, ἵνα καὶ ἐν τούτῳ εὐχαριστῶμεν
any of-the your commandments that also in this we-may-give-thanks
τῇ σῇ ἀγαθότητι." ἡ δὲ τῶν παίδων αὖθις ταῦτα
to-the your goodness the(-one) but of-the children again these-things
διαγορεύουσα δείκνυται "εὐχαριστοῦμέν σοι, λόγε τοῦ
declaring is-shown we-thank you word —
θεοῦ, ὅτι ἐκ πτωχείας Δαυϊτικῆς ἀνύψωσας τὸν πατέρα
of-god that from poverty Davidic you-exalted the father
ἡμῶν, καὶ ἔχρισας αὐτὸν τῷ χρίσματι τοῦ ἁγίου σου
our and you-anointed him with-the anointing of-the holy your

πνεύματος. ἀλλὰ φύλαξον αὐτὸν τῇ χειρί σου σὺν
spirit but guard him with-the hand your with
τῇ τεκούσῃ ἡμᾶς, ἀξιῶν αὐτοὺς καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ τῆς
the(-one) having-borne us deeming-worthy them and us also of-the
ἐπουρανίου σου βασιλείας." καὶ τὰ μὲν τοῦ εἰρημένου
heavenly your kingdom and the indeed of-the said
κοιτῶνος ἔργα καὶ κάλλη ἐν τούτοις περιγεγράφθω.
bedchamber works and beauties in these let-them-be-circumscribed
Τῆς αὐτῆς δὲ χειρὸς καὶ γνώμης ἔργον καὶ ὁ κατὰ 90
of-the same but hand and mind work also the by
τοὺς Μαρκιανοῦ περιδρόμους μέγιστος τρίκλινος, καὶ
the of-Marcian walks very-great triclinium also
Πεντακούβουκλον λεγόμενον, ὃ καὶ αὐτὸ παντοίου
Pentakoubouklon called which also itself of-every-kind
κάλλους καὶ ὡραιότητος τὰ πρωτεῖα ἠνέγκατο· καθ'
beauty and loveliness the first-prizes carried-off at
ὃ καὶ τὸ προμνημονευθὲν περικαλλὲς εὐκτήριον τοῦ
which also the aforementioned very-beautiful oratory of-the
αἰθεροδρόμου Παύλου, ᾧ καὶ τὸ τῆς μάρτυρος
air-traversing Paul to-which also the(-oratory) of-the martyr
Βαρβάρας συνήνωται τὸ ὑπὸ τοῦ σοφωτάτου Λέοντος
Barbara has-been-united the(-one) by the most-wise Leo
δομηθέν, τὴν ἵδρυσιν κέκτηται. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ ἕτερα
built the site has but also the other
βασιλικὰ καταγώγια, ἃ τοῦ χρυσοῦ τῶν τρικλίνων
imperial lodgings which than-the golden of-the triclinia
ἀνατολικωτέραν καὶ μᾶλλον ὑπερκειμένην ἔχει τὴν ἵδρυσιν,
more-eastern and more lying-above have the site
δυτικώτερα τῆς νέας τυγχάνοντα τῶν ἐκκλησιῶν, ὧν
more-western than-the new being of-the churches of-which
ἡ ἐπὶ πολὺ τοῦ ἀέρος πρὸς ὕψος ἐπέκτασις καὶ τὴν
the for much of-the air to height extension also the

Ἀετοῦ προσηγορίαν ἐδέξατο, ἐν ᾧ καὶ τὸ τῆς θεοτόκου
of-Eagle name received in which also the of-the god-bearer
ὡραῖον καὶ πάντερπνον τῆς προσευχῆς ἐστὶν ἱερόν, τοῦ
beautiful and all-delightful of-the prayer is shrine of-the
αὐτοῦ βασιλέως ἔργα τυγχάνουσιν, ἐκ τοῦ πολυτελοῦς
same emperor works are from the costliness
καὶ ἀφθόνου τῶν τιμωμένων ὑλῶν καὶ τοῦ καινοπρεποῦς
and abundance of-the precious materials and the novelty
τῶν σχημάτων καὶ τῆς μεγαλουργοῦ διαθέσεως τὸ
of-the forms and the magnificent arrangement the
μεγαλόψυχον καὶ φιλόκαλον τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἀπεμφαίνοντα. καὶ
magnanimity and love-of-beauty of-the man showing and
τὰ δυτικώτερα δὲ τούτων πυραμοειδῆ κατοικητήρια, καθὼς
the more-western too than-these pyramidal dwellings as
καὶ ἕτερον τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ λόγου μητρὸς τυγχάνει
also another of-the — of-god and word mother is
εὐκτήριον, ἐκεῖνον χορηγὸν καὶ δημιουργὸν ἐπιγράφεται,
oratory him supplier and craftsman inscribes
τῷ περιττῷ τῆς κατασκευῆς καὶ καινοπρεπεῖ καθ' ἑτέρων
by-the abundance of-the construction and novelty over others
πολλῶν τὸ πρωτεῖον φερόμενα. ὧν ἐστὶ κάτωθεν,
many the primacy carrying-off of-which is below
κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν τῆς Μονοθύρου λεγομένης εἴσοδον, τὸ
at very the of-the Monothyros called entrance the
τερπνότατον Ἰωάννου τοῦ θεολόγου εὐκτήριον, ὃ καὶ αὐτὸ
most-delightful of-John the theologian oratory which also itself
μετὰ τοῦ ἐκεῖθεν ἀρχομένου αἰθερίου καὶ ἡλιοβολουμένου
with the from-there beginning airy and sun-struck
μαρμαροστρώτου περιπάτου, τοῦ καὶ ἄχρι τοῦ Φάρου
marble-paved walk the(-one) also as-far-as the Pharos
διήκοντος, ὁ αὐτὸς ἐτεκτήνατο βασιλεύς, μετὰ καὶ τῶν
reaching the same built emperor with also the

πρὸς ἀνατολὰς τούτου ἑδραιοτάτων οἰκημάτων, ὧν
toward east of-it most-solid buildings of-which
τὸ μὲν θησαυροφυλακεῖον ἐστί, τὸ δὲ χρηματίζει
the(-one) indeed treasury is the(-other) but serves
εἰς βεστιάριον· ἃ μετὰ τοῦ τέρποντος καὶ τὸ
as wardrobe which-things with the delighting also the
ἀσφαλὲς περιττῶς ἐκληρώσαντο. καὶ τὸ κάλλιστον δὲ
safety abundantly have-obtained and the finest too
καὶ μέγιστον καὶ φανότατον τῶν βασιλείων λουτρόν, ὃ
and greatest and brightest of-the palace bath which
τῆς φιάλης λεγομένης ὑπέρκειται, ἥτις ἀπὸ τῆς ἐκεῖσε
the fountain called lies-above which from the there
πρότερον ἱσταμένης τοῦ τῶν βενέτων μέρους λιθίνης
formerly standing of-the of-the Blues faction stone
φιάλης τὸ ὄνομα σώζει περιλειπόμενον, ἐκεῖνός ἐστιν ὁ
fountain the name keeps remaining he is the(-one)
ἐμμελῶς δομησάμενος, ἔργον κάλλους ὁμοῦ καὶ τρυφῆς
harmoniously having-built work of-beauty together and of-luxury
καὶ σωματικῆς εὐετηρίας καὶ ἀναπαύσεως. ἡ δὲ τοῦ
and of-bodily well-being and rest the but of-the
ἑτέρου μέρους φιάλη, τῶν πρασίνων φημί, κατὰ τὴν πρὸς
other faction fountain of-the Greens I-mean at the toward
ἀνατολὰς τῶν βασιλείων αὐλὴν τὴν στάσιν ἐκέκτητο· ἥτις
east of-the palace court the position had which
ἐν τῷ κτίζεσθαι τὸν ἐκεῖσε θεῖον ναὸν τῆς μεταθέσεως
in the to-be-built the there divine church the removal
ἔτυχε, καὶ ἠλλοιώθη τῶν μερῶν ἡ περὶ ταύτας διατριβή,
obtained and was-altered of-the factions the about them pastime
καὶ ἀπεπαύθη τὰ τελούμενα κατ᾽ αὐτάς.
and were-stopped the(-things) performed at them

Basil funds the Mangana and the New House from farms so his feasts spend no public money, builds at Pegai and Hiereia, restores a cistern, raises some hundred churches about the city and more beyond, and renews poorhouses, hostels, and hospitals. He brings Jews to baptism, gives the Bulgarians an archbishop, and converts the Rus when a gospel book survives the fire. He bears Constantine's death as Job did and refuses to send tax inspectors to the themes. Sandabarenos tricks Leo into carrying a dagger and denounces him; Leo is imprisoned until a parrot's cry moves the senators. Basil sickens after a hunting accident and dies; Leo succeeds.

91 Ἐκτὸς δὲ τῶν εἰρημένων τοῦ αὐτοῦ γενναίου βασιλέως
besides but the(-things) said of-the same noble emperor
ἔργον καὶ ὁ τὰ Μάγγανα λεγόμενος οἶκος βασιλικός, καὶ
work also the the Mangana called house imperial and
ὁ νέος οἶκος καλούμενος, οὗς ἀπὸ τοιαύτης προαιρέσεως
the new house called which from such purpose
κατεσκεύασεν. μὴ βουλόμενος γὰρ τὰ δημόσια χρήματα,
he-built not wishing for the public moneys
ἅπερ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ ὑπηκόου φόροι γεννῶντες αὐξάνουσιν,
which the from the subjects taxes producing increase
εἰς οἰκείας καταναλίσκειν χρείας καὶ τῶν ἀνὰ πᾶν
for own to-spend needs and of-the(-men) through every
ἔτος ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ κεκλημένων καὶ τοὺς ἑτέρων πόνους τὴν
year by him invited also the of-others toils the
τούτων τράπεζαν ἡδύνειν ἢ συγκροτεῖν, τοὺς τοιούτους
their table to-sweeten or to-furnish the such
οἴκους ἐπενοήσατο, καὶ προσόδους ἐκ γεωργίας ἀπέταξεν
houses be-devised and revenues from farming assigned
ἐν αὐτοῖς ἱκανάς, ἀφ᾽ ὧν ἡ βασιλικὴ πανδαισία αὐτοῦ τε
in them sufficient from which the imperial feast his both
καὶ τῶν μετ᾽ αὐτὸν ἄφθονον καὶ δικαίαν τὴν χορηγίαν
and of-the(-ones) after him abundant and just the supply

ἔμελλεν ἔχειν ἀεί. καὶ τὰ ἐν ταῖς καλουμέναις δὲ Πηγαῖς
was-going to-have always and the in the called too Pegai
βασιλικὰ μεταβολῆς ἕνεκα καταγώγια καὶ ἐνδιαιτήματα
imperial of-change for-the-sake-of lodgings and residences
ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς ἐκ βάθρων ἀνέστησεν, ἃ καὶ ναῶν
the same emperor from foundations raised which also of-churches
καλλοναῖς κατεκόσμησεν, ἐν οἷς ὅ τε τοῦ ἁγίου προφήτου
with-beauties adorned in which the both of-the holy prophet
Ἠλιοὺ τυγχάνει οἶκος σεπτὸς καὶ ὁ Ἐλισσαίου τοῦ
Elijah is house venerable and the(-house) of-Elisha the
ἐκείνου διαδόχου καὶ φοιτητοῦ, ἔτι δὲ καὶ ὁ τοῦ
his successor and pupil still but also the(-house) of-the
πρώτως ἡμῶν εὐσεβῶς βασιλεύσαντος Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ
first for-us piously having-reigned Constantine the
μεγάλου, καὶ ὁ τῶν νεοφανῶν μαρτύρων τῶν δύο
great and the(-house) of-the newly-appeared martyrs the two
καὶ τεσσαράκοντα, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ἕτεροι δύο οἶκοι
and forty and besides these other two houses
εὐκτήριοι εἰς ὄνομα καὶ δόξαν εὐσεβῶς δομηθέντες τῆς
of-prayer to name and glory piously built of-the
θεομήτορος. καὶ ἐν τοῖς τῆς Ἱερείας δὲ παλατίοις τοῦ
mother-of-god and in the — of-Hiereia too palaces of-the
αὐτοῦ προφήτου Ἠλιοὺ ἱερὸν εὐκτήριον ἐδομήσατο, οὐδενὸς
same prophet Elijah holy oratory he-built of-no-one
τῶν ἄλλων ἐν κάλλει καὶ ὡραιότητι κρινόμενον δεύτερον.
of-the others in beauty and loveliness judged second
Ἐν δὲ ταῖς τοιαύταις κατὰ μεταφοίτησιν καὶ μεταβολὴν 92
in but the such for change-of-residence and change
βασιλείοις διατριβαῖς καὶ δεξαμενὴν τυγχάνουσαν ὕδατος,
imperial pastimes also cistern being of-water
μεγάλην τε καὶ εὐρύχωρον, ἔργον καὶ πόνημα τοῦ
great both and spacious work and labor of-the

καλλύναντος βασιλέως κατ᾽ ἀρχὰς τὸ προάστειον, ὑπὸ δὲ
having-beautified emperor at beginnings the suburb by but
τοῦ βασιλέως Ἡρακλείου συγχωσθεῖσαν καὶ γεωθεῖσαν καὶ
the emperor Heraclius filled-up and turned-to-earth and
καταφύτευσιν δεξαμένην δένδρων τε καὶ λαχάνων, καθάπερ
planting having-received of-trees both and vegetables as
καὶ αἱ τῶν βασιλικῶν παλατίων οὖσαι ἐντός,
also the(-cisterns) of-the imperial palaces being inside
ἥ τε πρὸ τῆς Μαγναύρας καὶ ἡ μεταξὺ τοῦ τε
the(-one) both before the Magnaura and the(-one) between the both
Ἰουστινιανοῦ τρικλίνου καὶ τοῦ τῆς Ἐκθέσεως, αἵτινες καὶ
of-Justinian triclinium and the(-one) of-the Ekthesis which also
αὐταὶ ὕδωρ ἄφθονον ἔχουσαι καὶ ἰχθύας πρὸς τέρψιν καὶ
themselves water abundant having and fishes for delight and
ἄγραν τῶν βασιλέων ἐκτρέφουσαι, ὑπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως
catching of-the emperors rearing by the same emperor
ἠπειρωθεῖσαι εἰς παραδείσων κατασκευὴν ἐχρημάτισαν
made-into-land into of-gardens construction served
διὰ τὸ Στέφανον τὸν μαθηματικὸν τὴν γένεσιν τοῦ
because-of the Stephen the astrologer the nativity of-the
εἰρημένου βασιλέως πολυπραγμονήσαντα εἰπεῖν ἐξ ὕδατος
said emperor having-inquired-into to-say from water
αὐτὸν τελευτᾶν. διὰ τὴν τοιαύτην οὖν αἰτίαν καὶ τῆς ἐν
him to-die because-of the such then cause also the in
Ἱερείᾳ κινστέρνης εἰς παράδεισον μεταμειφθείσης, ἰδὼν
Hiereia cistern into garden having-been-changed having-seen
τὸ χωρίον ὁ ἀοίδιμος βασιλεὺς Βασίλειος πρὸς μὲν
the place the celebrated emperor Basil for indeed
παραδείσων καταφυτεύσεις τόπους κεκτημένον ἀποχρῶντας
of-gardens plantings places having sufficient
καὶ ἱκανούς, ὑποσπανίζον δὲ ὕδατος ποτίμου καὶ καθαροῦ,
and ample lacking but of-water drinkable and pure

αὖθις ἐκφορήσας τὸν χοῦν πολυχειρίᾳ τε καὶ σπουδῇ
again having-carried-out the earth with-many-hands both and zeal
τὸν ὁρώμενον πρὸ ὀλίγου λειμῶνα κομῶντα φυτοῖς
the seen before little meadow luxuriant with-plants
εἰς τὸ ἀρχαῖον σχῆμα μετήγαγε, καὶ ἀντὶ παραδείσου
to the ancient form he-brought-back and instead-of garden
δοχεῖον ἀπειργάσατο ὕδατος ἀφθόνου τε καὶ διαρκοῦς.
receptacle he-made of-water abundant both and lasting
Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ὅσα κατὰ τὰς βασιλείους περιοχὰς
and these-things indeed as-many-as in the imperial precincts
φιλοπόνως ἅμα καὶ εὐσεβῶς ὁ ἀοίδιμος βασιλεὺς
laboriously at-once and piously the celebrated emperor
ἐτεκτήνατο·
built
ἐξελθέτω δὲ τῶν βασιλείων ἤδη λοιπὸν ὁ λόγος, καὶ 93
let-go-out but from-the palace now henceforth the discourse and
χωρείτω πρὸς τὰ ἑξῆς τῶν κατὰ τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
let-it-go to the next of-the(-works) in the reigning
ταύτην πόλιν καὶ τὰ περὶ αὐτὴν ἐν οἰκοδομαῖς τε καὶ
this city and the about it in buildings both and
ἀνοικοδομαῖς θείων οἴκων ἔργα τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος. ὁρῶν γὰρ
rebuildings of-divine houses works of-the emperor seeing for
τὸν ἀστικὸν καὶ βάναυσον ὄχλον τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἀγοράν,
the urban and vulgar crowd the(-crowd) at the marketplace
ἣ Φόρος προσαγορεύεται, διατρίβοντα καὶ προστετηκότα
which Forum is-called spending-time and wasting-away
ταῖς χρείαις τοῦ βίου ἐν τῷ μὴ ἔχειν πλησίον οἶκον εὐκτήριον
in-the needs of-the life in the not to-have near house of-prayer
τῆς ψυχικῆς ἐπιμελείας λήθην λαμβάνοντα, ναὸν περικαλλῆ
of-the of-soul care forgetfulness taking church very-beautiful
καὶ σεβάσμιον τῇ θεομήτορι κατὰ τὴν ἀγορὰν ἐδείματο,
and venerable to-the mother-of-god at the marketplace he-built

ὡς ἂν καὶ ὄμβρων καὶ χειμώνων εἴη τοῖς ὄχλοις
so-that — both from-rains and from-storms it-might-be for-the crowds
ἀλέξημα καὶ ψυχικῆς σωτηρίας ἐντρύφημα καὶ βοήθημα.
defense and of-soul salvation delight and help
καὶ τὸν ἕτερον δὲ τῆς πανυμνήτου θεοτόκου, τὸν ἐν τοῖς
and the other too of-the all-praised god-bearer the in the
Χαλκοπρατείοις θεῖον ναὸν τῆς πανσέπτου καὶ ἁγίας σοροῦ,
Chalkoprateia divine church of-the all-venerable and holy coffer
ταπεινὸν ἰδὼν καὶ ἀφώτιστον, καὶ φωτοδόχας ἑκατέρωθεν
low having-seen and unlit both windowed on-each-side
ἀναστήσας ἀψῖδας καὶ τὸ τέγος μετεωρίσας ὕψει
having-raised arches and the roof having-lifted with-height
εὐπρεπείας κατηύγασεν καὶ μαρμαρυγαῖς φωτὸς κατηγλάϊσε.
of-seemliness illuminated and with-gleamings of-light made-splendid
τὸν δὲ τοῦ πρώτου τῶν ἀγγέλων ἐν τοῖς Τζήρου
the but of-the first of-the angels in the(-quarter) of-Tzeros
λεγομένοις θεῖον ναὸν καὶ τὴν περὶ αὐτὸν φιλάνθρωπον εἰς
called divine church and the about it humane to
τοὺς πένητας ὑπουργίαν καὶ χορηγίαν ἐκεῖνός ἐστιν ὁ
the poor service and supply he is the(-one)
περιποιησάμενος, καὶ τόν τε ναὸν φαιδρύνας καὶ εἰς τὸ
having-secured and the both church having-brightened and to the
νῦν ὁρώμενον κάλλος περιστήσας καὶ ἀγαγών, καὶ τὴν
now seen beauty having-set and having-brought and the
διακονίαν εἰς τὸ ἀνενδεὲς τῇ τῶν προσόδων ἐπαυξήσει
ministry to the self-sufficiency with-the of-the revenues increase
καταστήσας, καὶ ἐπιδαψιλευσάμενος τὸν εἰς τοὺς πένητας
having-established and having-lavished the to the poor
ἔλεον. καὶ τὸν ἐν Πουλχεριαναῖς δὲ τοῦ ἱερομάρτυρος
pity and the in Poulcherianai too of-the priest-martyr
Λαυρεντίου μέγιστον ναὸν συμπτωθέντα ἀνέστησε, πολλῆς
Laurence very-great church fallen he-raised with-much

ἐμπλήσας τερπνότητος. καὶ ἄλλους δὲ ἱεροὺς οἴκους ἀμφὶ
having-filled delight and other too holy houses around
τοὺς ἑκατὸν περὶ τὴν πόλιν ἀνέστησε, πτωχοτροφεῖά τε καὶ
the hundred about the city he-raised poorhouses both and
ξενῶνας ἐκαινούργησε, καὶ τῶν παλαιωθέντων πλεῖστα
hostels he-renewed and of-the(-ones) grown-old very-many
ἀνενέωσε, νοσοκομεῖά τε καὶ γηροκομεῖα καὶ μοναστήρια.
renewed hospitals both and old-age-homes and monasteries
Οὐ κατὰ τὴν πόλιν δὲ μόνον τὰ τοιαῦτα τῶν ἔργων 94
not in the city but only the such-things of-the works
θεοφιλῶς τε ἅμα καὶ φιλοτίμως εἰργάζετο, ἀλλὰ καὶ
god-lovingly both at-once and munificently he-worked but also
ταύτης ἐκτὸς τὴν ὁμοίαν ἐπεδείκνυτο ἐπιμέλειαν. μεθ᾽
it outside the like showed care with
ἧς καὶ τὸν τοῦ ἀποστόλου καὶ εὐαγγελιστοῦ Ἰωάννου
which also the of-the apostle and evangelist John
τοῦ θεολόγου ἐν τῷ καλουμένῳ Ἑβδόμῳ ναὸν τῷ
the theologian in the called Hebdomon church by-the
χρόνῳ πονήσαντα καὶ καταβληθέντα ἀνίστησι, καλλοναῖς
time having-suffered and thrown-down raises with-beauties
τε ὡραΐσας καὶ ὀχυρώμασι κατασφαλισάμενος. ἔτι
both having-beautified and with-fortifications having-secured still
δὲ καὶ τὸν πλησιόχωρον αὐτοῦ τοῦ προδρόμου οἶκον,
but also the neighboring to-it of-the forerunner house
πρὸ πάνυ πολλῶν καταπτωθέντα χρόνων καὶ ἐρείπιον
before very many fallen years and ruin
ἀντὶ ναοῦ χρηματίζοντα, περικαθαίρει μὲν τῆς ὕλης
instead-of church being clears indeed of-the timber
καὶ τῶν χωμάτων, ταχίστῃ δὲ οἰκοδομῇ καὶ ἐπιμελείᾳ
and of-the heaps with-swiftest but building and care
τῶν περιφανῶν καὶ μεγάλων ἴσον καθίστησι. τὸ δὲ τοῦ
to-the illustrious and great equal makes the but of-the

κορυφαίου τῶν ἀποστόλων τέμενος ἐν τῷ Ῥηγίῳ, διὰ τὴν
chief of-the apostles precinct in — Rhegion because-of the
ἀπειλουμένην πτῶσιν ἄβατον τυγχάνον, αὐτὸς καθελὼν
threatened fall impassable being he having-taken-down
καὶ ἐκ βάθρων καινουργήσας ἐδείματο εἰς μνήμην αὐτοῦ
and from foundations having-renewed built for memory his
διηνεκῆ τε καὶ ἀνεπίληστον. ἐν δὲ ταῖς τοῦ Βαθύρσου
continual both and unforgettable in but the of-the Bathyrsos
ποταμοῦ ὑπερκειμέναις Ἰουστινιανοῦ γεφύραις Καλλινίκου
river lying-above of-Justinian bridges of-Kallinikos
τοῦ μάρτυρος ἠδαφισμένον ναὸν τοῦ προτέρου κρείττονα
the martyr razed church than-the former better
ἤγειρεν. ἐν δὲ τῷ καλουμένῳ τούτῳ Στενῷ, τὸν αὐχένα
he-raised in but the called this Narrows the neck
τοῦ Εὐξείνου φημί, τὸν τοῦ ἁγίου Φωκᾶ πάνσεπτον οἶκον
of-the Euxine I-mean the of-the holy Phokas all-venerable house
θεαρέστως τε καὶ θεοφιλῶς δομησάμενος, καὶ σύστημά
god-pleasingly both and god-lovingly having-built and community
τι μοναχῶν εὐλαβῶν συναθροίσας, κτίσμασί τε καὶ
some of-monks devout having-gathered with-buildings both and
κτήμασι τὸν τόπον καταπλουτίσας, μονὴν θεοσύλλεκτον
with-possessions the place having-enriched monastery god-gathered
καὶ ἰατρεῖον ψυχῶν ἀπειργάσατο. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἅπασι τὸν
and hospital of-souls made besides these all the
τοῦ ἀρχιστρατήγου Μιχαὴλ ἱερὸν οἶκον ἐν τῷ Σωσθενίῳ,
of-the archangel Michael holy house in — Sosthenion
ἐκ μακρῶν διαρρυέντα χρόνων καὶ πλείστοις ὀκλάσαντα
from long having-fallen-apart years and with-very-many having-sunk
ῥήγμασι καὶ ἤδη πρὸς γόνυ κλιθέντα σχεδὸν καὶ τὸ πολὺ
cracks and already to knee bent almost and the much
τῆς περὶ αὐτὸν εὐπρεπείας ἀποβαλόντα, τῶν πτωμάτων τε
of-the about it seemliness having-lost from-the falls both

διανίστησι καὶ πρὸς τὴν προτέραν ἀκμὴν ἀνακαλεσάμενος
raises and to the former prime having-called-back
ὡραιότητος ἁπάσης ἔδειξεν ἔμπλεων. καὶ περὶ μὲν τοὺς
of-beauty all showed full and about indeed the
ἱεροὺς οἴκους καὶ τὴν τούτων ἐπιμέλειαν καὶ διόρθωσιν,
holy houses and the their care and restoration
ἀφ' ὧν μάλιστα ἡ περὶ τὸ θεῖον ὁσιότης χαρακτηρίζεται,
from which most the about the divine holiness is-characterized
τοιοῦτος ὁ ἐν βασιλεῦσιν ἀοίδιμος Βασίλειος ἦν.
such the among emperors celebrated Basil was
Εἰδὼς δὲ ὅτι ἐπ' οὐδενὶ τοσοῦτον ὅσον ἐπὶ σωτηρίᾳ ψυχῶν ὁ 95
knowing but that at nothing so-much as at salvation of-souls —
θεὸς ἐπευφραίνεται, καὶ ὅτι ὁ ἐξάγων ἄξιον ἐξ ἀναξίου
god rejoices and that the(-one) bringing-out worthy from unworthy
ὡς στόμα χρηματίζει Χριστοῦ, οὐδὲ περὶ τὸ ἀποστολικὸν
as mouth serves of-Christ not-even about the apostolic
τοῦτο ἔργον ἀμελὴς ἐφάνη καὶ ῥάθυμος, ἀλλὰ πρῶτον μὲν
this work negligent appeared and indolent but first indeed
τὸ τῶν Ἰουδαίων ἔθνος ἀπερίτμητόν τε καὶ σκληροκάρδιον,
the of-the Jews nation uncircumcised both and hard-hearted
τὸ ὅσον ἐπ' αὐτῷ, εἰς τὴν ὑποταγὴν σαγηνεύει Χριστοῦ.
— as-far-as on him into the subjection nets of-Christ
κελεύσας γὰρ αὐτοὺς τῆς οἰκείας θρησκείας τὰς ἀποδείξεις
having-ordered for them of-the own worship the proofs
κομίζοντας εἰς διαλέξεις χωρεῖν καὶ ἢ δεικνύναι τὰ
bringing to disputations to-go and either to-show the(-things)
κατ' αὐτοὺς ἰσχυρά τε καὶ ἀναντίρρητα, ἢ πειθομένους ὅτι
of them strong both and irrefutable or being-persuaded that
κεφάλαιον τοῦ νόμου καὶ τῶν προφητῶν ὁ Χριστὸς ἦν καὶ
head of-the law and of-the prophets — Christ was and
ὅτι σκιᾶς τύπον εἶχεν ὁ νόμος, ἢ τῇ ἐπιλάμψει τοῦ
that of-shadow type had the law which by-the shining of-the

ἡλιακοῦ φωτὸς διασκεδάζεται, προσέρχεσθαι τῇ τοῦ κυρίου
solar light is-scattered to-come to-the of-the lord
διδασκαλίᾳ καὶ βαπτίζεσθαι, προσθεὶς δὲ καὶ ἀξιωμάτων
teaching and to-be-baptized having-added but also of-dignities
τοῖς προσερχομένοις διανομὰς καὶ τοῦ βάρους τῶν
to-the(-ones) coming distributions and from-the weight of-the
προτέρων ἀπαλλάξας φόρων καὶ ἐπιτίμους ἐξ ἀτίμων
former having-freed taxes and honored from dishonored
ποιεῖν κατεπαγγειλάμενος, πολλοὺς τοῦ ἐπικειμένου
to-make having-promised many from-the lying-upon(-them)
καλύμματος τῆς πωρώσεως ἠλευθέρωσε καὶ πρὸς πίστιν
veil of-the hardening freed and to faith
εἵλκυσε τοῦ Χριστοῦ, εἰ καὶ πάλιν οἱ πλείους μετὰ τὴν ἐκ
drew — of-Christ if even again the more after the from
τοῦ βίου τοῦ βασιλέως ἐπαναχώρησιν πρὸς τὸν οἰκεῖον
the life of-the emperor withdrawal to the own
ὡς κύνες ὑπέστρεψαν ἐμετόν. ἀλλὰ κἂν ἐκεῖνοι, μᾶλλον
as dogs returned vomit but even-if those rather
δέ τινες ἐκείνων, ὡς Αἰθίοπες ἔμειναν ἀμετάβλητοι, ἀλλ᾽
but some of-them as Ethiopians remained unchanged but
ὅ γε φιλόθεος βασιλεὺς ἐντελεῖς τοῦ ἔργου τοὺς μισθοὺς
the indeed god-loving emperor full of-the work the wages
ἕνεκα τῆς σπουδῆς παρὰ θεοῦ ἀπολήψεσθαι ἔμελλεν.
for-the-sake-of the zeal from god to-receive was-going
96 Ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ περὶ τὸ Βουλγάρων γένος εὑρίσκεται
likewise but also about the of-Bulgarians race is-found
διαγεγονώς. τὸ γὰρ τοιοῦτον ἔθνος, εἰ καὶ πρὸ τούτου τὴν
to-have-acted the for such nation if even before this the
πρὸς εὐσέβειαν μεταβολὴν εἰσδέξασθαι ἔδοξε καὶ πρὸς τὸν
toward piety change to-accept seemed and to the
χριστιανισμὸν μετελθεῖν, ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως ἀπαγὲς ἦν ἔτι πρὸς
Christianity to-go-over but nevertheless unfixed was still toward

τὸ καλὸν καὶ ἀνίδρυτον, ὡς ὑπὸ ἀνέμου φύλλα ῥᾳδίως
the good and unsettled as by wind leaves easily
σαλευόμενον καὶ μετακινούμενον. ἀλλὰ ταῖς τοῦ βασιλέως
shaken and moved but by-the of-the emperor
συχναῖς παραινέσεσι καὶ ταῖς λαμπραῖς δεξιώσεσιν, ἔτι
frequent exhortations and by-the brilliant receptions still
δὲ καὶ ταῖς μεγαλοψύχοις φιλοτιμίαις τε καὶ δωρεαῖς,
but also by-the magnanimous liberalities both and gifts
ἀρχιεπίσκοπόν τε πείθεσθαι καταδέξασθαι καὶ ἐπισκόποις
archbishop both to-be-persuaded to-accept and with-bishops
καταπυκνωθῆναι τὴν χώραν ἀνέχεται· καὶ διά τε
to-be-thickly-filled the land consents and through both
τούτων διά τε τῶν ἐξ ὀρέων τε καὶ τῶν σπηλαίων
these through both the(-men) from mountains both and the caves
τῆς γῆς μετακληθέντων καὶ ἐκεῖσε παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
of-the earth called-over and there by the emperor
ἀποσταλέντων, τῶν εὐσεβῶν μοναστῶν, τά τε πατρῷα
sent the pious monks the both paternal
ἤθη καταλιμπάνει καὶ ὁλόκληρον τῷ Χριστῷ σαγηνεύεται.
customs leaves and whole — for-Christ is-netted
Ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ τῶν Ῥῶς ἔθνος δυσμαχώτατόν τε 97
but also the of-the Rus nation most-hard-to-fight both
καὶ ἀθεώτατον ὂν χρυσοῦ τε καὶ ἀργύρου καὶ
and most-godless being of-gold both and of-silver and
σηρικῶν περιβλημάτων ἱκαναῖς ἐπιδόσεσιν εἰς συμβάσεις
of-silk garments with-sufficient gifts to agreements
ἐφελκυσάμενος, καὶ σπονδὰς πρὸς αὐτοὺς σπεισάμενος
having-drawn and treaties with them having-made
εἰρηνικάς, ἐν μετοχῇ γενέσθαι καὶ τοῦ σωτηριώδους
peaceful in sharing to-come also of-the saving
βαπτίσματος ἔπεισε καὶ ἀρχιεπίσκοπον παρὰ τοῦ πατριάρχου
baptism persuaded and archbishop from the patriarch

Ἰγνατίου τὴν χειροτονίαν δεξάμενον δέξασθαι παρεσκεύασεν,
Ignatius the ordination having-received to-accept prepared
ὃς κατὰ τὴν τοῦ εἰρημένου ἔθνους χώραν παραγεγονὼς
who in the of-the said nation land having-arrived
ἀπὸ τοιαύτης πράξεως εὐπαράδεκτος τῷ ἔθνει γεγένηται.
from such deed well-received by-the nation became
τοῦ γὰρ ἄρχοντος τοῦ τοιούτου γένους σύλλογον τοῦ
of-the for ruler of-the such race assembly of-the
ὑπηκόου ποιησαμένου καὶ μετὰ τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν γερόντων
subjects having-made and with the about him elders
προκαθεσθέντος, οἳ τῶν ἄλλων μᾶλλον τῇ δεισιδαιμονίᾳ
having-sat-in-front who than-the others more to-the superstition
διὰ τὴν μακρὰν συνήθειαν προστετηκότες ἐτύγχανον,
because-of the long custom attached were
καὶ σκοπουμένων περί τε τῆς οἰκείας καὶ τῶν Χριστιανῶν
and considering about both the own and of-the Christians
πίστεως, εἰσκαλεῖται ὁ ἄρτι πρὸς αὐτοὺς φοιτήσας
faith is-called-in the just-now to them having-come
ἀρχιερεύς, καὶ τίνα τὰ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ καταγγελλόμενα καὶ
high-priest and what the(-things) by him announced and
αὐτοὺς διδάσκεσθαι μέλλοντα ἐπυνθάνετο. τοῦ δὲ τὴν ἱερὰν
them to-be-taught going be-inquired of-him but the holy
τοῦ θείου εὐαγγελίου βίβλον προτείναντος, καί τινα τῶν τοῦ
of-the divine gospel book having-held-out and some of-the of-the
σωτῆρος ἡμῶν καὶ θεοῦ θαυμάτων αὐτοῖς ἀπαγγείλαντος,
savior our and god miracles to-them having-recounted
καὶ τῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ τερατουργηθέντων κατὰ τὴν παλαιὰν
and of-the by — god wrought-as-wonders in the old
τὴν ἱστορίαν αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύξαντος, "εἰ μή τι τῶν
the history to-them having-unfolded if not something of-the
ὁμοίων" ἔφασαν εὐθέως οἱ Ῥῶς "καὶ ἡμεῖς θεασόμεθα,
like said straightway the Rus also we shall-see

καὶ μάλιστα οἷον τὸ ἐν τῇ καμίνῳ τῶν τριῶν λέγεις
and especially such-as the(-thing) in the furnace of-the three you-tell
παίδων, οὐκ ἄν σοι ὅλως πιστεύσωμεν, οὐδὲ τὰς ἀκοὰς ἡμῶν
children not — you at-all we-would-believe nor the ears our
ἔτι τοῖς ὑπὸ σοῦ λεγομένοις ὑπόσχωμεν.” ὁ δὲ πεποιθὼς ἐπὶ
still to-the by you said would-we-submit he but trusting in
τῷ ἀψευδεῖ τοῦ εἰπόντος ὅτι ὃ ἐὰν αἰτήσητε ἐν τῷ
the truthfulness of-the(-one) having-said that whatever — you-ask in the
ὀνόματί μου λήψεσθε καὶ ὅτι ὁ πιστεύων εἰς ἐμὲ τὰ
name my you-will-receive and that the(-one) believing in me the
ἔργα, ἃ ἐγὼ ποιῶ, κἀκεῖνος ποιήσει, καὶ μείζονα τούτων
works which I do also-he will-do and greater than-these
ποιήσει, ὅταν οὐ πρὸς ἐπίδειξιν ἀλλὰ πρὸς σωτηρίαν ψυχῶν
will-do when not for display but for salvation of-souls
μέλλει γίνεσθαι τὰ γινόμενα, ἔφη πρὸς αὐτούς “εἰ καὶ
are-going to-happen the(-things) happening said to them if even
μὴ ἔξεστιν ἐκπειράζειν κύριον τὸν θεόν, ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως εἰ
not it-is-permitted to-tempt lord — god but nevertheless if
ἐκ ψυχῆς διεγνώκατε προσελθεῖν τῷ θεῷ, αἰτήσασθε ὅπερ
from soul you-have-resolved to-come — to-god ask whatever
καὶ βούλεσθε, καὶ ποιήσει τοῦτο πάντως διὰ τὴν πίστιν
also you-wish and will-do this surely because-of the faith
ὑμῶν ὁ θεός, κἂν ἡμεῖς ἐσμὲν εὐτελεῖς καὶ ἐλάχιστοι.” οἱ
your — god even-if we are cheap and least they
δὲ ᾐτήσαντο αὐτὸ τὸ τῆς πίστεως τῶν Χριστιανῶν βιβλίον,
but asked very the of-the faith of-the Christians book
ἤτοι τὸ θεῖον καὶ ἱερὸν εὐαγγέλιον, ἐν τῇ ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν
that-is the divine and holy gospel into the by them
ἀναφθείσῃ ἐμβληθῆναι πυρκαϊᾷ· καὶ εἰ ἀβλαβὲς τηρηθείη
kindled to-be-thrown pyre and if unharmed it-should-be-kept
καὶ ἄκαυστον, προσελθεῖν τῷ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ κηρυσσομένῳ
and unburned to-come to-the by him preached

θεῷ. ῥηθέντων δὲ τούτων, καὶ τοῦ ἱερέως πρὸς τὸν θεὸν
god having-been-said but these-things and the priest to — god
τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς καὶ τὰς χεῖρας ἐπάραντος, καὶ εἰπόντος
the eyes and the hands having-raised and having-said
ὅτι δόξασόν σου τὸ ἅγιον ὄνομα, Ἰησοῦ Χριστὲ ὁ θεὸς
that glorify your the holy name Jesus Christ — god
ἡμῶν, καὶ νῦν ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς τοῦ ἔθνους τούτου παντός,
our also now in eyes of-the nation this all
ἐρρίφη εἰς τὴν κάμινον τοῦ πυρὸς ἡ τοῦ ἁγίου εὐαγγελίου
was-thrown into the furnace of-the fire the of-the holy gospel
βίβλος. ὡρῶν δὲ διεληλυθυιῶν ἱκανῶν, εἶτα τῆς καμίνου
book of-hours but having-passed sufficient then the furnace
κατασβεσθείσης, εὑρέθη τὸ ἱερὸν πυκτίον διαμεῖναν ἀπαθὲς
having-been-quenched was-found the holy tablet having-remained unaffected
καὶ ἀλώβητον καὶ μηδεμίαν ὑπὸ τοῦ πυρὸς δεξάμενον λύμην
and unharmed and no by the fire having-received damage
ἢ μείωσιν, ὡς μηδὲ τῶν ἐν τοῖς κλειδώμασι τῆς βίβλου
or diminution so-that not-even of-the in the clasps of-the book
κροσσῶν τὴν οἱανοῦν ὑπομεινάντων φθορὰν ἢ ἀλλοίωσιν.
tassels the any having-undergone destruction or alteration
ὅπερ ἰδόντες οἱ βάρβαροι, καὶ τῷ μεγέθει καταπλαγέντες
which having-seen the barbarians and by-the greatness having-been-stunned
τοῦ θαύματος, ἀνενδοιάστως βαπτίζεσθαι ἤρξαντο.
of-the miracle without-hesitation to-be-baptized began

98 Οὕτως οὖν τῶν τοιούτων ἔργων ἐν τοῖς χρόνοις
so then of-the such works in the times
τῆς βασιλείας τοῦ συνετοῦ βασιλέως Βασιλείου
of-the reign of-the intelligent emperor Basil
καταπραττομένων, καὶ δεξιῶς κατὰ νοῦν τῶν πραγμάτων
being-accomplished and favorably according-to mind the affairs
χωρούντων αὐτῷ, καὶ τοῦ καθ' ἡμέραν θάλλοντος βίου, καὶ
going for-him and the by day flourishing life and

εὐθυμίας χορευούσης περὶ τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὰ βασίλεια, καὶ
cheerfulness dancing about the city and the palace and
γαλήνης ἡπλωμένης ἀνὰ πᾶσαν σχεδὸν νῆσον καὶ ἤπειρον,
calm spread-out over every almost island and mainland
ἐξαίφνης λαῖλαψ καὶ ζάλη καὶ καταιγὶς συμφορῶν τοῖς
suddenly whirlwind and tempest and hurricane of-misfortunes on-the
ἀνακτόροις ἐκώμασε, κοπετὸς καὶ θρῆνος καὶ Ἰλιὰς λυπηρῶν
palace reveled lamentation and dirge and Iliad of-griefs
καὶ τραγῳδία θλιβερῶν ἐχόρευσε περὶ τὰ βασίλεια. ὁ γὰρ
and tragedy of-afflictions danced about the palace the for
φίλτατος καὶ πρωτότοκος υἱὸς τῷ βασιλεῖ Κωνσταντῖνος ἐν
dearest and first-born son to-the emperor Constantine in
αὐτῷ τῷ ἄνθει τῆς ἡλικίας, ἐν τῇ ἀκμῇ τῆς νεότητος, ἐν τῷ
very the flower of-the age in the prime of-the youth in the
πρὸς ζῆλον ἄρχεσθαι τρέχειν τῆς πατρικῆς γενναιότητος,
toward emulation to-begin to-run of-the paternal nobility
ὀξείᾳ νόσῳ περιπεσὼν καὶ ἐπὶ ὀλίγαις ἡμέραις τῷ
into-acute disease having-fallen and for few days by-the
πυρετῷ καυσωθείς, πᾶσαν τὴν ζωτικὴν ἰκμάδα τοῦ παρὰ
fever having-been-burned all the vital moisture the beyond
φύσιν λάβρου πυρὸς συντόμως ἐκδαπανήσαντος, τὸν βίον
nature fierce fire quickly having-consumed the life
ἐξέλιπε, πένθος ἀμύθητον καταλιπὼν τῷ πατρί. πλὴν ἐπεὶ
left grief unspeakable having-left to-the father but since
λόγῳ κρατεῖν ὀφείλει τῶν ἀλόγων παθῶν ὁ πεπαιδευμένος
by-reason to-rule ought the irrational passions the educated
ἀνήρ, καὶ αὐτὸς ἄνθρωπος ὢν καὶ θνητὸς ᾔδει καὶ τὸν υἱὸν
man also he human being and mortal knew also the son
ἔχων ὁμοίως θνητόν, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τὸ πέρα τοῦ μετρίου
having likewise mortal and because-of this the beyond the measure
τὸ συμβὰν ἀποδύρεσθαι ὡς ἀγεννές τε καὶ ἄνανδρον
the happening to-lament as ignoble both and unmanly

τῇ γυναικωνίτιδι διδοὺς θᾶττον ἐγένετο ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ τὴν
to-the women's-quarters giving more-quickly became himself and the
εὐχάριστον τοῦ γενναίου Ἰὼβ φωνὴν ἀνεφθέγξατο, "ὁ
thankful of-the noble Job voice uttered the
κύριος ἔδωκεν" εἰπών, "ὁ κύριος αὖθις ἀφείλατο. ὡς τῷ
lord gave having-said the lord again took-away as to-the
κυρίῳ ἔδοξεν, οὕτω καὶ γέγονεν. εἴη αὐτοῦ εὐλογημένον τὸ
lord it-seemed so also it-happened may-be his blessed the
ὄνομα." καὶ "τί" φησί "θαυμαστόν, εἰ ὁ δοὺς πάλιν
name and what he-says marvelous if the(-one) having-given again
ἀπείληφεν, ὡς ἐβούλευεν, ὅπερ δέδωκεν;" καὶ μᾶλλον εἰς
has-taken-back as he-planned what he-has-given and rather for
παραμυθίαν τῆς μητρὸς καὶ τῶν ἀδελφῶν γεγονὼς ἦν
consolation of-the mother and of-the brothers having-become he-was
ἐπὶ τῶν συνήθων αὖθις, προϊστάμενος ὀρφανῶν, χήραις
at the accustomed-things again presiding-over orphans to-widows
ἐπικουρῶν, χορηγῶν στρατιώταις καὶ πένησιν, ἀδικουμένοις
helping supplying to-soldiers and to-poor to-the-wronged
ἐπαμύνων, καὶ τῶν φοβουμένων τὸν κύριον ἡδέως καὶ
defending and to-the(-ones) fearing the lord gladly and
εὐμενῶς ἀκροώμενος, τὰ λυσιτελῆ καὶ σωτήρια καὶ τὴν ἄνω
kindly listening the profitable-things and saving-things and the above
βασιλείαν προξενοῦντα ἐξηγουμένων καὶ ὑποτιθεμένων αὐτῷ.
kingdom procuring explaining and suggesting to-him
99 Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰώθασι πολλάκις οἱ καθεστηκότες ἐπὶ τῶν
since but are-accustomed often the(-men) set over the
ἀρχῶν καὶ τῶν διοικήσεων, τὴν εὔνοιαν δῆθεν ὑπεμφαίνειν
offices and the administrations the goodwill forsooth to-show
ἐθέλοντες, τάχα δὲ καὶ μονιμωτέραν ἐντεῦθεν οἰόμενοι
wishing perhaps but also more-lasting from-here thinking
τὴν ἀρχὴν ἑαυτοῖς καταστήσασθαι, ὑποτιθέναι τὰ
the office for-themselves to-make to-suggest the(-things)

πρὸς αὔξησιν τῶν εἰσφορῶν καὶ τὸν τῶν προσόδων
for increase of-the contributions and the of-the revenues
συντελοῦντα πλεονασμόν, ὑπέμνησέ ποτε καὶ τῷ γενναίῳ
contributing surplus reminded once also the noble
τούτῳ βασιλεῖ ἀπὸ τοιαύτης γνώμης ὁ τὴν τοῦ
this emperor from such mind the(-man) the of-the
γενικοῦ τὸ τηνικαῦτα διέπων ἀρχὴν ἀποσταλῆναι εἰς
genikon — at-that-time administering office to-be-sent to
τὰ ὑπὸ τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἐξουσίαν ἅπαντα θέματα τοὺς
the under the Roman authority all themes the
λεγομένους ἐπόπτας τούτους καὶ ἐξισωτάς, ὡς ἄν, φησί,
so-called inspectors these and equalizers so-that — he-says
τοὺς ἀγροὺς καὶ τὰ χωρία, ὧν ὁ χρόνος τοὺς δεσπότας
the fields and the estates of-which the time the masters
διά τινα περιπέτειαν τοῖς οἰκείοις ἐπέκλυσε ῥεύμασι,
through some vicissitude with-the own flooded streams
πρὸς ἑτέρους διάθωνται καὶ πρόσοδον ἐντεῦθεν οὐχὶ μικρὰν
to others they-may-assign and revenue from-here not small
τῷ ταμείῳ τῷ βασιλικῷ προσπορίσωσιν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
to-the treasury the imperial they-may-provide the but emperor
ἀποδέχεσθαι προσποιησάμενος τὴν ὑπόμνησιν, ἐκλέξασθαι
to-accept having-pretended the reminder to-choose
καὶ εὐτρεπίσαι καὶ αὐτῷ προσαγαγεῖν τοὺς ὀφείλοντας
and to-make-ready and to-him to-bring the(-men) obliged
τὸ ἔργον ἐπιτελέσαι καλῶς προετρέψατο. σκεψάμενος δὲ
the work to-accomplish well urged having-considered but
καὶ φροντίσας ὁ γενικός, καὶ ὡς ἐδόκει κάλλιστα τοὺς
and having-taken-thought the genikos and as it-seemed best the
ἀρίστους ἐπιλεξάμενος, καὶ τὰς τῶν ἐκλεγέντων κλήσεις
best having-chosen and the of-the chosen names
εἰσαγαγὼν πρὸς αὐτόν, πολλῆς ἐνομίσθη μέμψεως ἄξιος
having-brought-in to him of-much was-thought of-blame worthy

καὶ σφοδροτέροις ὑπεβλήθη ὀνειδισμοῖς, εἰ τοιούτους εἰς τὸ
and to-more-vehement was-subjected reproaches if such-men to the
τοιοῦτον ἔργον προβάλλεται. τοῦ δὲ μὴ ἔχειν ἐν τοῖς
such work he-puts-forward of-him but not to-have among the(-men)
πολιτευομένοις κρείττονας λέγοντος, ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπεκρίνατο
in-public-life better saying the emperor answered
ὅτι παρ᾽ ἐμοὶ τοιοῦτον τὸ τῆς προκειμένης διακονίας ἔργον
that with me such the of-the present service work
κρίνεται ὥστε, εἴπερ οἷόν τε ἦν, αὐτὸν ἐμὲ πρὸς τὴν
is-judged that if able — it-were very me to the
τούτων διοίκησιν ἐξελθεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο οἶδα ὅτι δοκεῖ
of-these administration to-go-out since but this I-know that seems
τυχὸν ἀπρεπὲς καὶ ἀδύνατον, ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἐπὶ τοῖς δυσὶ τῆς
perhaps unseemly and impossible from necessity on the two of-the
πολιτείας μαγίστροις, οἳ καὶ χρόνῳ καὶ πείρᾳ καὶ ταῖς
state magistroi who both by-time and by-experience and by-the
πολλαῖς ἐν τῷ μακρῷ βίῳ τῶν πολιτικῶν ἀρχῶν διοικήσεσιν,
many in the long life of-the civil offices administrations
ἐν αἷς ἐξητάσθησαν, ἀκίβδηλον καὶ καθαρὸν τῆς ἀρετῆς
in which they-were-examined unalloyed and pure of-the virtue
ἐξενηνόχασι τὸ δοκίμιον, τὰς ἐλπίδας ἀποσαλεύω, καὶ τὴν
have-brought-forth the test the hopes I-anchor and the
διακονίαν ὑπὸ τούτων ἀνυσθῆναι δεόντως θαρρῶ. ἀπελθὼν
service by them to-be-accomplished fittingly I-trust having-gone
οὖν, φησίν, αὐτὸς σὺ τούτοις ἀπάγγειλον τὸ τῆς διακονίας
then he-says yourself you to-these report the of-the service
ἐπωφελὲς καὶ τὸ θέλημα τὸ ἐμόν. καὶ βουλομένων αὐτῶν
benefit and the will the my and wishing they
ἐξελθεῖν ἐπευδοκῶ καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ἐπισφραγίζω τὸ βούλευμα.
to-go-out I-approve also myself and I-seal the plan
ὡς δὲ ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἄνδρες ἦλθον εἰς ἔκπληξιν, καὶ τὸ
when but having-heard the men came to astonishment and the

γῆρας ἀνθ᾽ ἱκετηρίας καὶ τοὺς πολλοὺς ὑπὲρ τοῦ κοινοῦ
old-age instead-of supplication and the many for the common-weal
καμάτους καὶ πόνους αὐτῶν προβαλλόμενοι παρενεχθῆναι
labors and toils their putting-forward to-be-taken-away
τὸ τῆς τοιαύτης διακονίας ποτήριον ἐξ αὐτῶν καθικέτευον,
the of-the such service cup from them they-begged
ἐξ ἀνάγκης ὑπέστρεψεν ἄπρακτος ὁ πεμφθείς, καὶ τῷ
from necessity returned unsuccessful the(-one) sent and to-the
βασιλεῖ τὰ παρὰ τῶν μαγίστρων ἀπήγγειλεν. ἅπερ
emperor the(-things) from the magistroi reported which-things
ἀκούσας εἶπεν ὁ βασιλεὺς ὅτι εἰ τὸ ἐμὲ ἐξελθεῖν δοκεῖ τε
having-heard said the emperor that if the me to-go-out seems both
καὶ λέγεται εἶναι ἀδύνατον, παραιτοῦνται δὲ τὴν ὑπουργίαν
and is-said to-be impossible decline but the service
καὶ οἱ λαμπρότατοι μάγιστροι, οὐδένα ἔχων τοῦ πράγματος
also the most-illustrious magistroi no-one having of-the matter
διοικητὴν ἀξιόχρεων καταλειφθῆναι τὸ ὑποβαλλόμενον
administrator worthy to-be-left the(-thing) proposed
βούλομαι ἀνεπίσκεπτον καὶ ἀδιερεύνητον. κρεῖττον γάρ,
I-wish uninspected and unexamined better for
φησί, παρακερδαίνειν τινὰς ἀπὸ τῶν ἐμῶν οὐ καλῶς
he-says to-gain-on-the-side some from the my-things not well
ἢ κακῶς ὑποπεσεῖν τινὰ ζημιώδει κακῷ καὶ ἐπιτριβούσῃ
than wrongly to-fall-under anyone to-ruinous evil and crushing
αὐτὸν συμφορᾷ. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ τὸν ἅπαντα χρόνον τῆς
him misfortune and on this the whole time of-the
αὐτοκρατορίας αὐτοῦ ἔμεινεν ἀνέποπτος, ὡς ἄν τις
sole-rule his remained uninspected as — someone
εἴποι, καὶ ἀνεξίσωτος, ἢ μᾶλλον εἰπεῖν ἐλεύθερός τε καὶ
might-say and unequalized or rather to-say free both and
ἀδιάπρακτος, ὁ ὑπὸ τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἐξουσίαν ἅπας τῶν ὅλων
undisturbed the under the Roman authority all of-the whole

θεμάτων λαὸς καὶ τὰ χωρία καὶ οἱ ἀγροὶ τοῖς γειτονοῦσι τῶν
themes people and the estates and the fields to-the neighboring of-the
πενήτων προκείμενοι εἰς ἀπόλαυσιν. τοιοῦτος ἦν περὶ πᾶν
poor lying-before for enjoyment such he-was about all
τὸ ὑπήκοον, μάλιστα δὲ τὸν ὄχλον τὸν ἀγροδίαιτον, πατρικὴν
the subjects especially but the crowd the country-dwelling paternal
ἐπιδεικνύμενος κηδεμονίαν καὶ πρόνοιαν ὁ ἀγαθὸς βασιλεύς.
showing care and forethought the good emperor
100 Ἀλλὰ καὶ πάλιν ὁ φθόνος ἑτέραν ἤγειρε περὶ τὰ βασίλεια
but also again the envy another raised about the palace
ζάλην καὶ θύελλαν, καθ' ἑαυτῆς τὴν φύσιν συνταράσσων
tempest and storm against itself the nature confounding
τε καὶ κυκῶν. ἄρτι γὰρ τοῦ φιλτάτου τῷ βασιλεῖ υἱοῦ
both and stirring just-now for the dearest to-the emperor son
Κωνσταντίνου τὸν βίον ἀπολιπόντος, καὶ μεταπεσόντος τοῦ
Constantine the life having-left and having-shifted the
φίλτρου καὶ τῶν ἐλπίδων ἐπὶ τὸν δεύτερον υἱὸν Λέοντα,
love and the hopes to the second son Leo
οὐκ ἤνεγκε πράως τὸ βάσκανον τῶν δαιμόνων φῦλον τὸ
not bore gently the envious of-the demons tribe the
πρᾶον καὶ ἥσυχον καὶ εὐσεβὲς ἅμα καὶ ἐμμελές, ὡς ἔοικεν,
gentle and quiet and pious at-once and harmonious as it-seems
ὁρῶν τοῦ διαδέχεσθαι μέλλοντος τὴν βασίλειον ταύτην
seeing of-the(-one) to-succeed going the imperial this
ἀρχήν, καὶ τὴν ἐντεῦθεν τοῦ ὑπηκόου στοχαζομένην ἐπὶ τῆς
rule and the from-here of-the subjects aimed-at under the
αὐτοῦ βασιλείας εὐετηρίαν καὶ πρὸς πάντα τὰ ἐπαινούμενα
his reign prosperity and toward all the praised
αὔξησιν· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο κονίεται κατ' αὐτοῦ καὶ οὑτωσί
increase and because-of this prepares-to-wrestle against him and thus
πως ἀνταγωνίζεται. ἦν τις τῶν πάνυ φιλουμένων καὶ
somehow contends there-was one of-the very loved and

πιστευομένων παρὰ τῷ ἀοιδίμῳ Βασιλείῳ μοναχός, ὡς
trusted by the celebrated Basil monk as
ἐδόκει, καὶ ἱερεύς, καὶ φίλος αὐτῷ καὶ ὑπουργὸς δεξιός, ὃν
he-seemed and priest and friend to-him and minister able whom
Σανδαβαρηνὸν κατωνόμαζον· ὃς εἰ καὶ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
Sandabarenos they-named who if even by the emperor
ἐστέργετο, ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ εἶχε παρὰ τοῖς ἄλλοις δόξαν χρηστὴν
was-loved but not had among the others repute good
οὐδ᾽ ὑπόληψιν ἀνεπίληπτον. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο πολλάκις καὶ
nor reputation blameless and because-of this often also
ὑπὸ τοῦ σοφωτάτου διεκωμῳδεῖτο Λέοντος ὡς γόης καὶ
by the most-wise was-lampooned Leo as sorcerer and
ἀπατεὼν καὶ εἰς ἃ μὴ δεῖ τὸν βασιλέα παρασύρων
deceiver and into what-things not is-needful the emperor dragging
καὶ τῶν καθηκόντων ἐκδιαιτῶν. ἃ δὴ πυνθανόμενος
and from-the fitting-things leading-astray which-things indeed learning
ὁ φέναξ ἐκεῖνος καὶ πονηρὸς εὔνοιαν πλάττεται καὶ φιλίαν
the cheat that and wicked goodwill feigns and friendship
πρὸς τὸν χρηστὸν ὑποκρίνεται Λέοντα, καὶ φησὶ πρὸς
toward the good pretends Leo and says to
αὐτὸν ὡς ἵνα τί νεανίας ἤδη ὢν καὶ παρὰ τῷ πατρί σου
him that why — youth already being and by the father your
φιλούμενος μὴ ἐπιφέρῃ κρυπτῶς ῥομφαίαν ἢ μάχαιραν,
loved do-you-not carry secretly sword or dagger
ὅταν κατ᾽ ἀγροὺς συνιππάζῃ σου τῷ πατρί, ἵνα καὶ αὐτῷ, εἰ
when in fields you-ride-with your the father that also to-him if
κατὰ θηρίου χρείαν σχῇ, ἐπιδιδῷς, καὶ εἴ τι λαθραῖον
against beast need he-may-have you-may-hand-over and if some secret
πολλάκις κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐπιβούλευμα γένηται, μὴ ἄνοπλος
often against him plot may-happen not unarmed
εὑρεθῇς, ἀλλ᾽ ἔχῃς τι μεθ᾽ ὅτου δυνηθῇς τοὺς
you-may-be-found but you-may-have something with which you-may-be-able the

πατρικοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἀνταμύνασθαι. οὐχ ὑπειδόμενος δὲ τὸν
paternal enemies to-repel not having-suspected but the
δόλον ἐκεῖνος οὐδὲ τὸ δολερὸν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς συννοήσας (τὸ
trick he nor the treachery of-the man having-perceived the
γὰρ μὴ πρόχειρον εἰς κακίαν οὐδὲ ὑπονοεῖν ἐστὶ τὰ πονηρὰ
for not ready for evil not-even to-suspect is the wicked-things
εὐχερές) δέχεται τὴν βουλὴν καὶ πείθεται μάχαιραν τοῦ
easy accepts the counsel and is-persuaded dagger of-the
ὑποδήματος ἐντὸς ἐπιφέρεσθαι. ὡς οὖν ὁ ἐπίβουλος ἔγνω
boot inside to-carry when then the plotter knew
χωρήσασαν εἰς ἔργον τὴν αὐτοῦ συμβουλήν, ἀπαγγέλλει
having-gone into deed the his counsel he-reports
τῷ βασιλεῖ ὅτι ὁ υἱός σου ἐπιβουλεύει σε ἀνελεῖν· καὶ εἰ
to-the emperor that the son your plots you to-kill and if
ἀπιστεῖς, ὅταν κατὰ θήραν ἤ που ἄλλοθι μέλλεις τῆς
you-disbelieve when for hunting or somewhere elsewhere you-are-going from-the
βασιλίδος ὑπεξελθεῖν, κέλευσον περιαιρεθῆναι τὰ πέδιλα
queen-city to-go-out order to-be-removed the sandals
τῶν ποδῶν αὐτοῦ, καὶ εἰ εὑρεθήσεται ξίφος ἐπιφερόμενος,
of-the feet his and if he-shall-be-found sword carrying
γνῶθι ὅτι πρὸς τὴν σὴν αὐτὸ σφαγὴν ἡτοιμάσατο.
know that for the your it slaughter he-prepared
καταγγελθείσης οὖν ἐξόδου βασιλικῆς συνεξῆλθεν ἅπαν τὸ
having-been-announced then departure imperial went-out-with all the
εἰωθός, καὶ κατά τινα τόπον γενομένων αὐτῶν προσποιεῖται
accustomed and at some place having-come they pretends
χρείαν ἔχειν μαχαίρας ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ ἐπεζήτει ταύτην μετὰ
need to-have of-dagger the emperor and sought it with
σπουδῆς. συμπαρὼν δὲ ὁ υἱός, καὶ μηδὲν τῶν ὑπονοουμένων
zeal being-present but the son and nothing of-the suspected
τῷ πατρὶ προειδόμενος, ἀκάκως πάνυ καὶ ἀπονήρως
by-the father having-foreseen innocently very and guilelessly

ἐφελκυσάμενος ἣν ἐπεφέρετο μάχαιραν ἐπιδίδωσι τῷ
having-drawn which he-carried dagger hands to-the
πατρί. γενομένου δὲ τούτου ἔδοξεν εὐθέως ἡ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ
father having-happened but this seemed straightway the against him
προσαγγελία πιστὴ καὶ αἱ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἀπολογίαι μάταιαι
denunciation trustworthy and the from him pleas vain
καὶ κεναί. ὑποστρεψάντων οὖν αὐτίκα πρὸς τὰ βασίλεια,
and empty having-returned then at-once to the palace
πρὸς ὀργὴν ὁ βασιλεὺς κατὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ διανίσταται, καὶ κατά
to anger the emperor against the son rises and in
τινα τῶν βασιλείων οἴκων, ὃς Μαργαρίτης κατονομάζεται,
one of-the palace houses which Margarites is-named
ἔμφρουρον τοῦτον πεποίηται, καὶ τῶν ἐρυθρῶν πεδίλων
in-custody him made and of-the red sandals
ἀπογυμνοῖ. διηρέθιστο δὲ παρὰ τοῦ ἐχθροῦ καὶ ἐκδικητοῦ
strips he-was-provoked but by the enemy and avenger
πρὸς τὸ καὶ τοὺς λύχνους ἐπισβέσαι τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν.
to the also the lamps to-extinguish of-the eyes
ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν ὑπὸ τοῦ τῆς βασιλίδος ἀρχιερέως
but this indeed by the of-the queen-city high-priest
καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς κωλύεται διαπράξασθαι, τῆς
and the senatorial council is-prevented to-accomplish of-the
εἱρκτῆς δ᾽ ὅμως εἶχεν ἐντός. χρόνου δὲ παραδραμόντος
prison but nevertheless he-held inside time but having-passed
συχνοῦ, καὶ τῆς φύσεως οὐ γνωριζούσης ἑαυτὴν ἀλλ᾽ ὑπὸ
long and the nature not recognizing itself but by
τῶν πονηρῶν πνευμάτων τραχυνομένης, τῶν δὲ τῆς
the wicked spirits being-exasperated of-the(-men) but of-the
γερουσίας ὑπερεχόντων πολλάκις βουληθέντων ὑπὲρ τοῦ
senate eminent often having-wished for the
υἱοῦ πρὸς τὸν πατέρα διαπρεσβεύσασθαι, ἄλλοτε δὲ
son to the father to-intercede at-another-time but

κατ᾽ ἄλλην αἰτίαν κωλυομένων, ἀπὸ τοιαύτης προφάσεως
for another reason being-prevented from such pretext
εὔλογον ἔσχον ἀφορμὴν εἰς τὸ κατανύσαι τὸ βούλημα.
reasonable they-had occasion for the to-accomplish the wish
101 ἦν τι ζῷον πτηνὸν ἐν ταλάρῳ πλεκτῷ κατὰ τὰ
there-was some creature winged in basket woven in the
βασίλεια αἰωρούμενον, μιμηλὸν καὶ πολύφωνον, ὃ
palace hanging mimicking and many-voiced which
ψιττακὸς ὀνομάζεται· ὅπερ εἴτε πρός τινων διδαχθὲν εἴτε
parrot is-named which either by some taught or
ἄλλως πως πολλάκις "αἲ αἲ κῦρ Λέων" ἐφθέγγετο.
otherwise somehow often alas alas lord Leo uttered
πανδαισίας δέ ποτε τελουμένης τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ τῶν
feast but once being-held for-the emperor and the
πρώτων τῆς βουλῆς συνεστιωμένων αὐτῷ, καὶ τοῦ ὄρνιθος
first of-the senate feasting-with him and the bird
πολλάκις φθεγγομένου τὸ προρρηθέν, ἐπιστυγνάσαντες
often uttering the(-thing) said-before having-become-gloomy
οἱ δαιτυμόνες καὶ τῆς εὐωχίας παυσάμενοι ἐπὶ συννοίας
the banqueters and from-the feasting having-ceased in thought
ἐκάθηντο. οἷς προσσχὼν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν αἰτίαν τῆς τῶν
sat to-whom having-attended the emperor the cause of-the from-the
ἐδεστῶν ἀποχῆς ἐπυνθάνετο. οἱ δὲ δακρύων ὑποπλησθέντες
foods abstention inquired they but with-tears filled
τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς "τίνα βρῶσιν" εἶπον "φαγούμεθα, οὕτως
the eyes what food they-said shall-we-eat so
ὑπὸ τῆς φωνῆς τοῦ ἀλόγου τούτου ὀνειδιζόμενοι οἱ
by the voice of-the irrational this being-reproached the(-ones)
δοκοῦντες ἡμεῖς λογικοί τε καὶ φιλοδέσποτοι, ὅτι αὐτὸ
seeming we rational both and master-loving that it
μὲν τὸν οἰκεῖον ἀνακαλεῖται δεσπότην, ἡμεῖς δὲ τρυφῶντες
indeed the own calls-back master we but luxuriating

λήθην τοῦ μὴ ἀδικήσαντος δεσποσύνου ἐλάβομεν. εἰ
forgetfulness of-the not having-wronged master's-son took if
μὲν γὰρ ἐλέγχεται ἀδικῶν καὶ κατὰ τῆς πατρικῆς
indeed for be-is-convicted doing-wrong and against the paternal
κεφαλῆς εὐτρεπίσας τὴν δεξιάν, αὐτόχειρες αὐτοῦ ἡμεῖς
head having-made-ready the right-hand murderers his we
πάντες γενοίμεθα καὶ τοῦ αἵματος αὐτοῦ κορεσθείημεν·
all may-we-become and with-the blood his may-we-be-sated
εἰ δὲ ἐφ' οἷς ἐνεκλήθη διαφεύγει τὸν ἔλεγχον, μέχρι
if but on what be-was-accused be-escapes the proof until
τίνος ἡ συκοφάντις γλῶσσα δυναμωθήσεται κατ' αὐτοῦ;"
what the sycophantic tongue will-be-strengthened against him
μαλακισθεὶς οὖν τοῖς τοιούτοις τῶν λόγων ὁ βασιλεὺς τότε
having-been-softened then by-the such of-the words the emperor then
μὲν καθεσθῆναι τούτους προσέταξε, καὶ σκοπῆσαι περὶ τοῦ
indeed to-be-seated them ordered and to-consider about the
πράγματος ἐπηγγείλατο, μετ' οὐ πολὺ δὲ πρὸς τὴν φύσιν
matter promised after not long but to the nature
ἐπανελθὼν ἐξάγει τε τῆς φρουρᾶς καὶ εἰς ὄψιν ἄγει
having-returned brings-out both from-the prison and into sight brings
αὐτοῦ, καὶ τὴν πένθιμον ἀμείβει στολήν, καὶ τὸ περιττὸν
his and the mourning changes robe and the excess
τῆς ἐν τῇ λύπῃ τραφείσης κόμης περιαιρεθῆναι κελεύει, καὶ
of-the in the grief grown hair to-be-removed orders and
τὴν προτέραν τῆς βασιλείας τάξιν καὶ τιμὴν ἀποδίδωσιν.
the former of-the kingship rank and honor restores
Οὐ πολὺ τὸ ἐν μέσῳ, καὶ φθινάδι νόσῳ περιπίπτει 102
not much the(-time) in middle and wasting into-disease falls
ὁ βασιλεύς, ἐκ διαρροίας παρακολουθησάσῃ γαστρός,
the emperor from diarrhea having-followed of-belly
ἣ τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπό τινος τῶν κατὰ θήραν παραπτώσεων
which the beginning from some of-the in hunting accidents

ἔλαβεν· καὶ λοιπὸν κατ᾽ ὀλίγον τῇ τοιαύτῃ τηκεδόνι
took and thenceforth by little by-the such consumption
κατεμαραίνετο. διαθεὶς δὲ τὰ τῆς βασιλείας
he-wasted-away having-arranged but the(-affairs) of-the empire
ἄριστα καὶ τὸν κληρονόμον γνωρίσας, καὶ περὶ
best and the heir having-made-known and about
τῶν καθ᾽ ἕκαστα τὰ εἰκότα βουλευσάμενός τε
the(-matters) in each the fitting having-planned both
καὶ ἐμφρόνως διορισάμενος, ὕστερον πυρετοῦ καυσώδους
and sensibly having-determined later fever burning
ἀναφλεγέντος αὐτῷ πᾶσαν τὴν ζωτικὴν ἰκμάδα ἀνιμωμένου
having-flared-up in-him all the vital moisture drawing-up
καὶ ἀναλίσκοντος τὸν βίον ἀπέλιπε, συμβασιλεύσας μὲν
and consuming the life he-left having-co-reigned indeed
τῷ πρὸ αὐτοῦ Μιχαὴλ χρόνον ἕνα, ἐν ἑτέροις δὲ
with-the before him Michael year one in other but
χρόνοις ἐννεακαίδεκα περὶ τὴν αὐτοκράτορα τῆς βασιλείας
years nineteen in the sole of-the empire
διαπρέψας ἀρχήν, ἄριστα μὲν τὰ πολιτικὰ διαθείς,
having-been-distinguished rule best indeed the civil having-arranged
κάλλιστα δὲ καὶ περὶ τὰ στρατιωτικὰ διαγεγονώς, καὶ
finest but also about the military having-acted and
πλατύνας μὲν τὰ ὅρια τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἀδικίαν δὲ καὶ βίαν
having-widened indeed the bounds of-the rule injustice but and violence
ἐξελάσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ὑπηκόου παντός, ὡς καὶ τὴν Ὁμηρικὴν
having-driven from the subjects all so-that also the Homeric
περὶ τοῦ ἀρίστου βασιλέως μαρτυρίαν ἁρμόζειν αὐτῷ τὴν
about the best king testimony to-fit him the
ἀμφότερον, βασιλεύς τ᾽ ἀγαθὸς κρατερός τ᾽ αἰχμητής.
both king both good mighty and spearman

Διαδέχεται δὲ τὴν ὅλην τῆς ἐξουσίας ἀρχὴν ὁ καὶ παρὰ
succeeds but to-the whole of-the authority rule the both by
τῆς φύσεως καὶ παρὰ τῆς ἀρετῆς ἐπὶ τὸν πατρῷον
the nature and by the virtue to the paternal
κλῆρον καλούμενος καὶ παρὰ τοῦ ὑπηκόου δι᾽ εὐχῶν
inheritance called and by the subjects through prayers
ἐπιζητούμενος, Λέων ὁ πραότατος καὶ σοφώτατος καὶ
sought Leo the most-gentle and most-wise and
πρῶτος τῶν ἔτι περιλειπομένων υἱῶν.
first of-the still remaining sons
Καὶ τὰ μὲν περὶ τῆς εὐσεβοῦς βασιλείας Βασιλείου
and the(-things) indeed about the pious reign of-Basil
τοῦ ἀοιδίμου, ὅσα μὴ τῆς λήθης παρεσύρη ῥεύμασι καὶ
the celebrated as-many-as not of-the oblivion were-swept-away by-streams and
τῷ διὰ μέσου χρόνῳ ἐξίτηλα γέγονε, καὶ αὐτὴ δὲ ἡ
by-the through middle time faded have-become and itself too the
πρὸ τῆς βασιλείας ἀγωγή, καὶ ὅσα ἡ τῆς ὅλης αὐτοῦ
before the reign upbringing and as-many-as the of-the whole his
ζωῆς περιέχει ὑπόθεσις, κατὰ τὸ ἡμῖν ἐφικτόν, καθὼς
life contains subject as-far-as the for-us attainable as
ἡ τῆς ἀληθείας εἶχε φύσις, ἀπήγγελται καὶ ἱστόρηται.
the of-the truth had nature has-been-reported and has-been-narrated

---